
This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>



Princeton University Library



32101 078297817

BOOK
2844
G5
5C
4

**LIBRARY OF
PRINCETON UNIVERSITY**
PRESENTED BY
THE ESTATE OF
EUGENE B. COOK
CLASS OF 1850

Princeton University

Library

PAUL MORPHY,

A

SKETCH FROM THE CHESS WORLD.

BY

HERR MAX LANGE,

EDITOR OF THE BERLIN SCHACHZEITUNG, AND AUTHOR
OF THE KRITIK DER ERÖFFNUNGEN, ETC. ETC.

TRANSLATED BY PERMISSION

WITH ADDITIONAL NOTES AND GAMES,

BY

HERR FALKBEER.

LONDON:

J. H. STARIE, 46, RATHBONE PLACE.

1860.

LONDON:
PRINTED BY F. PICKTON,
BERRY'S PLACE, 29, OXFORD STREET.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Preface	PAGE ix
CHAPTER I.	
Introduction	3
Notes	6
CHAPTER II.	
Paolo Boi and Paul Morphy	10
Notes	16
CHAPTER III.	
Games played by Paul Morphy in his early youth.	
With Mr. Rousseau	20
„ Herr Löwenthal	21
„ Mr. M'Connel	23
„ Judge A. B. Meek	24, 25
„ Mr. Ernest Morphy	26
CHAPTER IV.	
The Chess Congress at New York, in the autumn of 1857	27
Games played by Paul Morphy at the Chess Congress of 1857	31
With Mr. Louis Paulsen	31, 33
„ „ Th. Lichtenhein	35, 37, 38
„ „ Thompson	39, 41
Notes	42

Cook
4246
1894
1.5
56

200743

CHAPTER V.

	PAGE
Paul Morphy's Victories in New York	53
Games played by Paul Morphy in New York	54
With Mr. C. H. Stanley	54, 55
" " Schulten	56, 58, 59, 61
" " Perrin	62
" " Marache	63
" " D. Julien	64
" Members of the New York Chess Club	65, 66, 67
" Mr. Hammond, from Boston	68
" " Elkin, from Philadelphia	70
" " Hiram Kennicott, from Illinois	71
Against Messrs. Fiske, Perrin, and Fuller, in Consultation	72
Notes	74

CHAPTER VI.

Paul Morphy in New Orleans	77
Challenge to Mr. Staunton	78
Mr. Staunton's answer	81
Games played by Paul Morphy in New Orleans	83
With Mr. Ch. A Maurian	83, 84
" " H—	85
" " —y	86
" " —z	87
" " N—	88
" " M—	90
" " N—	92, 94
" " X—	95
Notes	96
Correspondence between Morphy and Staunton	98

CHAPTER VII.

Voyage to, and arrival in England	100
Consultation Games	102
Against Messrs. Löwenthal and Medley	102
" " Löwenthal, Mongredien, and Medley	104
" " Staunton and "Alter"	104
" " Staunton and Owen	107
Notes	109

CHAPTER VIII.

	PAGE
Victories in England	114
Games played by Paul Morphy in London	116
With Mr. Barnes	116, 117, 121, 122, 123
" " Boden	125, 127, 128, 130
" " Bird	132, 133, 135
" " "Alter"	136
" " Hampton	138
" " Medley	139
" " Kipping (in Birmingham)	140, 141
Notes	142

CHAPTER IX.

The Match with Herr Löwenthal	148
First to Twelfth Game in the Match	149—173
Notes	174

CHAPTER X.

The Chess Congress at Birmingham	178
Eight Games simultaneously played by Paul Morphy at the Meeting in Birmingham, without seeing the board	179—188
Notes	188

CHAPTER XI.

Paul Morphy in Paris. His reception in the Café de la Régence, and his blindfold performance	193
Eight Games, simultaneously played by Paul Morphy in Paris, without seeing the board	194—202
Notes	203

CHAPTER XII.

Games played by Paul Morphy with several French players	208
With M. Laroche	209
" " Journoud	211
" " Baucher	212
" " Devinck	213, 215
" " De Rivière	216, 217, 219, 220, 222
Against Messrs. Journoud and De Rivière	224
" Duke of Brunswick and Count Isouard	225
" Messrs. St. Amant and F. de l'A—	226
" M. Chamouillet and the Chess Club at Versailles	227

CHAPTER XIII.

	PAGE
The Match with Herr Harrwitz	229
Preliminary Game	230
First to Eighth Game in the Match	231—244
Notes	245

CHAPTER XIV.

The Match with Professor Anderssen	249
First to Eleventh Game in the Match	251—281
Summary	283
Off-hand Games played with Anderssen	293, 295
Notes	296
Max Lange's Letter to Professor Anderssen	300

CHAPTER XV.

Successes and Expectations	302
Chronological Summary of the prominent events in Morphy's	
Life	307
Notes	309
Testimonial to Morphy	313

APPENDIX.

The Match with Mr. Mongredien	317
First to Eighth Game in the Match	318—325
The two last Games in the Match with Herr Löwenthal	327—329
Morphy's return to England	331
Eight Games played blindfold at the London Chess Club	332—339
Blindfold play at the St. George's Chess Club	340—42
Morphy's last performance at the St. James's	342—350
Correspondence between Lord Lyttelton and Mr. Morphy	351—354

SYNOPSIS OF THE OPENINGS CONTAINED IN THIS VOLUME.

King's Knight's Opening.

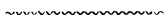
Philidor's Defence	102, 104, 121, 122, 128, 133, 149,
162, 164, 194, 202, 225, 232, 236, 239, 244, 325, 333	
Petroff's Defence	154, 159, 200, 327

CONTENTS.

vii

	PAGE
Giuoco Piano	54, 226
Ruy Lopez	26,
61, 68, 116, 125, 166, 219, 255, 259, 262, 328, 349	
Evans's Gambit	37, 39, 41,
59, 63, 88, 90, 92, 94, 135, 138, 140, 141, 180, 216,	
217, 220, 222, 224, 251, 319, 325, 336, 342	
Two Knights' Game	72, 322, 339, 344
Scotch Gambit	24, 71, 130, 182, 337, 346
Irregular Defence	20, 324
<i>King's Bishop's Opening.</i>	
Regular King's Bishop's Opening	35, 123, 185
Double Gambit	318
<i>Queen's Knight's Opening</i>	31
<i>King's Knight's Gambit accepted.</i>	
Kieseritzky Gambit	70, 139, 179, 212, 230, 295
Allgaier Gambit	25
Muzio Gambit	338
Cunningham Gambit	38, 347
Irregular Defence	95
<i>Bishop's Gambit</i>	58, 104, 293, 323
<i>Gambit declined</i>	56, 127, 132, 153, 157, 184, 197, 335, 341
<i>Queen's Pawns Opening</i>	231, 234, 237, 241, 320
<i>Sicilian Opening</i>	21
33, 62, 161, 171, 181, 187, 201, 211, 275, 332	
<i>French Opening</i>	23,
170, 173, 195, 209, 227, 281, 334	
• <i>Irregular Openings</i>	107,
117, 136, 186, 198, 199, 265, 267, 272, 273, 277	
<i>Games at odds.</i>	
At the odds of Pawn and move	55, 213, 214
At the odds of a Knight	64, 65, 66, 67, 84, 86, 87
At the odds of a Rook	83, 85
<i>Consultation Games</i>	72, 102, 104, 107, 224, 225, 226, 227
<i>Blindfold Games</i>	88,
90, 92, 94, 95, 179—188, 194—203, 332—339, 341, 342	
<i>Match Games</i>	149—174,
231—245, 251—283, 318—325, 327—329	

	PAGE
<i>Score of Morphy's Games</i> . . .	30, 75, 97, 192, 208
<i>Translator's Notes</i> . . .	9, 13, 24, 25, 31, 36, 39, 49, 50, 58, 59, 60, 63, 67, 74, 94, 95, 99, 101, 106, 108, 109, 112, 114, 115, 120, 125, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 136, 138, 140, 143, 144, 147, 148, 149, 152, 157, 158, 162, 163, 165, 168-69, 171, 172, 174, 175, 179, 184, 186, 189, 206, 213, 214, 223, 234, 237, 239, 243, 246-47, 253, 257-58, 261, 262, 270, 275, 280, 291, 309
<i>End-games with Diagrams</i> . . .	57, 68, 89, 91, 93, 217



PREFACE.

IN presenting to the English public this excellent work, which has created no small sensation amongst Chess amateurs in Germany,—the name of its author being an ample guarantee for its intrinsic merit,—I may venture to hope that in so far as my limited capabilities enabled me, I have rendered a two-fold benefit to the Chess world. In the first place, as the American's feats and exploits have, during a comparatively short space of time, acquired such wide-spread renown and so much absorbed the eager attention and applause of the Chess-loving community that other modern celebrities were, more or less, thrown in the background, if not thoroughly eclipsed by the rising sun, I considered it but due to the English public to present them, at an early opportunity, with a complete edition of MORPHY'S games, conscientiously selected, and enriched with notes from the pen of a first-rate player, and an analyst of high repute. Secondly, the games, conducted by a skilful hand, embracing so many various openings (as may be seen by the Synopsis) and introducing so many startling moves hitherto but little in vogue, I hold that this volume will be a kind of companion to those desiring

a profound knowledge of the openings, or of learning how to bring to a successful termination a well-founded attack, or a difficult defence.

The perusal of this book will disclose many interesting and, as yet, unknown facts with regard to leading personages as well as peculiar incidents in MORPHY'S European tour; and I especially call the attention of the reader to the letter of MAX LANGE to Professor ANDERSEN (pp. 300 and 301), prior to the latter's departure for Paris in order to engage in a contest with MORPHY,—a contest so eagerly anticipated, and which resulted in the defeat of the Prussian veteran. The consequences of this match show the justness and propriety of the author's advice, tendered in an amicable and truly patriotic spirit to his friend and co-editor. I, too, should have rejoiced had ANDERSEN thought it fit to await the arrival of Mr. MORPHY in Germany, as contemplated, when probably many more fine specimens of Chess strategy might have been produced, and greater benefits would have been conferred upon the Chess world in general and Chess literature in particular, than in the present collection—rich though it be—a translation of which I now offer to the public.

It is my sincere conviction that the straightforward character of the author, both as a man of honour and an impartial historian, and the high position which he holds in the Chess world, will give an additional weight to disclosures in connection with our hero and his antagonists, which now, for the first time, are submitted to the tribunal of public opinion

and criticism in England; having the authority of being brought forward by a competent judge of those feelings which are likely to influence the actions of upright and conscientious men, and who gathered his information from the fountain-head—hence being well conversant with the intricacies of the case.

The translator has taken upon himself, in several instances, to mitigate the eulogistic expressions with regard to the American Champion, in the Notes to the games. Moreover, he had often to contend against the somewhat redundant and paraphrastic style of the German text. In regard to this, he thinks he has scrupulously fulfilled his task. As to the above changes—and they are but few and far between—he considers them legitimate; for however justifiable the author's admiration in that respect may be, still, when carried beyond certain limits, it is not consonant with those views which ought to guide a writer on Chess, whose principal aim should be to instruct and to entertain.

I have also frequently found myself under the necessity of dissenting from the author in his notes; and, in such cases, I have either expressed a different opinion in parenthesis, or given additional remarks under the head of *Translator's* notes. These require no apology, inasmuch as the editor has repeatedly done me the honour of quoting my own variations from the columns of the *Sunday Times*, thus encouraging me to go still further in my analytical endeavours; and the distinguished author himself, whom it is my pleasant

duty sincerely to thank for giving me an opportunity of paying that tribute to his high qualities which he undoubtedly deserves, will, I trust, appreciate the feeling which induced me to make those alterations and deviations from the original matter, not from party-spirit, but solely in the interest of our noble game.

In conclusion, the only excuse I can offer for intruding my unnoted name on the public, is the anxiety I feel to bring so deserving a work before English Chess circles ; and if, in this endeavour, I have occasionally been wanting in elegance, lucidity, or power, I hope it will be overlooked on account of my having written in a foreign tongue.

ERNEST FALKBEER.

London, October, 1859.

PAUL MORPHY,
THE TRANSATLANTIC CHESS CHAMPION.

INTRODUCTION.

CHAPTER I.

IN early ages the royal game of Chess has been already duly appreciated, and its chivalrous spirit recognized.(A)

Having been invented, as it is said, for the benefit of a crowned head, it had its first home in royal palaces, and from them it was spread afar by the chivalrous and victorious Saracen knights.

The champions of the Holy Cross brought it over to the southern and middle parts of Europe, where it soon became domiciled, and the favourite game of the privileged classes. The holy clerk saw in it analogies with our daily life, and made it a fountain of edifying speeches. The nobleman preferred it to dice, and placed it among the seven knightly virtues.(B)

From its first introduction, there were many specious points in this noble game, some of which came down to our own days. Among them let us only mention the respectful announcement of an attack against the King or his Queen, the careful avoidance of the exchange of pieces, the many obstructions put in the way of the clownish Pawn to prevent him from reaching the highest honours, and chiefly the inviolability and reciprocal inability of approaching each other, of the crowned heads.

Some of these and similar rules have given way, it is true, in modern times, when everything is looked at only in a positive and sober manner, to more rational, severe, and correct laws. Nor can it be denied that theoretical zeal and literary studies have greatly contributed to give to the march

of the game a more serious character : they have taken much away from the freshness of a lively game, and have put closer limits to the chances of practical daring, as well as to the personal liberty of brilliancy of play.

A stranger to the general interests of society, above all party spirit and difference of opinion, unknown to national prejudices, this game has still retained a somewhat romantic tint, and in the midst of the material interests of the present time, gives to its followers something of an ideal elevation. As a combat of living forces with spiritual weapons upon a freely chosen ground, it offers an arena for the exercise of the activity of the mind and of the will ; its independence of the general relations of life gives it an ideal character which acts beneficially upon its unsophisticated followers.(c)

Thus the noble game has at all times numbered in its train some of the most prominent spirits of the age, who represented it in its full glory, and, although performing their extraordinary deeds in a small world of their own, their reputation had found an echo far and near. With a self-sacrificing enthusiasm, they put their personal interest as an immolation upon the altar of CAISSA, and, merging their souls in a sphere unsullied by the necessities of daily life, they kept the integrity of their persons, ennobled their characters, and, purified by the breath of ideal tendencies, became men of truly chivalrous mind.

Whilst chanted by such enthusiastic admirers in the East, the noble game led in the West its faithful knight-errant from Syracuse to endless triumphs, refined the glorious purity of character of a PHILIDOR, a LEWIS, a LABOURDONNAIS ; awakened in the German mind the genius of an ANDERSEN, as well as the self-denying and fertile activity of a HEYDEBRANDT VON DER LASA ; and found in the distant West its most glorious expression in that newly risen star which but lately appeared above the waves of the Atlantic horizon. Having arrived at the term of its wandering round the world, it also reached the zenith of its glory in this splendid apparition ; if all the highly prized qualities were to be woven into one, it would present the perfect resemblance of the chivalrous young Chess hero of the New World.

It is not only extensive theoretic knowledge or deep analytic insight ; not rapidly invented combinations which take

the adversary by surprise and seem to surpass the limits of human understanding ; it is not the cool demeanour and graceful way of handling the pieces ; nor is it the dignified and justly confident bearing :—none of these qualities, considered in themselves, give an idea of the high merit of the newly risen master. It is his thoroughly noble personality, the result of the harmonious co-operation of these different qualities, which renders its possessor the champion of the royal game and sovereign master in its extensive dominions. It is in him that the chivalrous nature of the game has found its typical expression ; and the more we admire the quiet nature of the game as opposed to the busy and interested activity of daily life, the more we find ourselves compelled to pay the just tribute of acknowledgment and admiration to its noble and youthful representative.(D)

We are fully aware that Chess has often been over estimated, that the quality of improving the judgment has been ascribed to it, and that it has been even declared to be a science ; but we have invariably repudiated with due severity all such groundless assertions.(E) In return nobody can deny nor too highly exalt the real nature of its influence upon our sentiments and way of thinking. For, the very thing which keeps it in the limits of a game (the independence of its freely chosen object from the interests of human society) gives to it a character of ideality, and acts beneficially upon unsophisticated minds.(F)

If it be treated in this sense, with moderation and due observance, according to the wise saying of KOHELET, "There is a time for playing, a time for picking up stones, but also a time for throwing away stones," it will always remain, in the midst of the stormy ocean of material interests of life, a verdant island full of refreshing fountains, to quench the thirst of the soul exhausted by its efforts in the battle of life. Therefore, in times of mental lassitude, this higher part of the game merits a more just appreciation the more faithfully it is represented in its ideal and chivalrous nature.

We see the glorious combats and victorious triumphs of a former period full of honour, when PAOLO BOI and his companions filled the world with their chivalrous renown, resuscitated in our days ; and our joyful enthusiasm is the easier

excited when we compare our present material age with the ideal conceptions of those distant days, and feel that the belief in the vaunted advantages of the noble game, once so roughly shaken, has all at once returned.

Our welcome and our best wishes, therefore, to the brave young Chess hero, who, like his renowned predecessor of the same Christian name, has challenged the great masters of all nations, who has been declared by them the true champion of the chivalrous game, and who, a second *Crichton*, has taken his seat at the round table of CAISSA.(G)

NOTES.

A.

The expression of "chivalrous or knightly game" has already been used by the authors in the middle ages, as the common designation of Chess: thus we find Jacobus de Cessolis (1290), and Jacob Mennel, who begins the title of his book called *Schachzabel* with it. From this work we quote here the following passage:—

"Und solt wissen, das nit grössers in diesem *ritterlichen* spil ist, denn das du die Augen nit in seckel legest." (And you must know that the chief point in this game is, not to put your eyes in your pocket.)

As a good counterpart to this observation, we find the following by Aggidius Albertinus, in his book *Der Zeit Kürzer* (time abbreviator), 1603:—

"In former times, only those were knighted and ennobled who performed the most valorous and virtuous actions, and not those who have most money, as happens nowadays."

Among the modern writers we only mention Walker, who, in the preface to his *Treatise*, says:—

"Chess, a sport without some knowledge of which no man dared call himself of 'gentle blood' in those chivalrous ages when the bold knight left the battle-field but for the tourney and the chesse, when princes looked over the board and queens were proud to grace the victor."

B.

In *Wit's Theatre* it is said:—

"The chesse-play was invented to warne a tyrant to avoide his tirany, and by his play to let him understand how dangerous the estate of a prince is that does not use his subjects well."

Jacobus de Cessolis, in his *Liber de Moribus hominum et officiis*

nobilium super ludo scaccorum, and Jacob Mennel, in his book *Schachzabel*, attach moral precepts to the game on account of the analogy of its components with the relations of life. Master Ingold, a priest and preacher, recommends in his treatise *Dz Guldin Spil* (the golden game), Chess as an antidote of one of the seven deadly sins—pride.

Jacob de Cessolis, however, chose Chess for the text of his sermons, or, rather, made it the subject of them, and was entreated by laymen, as well as many of his brother clergymen, to write down for the general public what he had said about *solatii ludus*; it was done, no doubt, in order to make the ideas which he therein professed a sort of frank passport for the game. The numerous copies and translations which therefrom exist, clearly prove the kind reception it had experienced:—thirty-nine manuscripts in the original Latin language, seven in German, one in Dutch, seventeen in French, ten in Italian, with incunabula in these languages.—(See *Schachzeitung*, 1847, p. 307.)

The seven knightly arts are enumerated in the following way in *Petri Alfonsi Disciplina Clericalis*:—

“Probitates hae sunt, equitare, natare, sagittare, cestibus certare, aucupari, *scacis ludere*, versificari.”

In a similar sense, says Konrad of Würzburg:—

“Birsen, beizen unde jagen
Kunde er wol und treip sin vil.
Schachzabel unde Seitenspil
Daz was sin Kurze wile.”

As to King Arthur, when nine years old he was given up to his tutor; it is said in relation to the latter—

“Who amonge other thynges dydde teach this noble chylde *Arthur* the playe of the *chesse* and tables, so yt now was in coninge lyk unto him.”

Hugo von Trimberg, in his lay entitled *Der Renner*, says:—

“Nu ist ein ander spil
Des *herren* pflegen, von dom doch vil
sunden unde schaden komet gerne,
Schachzabel ich ju das spil nenne.”

As a pendant to it may be given the following passage in *Sivqila*, 1580.

“Our rulers, lordes, *knights*, and gentlemen, doe use divers times to playe et *chesse*, which whettes their wishes, recreates their minde, and hurtes nobody.”

C.

Chess is above national prejudices and national propensities. “It has taken the same road with the history of the world, which led the new human race from inmost Asia, together with their language, all

over the world; it has been seized by the thinking heads of Europe, ere the buried sciences of antiquity had been unearthed from their mouldering graves, before the art of printing was invented; with the revivification of Greek ideas, it was propagated in innumerable writings. Italy, the garden of scientific life, described and chanted it in more than sixty manuscripts; England was not prevented by the smoke of its steam-engines to devote at least a similar number to this uninterested idea; France has had its Philidor; and Germany, the second home of science and thought, has also contributed its quota; Portugal has had its Damiano; Spain, amongst ten other authors, its Lopez; Holland and the Scandinavians, the Slaves and the Magyares, have had their several representatives upon this great arena of spiritual life."—(*Schachzeitung*, 1847, p. 306.)

As to the ideal merit of Chess, in comparison with other games, there exists an old sentence:—"Ludus scaccorum in *Ingenio* consistit nec committitur viribus Fortune."

Massmann, in his history of Chess, gives it the following praise:—

"The game of Chess brings man to man, opposes will to will, sharpens mind against mind, and is equally impartial, as were the distributions in the ancient chivalrous combat when they equally divided sun, wind, arms, and territory."

In a similar sense, the old German lay, *Das Nibelungenlied*, mentions the divided games.

D.

Walker, in *Bell's Life*, says:—

"We candidly own we consider Mr. Morphy a phenomenon, and are delighted to hail in him certainly the finest player since M'Donnel and Labourdonnais."

Falkbeer, in the *Sunday Times*, speaks in the following manner:—

"This is, indeed, a Chess player from head to foot. Since Philidor and Labourdonnais, we do not remember a similar apparition."

E.

In order to estimate incorrect views as to the intellectual value of Chess, compare *Lehrbuch des Schachspiels*, sections 431, 432, as well as the articles of the *Schachzeitung*, 1855, p. 9; 1855, p. 41; and 1858, p. 88. Lastly, Preface to the *Kritik der Eröffnungen*, p. vi.

F.

An illustration of this view will be found in the article about the tendencies of Chess, in the *Schachzeitung*, June, 1858, p. 224. The author of the *Ninety-five Paragraphs against Chess* (Herr Magister Portius) says in his last:—

"The game of Chess gives more frequent occasions to see man in his dignified than undignified state, for Chess players, as a rule, are men of worth and standing. This is an old truth, proved by all Chess societies. Go through the Chess clubs, and you will find

in all of them, or at least in most of them, society which you will be obliged to esteem."

Among many of the Chess writers who have sung the praises of Chess in that respect, we shall only mention Walker, and quote a passage from his aforementioned work :—

"To praise Chess is to paint the lily and to gild the red rose. Even as the sordid and mean of soul shrink earthwards on being touched by the sun-like spear of Ithuriel, so does Chess purify from grosser essence that social circle which it permeates. Honour, all honour to a game embodying so many high and noble qualities! Honour to Chess!"

Boden, in the *Family Herald*, observes :—

"We heartily congratulate our Chess brethren in America, upon the skill and chivalry of their young champion."

G.

Löwenthal, in the *Era*, thus expresses himself :—

"There is something exceedingly *romantic* and chivalrous about this young man's coming over to Europe, and throwing down the gauntlet to all our veterans. He is certainly a very Admirable Crichton of Chess,* and, like the accomplished Scot, he is as courteous and generous as he is brave and skilful.

[* The translator gives the text as it is in the German book and the *Era*, being fully aware of the badly chosen comparison. Crichton was called the Admirable owing to the graces of his body and mind, the variety of his acquirements; take this variety away, and he ceases to be Admirable, therefore there can be no *very Admirable Crichton* of Chess.]



CHAPTER II.

PAOLO BOI AND PAUL MORPHY.

THREE hundred years ago there lived in Val di Noto a man of the noble family of the BOI DI NOTO, a brave, severe, and pious lord. In the battle of Seminara, under FERNANDO DE ANDRADA, he gained his spurs, and fought afterwards in the battle of Garigliano, at the side of the great GONSALVO. Having lost one of his arms, he then retired to his seat, near the rivulet of Ciane, now called La Tisma, where he brought up his only son, PAOLO, in the fear of the Lord.(A)

A Bohemian woman had predicted of him, that he would fight with kings, and conquer kings, and that he would conquer even the devil. Not the realization of the prediction, but its possibility was deliberated upon, and, under the belief that PAOLO would become a pope and a saint, he was brought up for the church. PAOLO himself, however, formed different plans. A strong youth, of lively temper, with a wonderful memory and vivid imagination, he was never quiet, and his thoughts went far beyond the sacred book, and the balcony encircled with vines, down into the valley of La Tisma, to her junction with the Anapus, then still farther to the sea, and even beyond the sea, into all the countries of the world.

Sometimes he lay meditating in a thicket of papyrus-trees, and dreamed of the Pyramids on the Nile, the sources of which he followed up to the countries of the Negroes, hoping to find the king to be conquered, even if he were black, and from thence to the infernal regions there could be but one step. At another time he found himself in the town of Siragosa, where his father had a house, in the island of Ortygia, near the beautiful stream Alpheus, now called Occhio della Zillica, and then it seemed to him that the escape from any cloister was but child's play, for this water conducted him across the sea to the very country of Greece. Thus dreaming, PAOLO grew up to adolescence.

"If the boy could but sit still," pondered the father, and he thought he found in the game of Chess, which at that time

stood in high repute, especially in Sicily, the proper inducement. He was near the goal, but nearer that of all hopes—a future and better life. Soon after the first sorrow at the loss of his father had passed, the young eagle tried his pinions.

Neither in Siragosa nor the rest of Sicily could he find an adversary worthy of him; although two very strong players, ARIMINI and BRANCI lived in Palermo, and Don MATTEO LI GENCHI in Termino, had a world-wide reputation.

He therefore fixed his regards upon Spain, where RUY LOPEZ stood in high honour with King PHILIP; but before going there, he went to LEONARDO DA CUTRI, called IL PUTTINO, who had conquered RUY LOPEZ, and found him still of the same force. Henceforth the two were called the light and lustre of the noble game.(B)

PAOLO then visited distant countries, and chance brought him even to Hungary, and to the Turks, with whom he played while on horseback, from memory, without seeing the board. The Turks of that time were less stationary than those of our days, and, like the Arabs, were great proficient in Chess; and many a pacha had his golden Chess-board, inlaid with diamonds, hanging from his saddle-bow. When among them, our Syracusan played with several opponents at the same time. He was the first who, without seeing the board, played three games at once, and at the same time conversed with other parties upon different topics. In France, CATHERINE of Medicis, who was also an adept at Chess, showered favours upon him; and in Portugal he had the honour of having the King Don SEBASTIAN for his adversary, who soon afterwards perished, with his entire army, in Africa.

From Lisbon, PAOLO went to Madrid, conquered both the masters, ZERONE and LOPEZ; and although the Spaniards, who thought very highly of ZERONE's Chess work, would not recognize a difference between the three players, King PHILIP himself decided the question. He gave precedence to the Syracusan, not only before the two other masters, but also before many of the proud knights of the Spanish court.

In Portugal, PAOLO once won, in one day, 8000 scudis; still, he never played for the sake of gain. He had ample means at his command, and was always travelling; and thus he refused a place of considerable emolument that was offered

to him in Madrid.(c) An honorary place, however, he might have accepted; and such a one, it seems, was offered to him, as is proved by the autograph letter which the proud PHILIP, the mightiest ruler of his time in whose dominions the sun never set, gave, in the year 1575, to our Syracusan, for Don JUAN of Austria.(d)

PAOLO did not deliver this letter, but returned to Sicily, and there wandered from town to town, from villa to villa, partly for his own amusement, and partly for the sake of Chess. In vain he searched for adversaries of his own stamp. HORATIO PATERNO, Baron di Biscari, was his most successful opponent, and came nearest to him; to others he gave odds, as Don BLASCO ISFAR, Baron di Siculiana; ANTONIO LUPARELLO DI CALTAGIRONE, and GIOVANNI PHILIP DI AUGUSTA. Besides these, many other masters are named, but none could cope with the Syracusan. A stranger called one evening upon PAOLO, asked him to play a game, and beat him, but only by means of sorcery, as PAOLO clearly saw when he afterwards went through the game. He determined at once upon following the stranger, whom he overtook in Venice, where he found the senate and the whole of the town in great consternation. This stranger professed to be the King Don SEBASTIAN, who was supposed to have perished in Africa, which put the republic in an unpleasant position; besides, they had declared war with Parma and the house of Braganza. The adventurer, among other proofs of his identity, pretended to have been recognized by the Syracusan; but he, confessing to a certain likeness between the stranger and the King, asked to play a game of Chess, and armed with a consecrated rosary, and fortified by having taken the sacraments, began the combat, which this time turned entirely to his advantage. The false SEBASTIAN sprang up in a rage and hastened away; for the arts of the evil one were paralyzed, the impostor unmasked, and the prophecy of the Bohemian woman verified.

PAOLO BOI reached a happy old age. He not only overcame PUTTINO, but as long as he lived he never found a master: he held exclusively the sceptre of Chess.

When his hair was become white as snow, his body and mind were yet strong and powerful; he still dressed in the style of young men in the height of fashion, and had many

peculiarities, but as many good qualities. He was modest and generous, went every day to mass, often took the sacrament, and always gave donations to the priests. His person was well proportioned, his face handsome and lively, his conversation was spirited, entertaining, and gay.(E) His passion for travelling was ever the same, and in some manner was the cause of his death. The Princess STIGLIANO and her father, who both highly esteemed him, had invited him to Naples; there he caught a cold when hunting, from the consequences of which he died in his seventieth year. His body was buried in the church of St. Francisco di PAOLO; Prince STIGLIANO and many of the Neapolitan nobility followed him to the grave.

Thus lived and died PAOLO BOI, the Syracusan, the European champion of the noble game.

Less varied and less romantic, but not less active and less chivalrous, appears the as yet short career of the modern PAOLO, the transatlantic champion of our noble game, PAUL MORPHY. It is true he has not as yet encountered all the different masters of world-wide fame, but their number has also greatly augmented; nor is he, like his predecessor, restricted to one hemisphere, for he has crossed the ocean in order to challenge the celebrities of the other; and although, according to the customs of the times, princely opponents were denied to him,* he has (what in our times is considered far more), though scarcely of age, conquered long-tried and victory-crowned magnates.

With daring, but justifiable confidence, he questioned the superiority of the Old World over the New in regard to the noble game, and, not deterred by the unwonted impressions of foreign nations and manners, he readily undertook the practical solution of the question. Like the Syracusan, he was not to find a conqueror, and but few equal to himself; like PAOLO BOI, he will henceforth in his more distant home hold an undisputed sceptre.(F)

If his career appears more simple and sober, it is not his fault, but that of time and circumstances. The activity of his person and his gay amiability render him at least the

[* If we are not mistaken, he has had several princely opponents, amongst others, his Royal Highness Prince Charles of Brunswick.—*Translator.*]

equal of his predecessor in chivalry; and the great advance Chess has made since in theory and in practice, which requires, above all, long and profound study, makes his merits the greater, especially when we consider his youth and his complete knowledge of the theoretical part of the game, which, in our days, has swelled to most voluminous dimensions.

Natural talent and innate genius, favoured by other happy accidental circumstances, have directed his energies in the same channel with the Syracusan. Like PAOLO BOI, he received his first instructions at the well-disposed hands of his father, and, like the former, the best opponents of his native town soon ceased to be a match for him.

What may have been the happy day-dreams of the boy, when, twelve years old, sitting in the Jefferson Academy at New Orleans, in the midst of his studies, he called to mind his having beaten the day before the well-known master, EUGENE ROUSSEAU, or his uncle, Mr. ERNEST MORPHY? What presentiments of future triumphs must have passed through his mind when he gathered his first laurels from the well-known Hungarian player, Herr LÖWENTHAL, while passing through his native town in the spring of 1850!

Then came a time of arduous study, of mastering all existing analytical researches from the time he first entered Saint Joseph's College, in the beginning of the year 1851, to his visit to the Great Congress of New York, 1857, where he was to prove his acquirements before a large circle, and lay the foundation-stone of his future fame.

We shall give his victorious career from that time in detailed accounts, tell of his performances in New York and in New Orleans, and follow him in his great Chess voyage over the Atlantic and through England to the Continent. We shall conclude with a complete exposition of his peculiar style of play, and with its influence upon the future theoretical perfection of the game, illustrating the whole with games really played by that master.

As to his personal merits apart from Chess, his career, which has scarcely begun, offers but scanty matter.*

[* This is scarcely to be reconciled with what has been said in the former page as to his chivalry equalling at least that of Paolo Boi.—*Translator.*]

He has said of himself, that his life was as yet too short to give scope for a biography—that the whole could be given in one sentence:—Learnt Chess at ten, conquered in the tournament at the age of twenty.(G)

Born in Louisiana on the 22nd of June, 1837, he descends, by his father's side, from a Spanish, by his mother's side, from a French, family. This would, perhaps, explain the rare union of the two qualities of French vivacity and Spanish grace which we find blended in him. Who could fail to find out in his games this great vivacity? and still all eyewitnesses extol not only the elegance of his personal bearing and graceful way of moving the pieces, but also his remarkable coolness and collectedness in the most difficult positions and most changeful phases of the game. At the moment of victory, however, his whole appearance becomes enlivened, and whilst his shining eyes run over the different squares, he explains with rapidly flowing words the blunders which have been made, whilst with quickly moving fingers he reproduces mentioned positions.(H)

Of low and unsightly stature, and of darkish hue, only those that can see below the surface of things will recognize in his shining eyes, developed forehead, and amiable bearing, the extraordinary being. Of a perfectly harmless character, of a truly noble and liberal (taken in its classical sense) disposition, he possesses that chivalrous spirit which, being founded on moral consciousness, allows no infringement on one's dignity and self-respect, but, in opposition to arrogant self-conceit, is in complete accordance with bashful modesty. This pure and beautiful personal integrity will, probably, through the love of the noble game, not only be preserved, but even be brought to a still higher standard of perfection.

The first rudiments of Chess he learnt at the age of ten years from his father, and after a year and a half he was enabled to beat not only his father, but the far stronger brother of his father, Mr. ERNEST MORPHY. He also won the majority of the many games he played with EUGENE ROUSSEAU in 1849 and 1850; and of the three games he played with Herr LÖWENTHAL, he won two and drew one. During his sojourn in Spring Hill, near Mobile, in Alabama, where he was a pupil in the College of St. Joseph till the year

1854, he played with decided advantage against two strong players, JAMES M'CONNEL and Judge A. B. MERK. Afterwards he studied law, and during the preparation for his future profession of a lawyer, he was called to New York to the tournament by the proclamation of the great Congress, where his genius procured him the highest prize and honours.(1)

This triumph seems to have awakened in him the full consciousness of his powers, and the concomitant wish for similar success and reputation in the Old World. Not caring about distance or foreign manners, he has daringly crossed the seas, entered confidently unknown Chess circles, and, like his predecessor PAOLO, with chivalrous feelings expecting chivalrous treatment, he encountered renowned and redoubtable antagonists, and, by defeating them, founded for himself a secure and world-wide reputation.(2)

Thus he, more than any other, is decked with the chivalrous virtues of the Italian master; and we may, in perfect truth, recognize without hesitation the following parallel:—

THE TWO PAULS.

The first Paul took his course, three hundred years ago,
 Across the sea to meet the sturdy knights of Spain;
 In mental arms arrayed, with true Chess armour on,
 A score of haughty foemen by his brave hand were slain.

The second Paul o'er ocean's thousand leagues has sailed,
 To joust with the chieftains of all the eastern world;
 History shall tell what bold foes before him paled,
 And how from lofty thrones the kings of Chess be hurled.

NOTES.

A.

The following sketch of Paolo Boi is taken from a more detailed article, written by Herr von Oppenheim in the *Schachzeitung* of 1848, p. 433. The facts are taken from Pietro Carrera's work.

B.

Leonardo da Cutri, who, like Paul Morphy, distinguished himself, when yet a boy, in Chess, obtained from this fact the nickname, *Il Puttino* (the little). After having conquered Ruy Lopez, King Philip gave him the title, "Il Cavaliere errante."

As to the appellations of *light* and *lustre* (*lumi e splendori*) which are attributed to Salvio, Pietro Carrera says, in his work *Il Giorno degli Scacchi, Militello*, 1617, p. 99:—"Pria che andasse in Ispagna trascorse tutta Italia in contrandosi i maggiori professori del giouco fra quali vienne in zuffa col Puttino gambi si conobbero pari perico son chiamati dal Salvio lumi e splendori della professione degli Scacchi."

C.

We refer here again to Pietro Carrera, who gives the following description:—

"Paolo Boi Siciliano, della città di Siracusa detto il Siracusano, nacque in Siracusa di honoratissima famiglia e ricca. Fu caro à molti Principi Italiani e specialmente al Duca di Urbino ad alcuni Cardinali anzi al Pontefice istesso Pio V. il qualo gli haurebbe dato un grosso beneficio purchè egli si fosse vestito da Chierico; ei per vivere à gusto de suoi humori non volle ubligarsi a questo."

D.

The here-mentioned letter of Philip II. is literally as follows:—

"Illustrissimo Don Juan de Austria mi muy caro y my amado hermano, nuestro Capitan General de la Mar, de la persona y servicios de Pablo Boi Siracusano que esta os dara, se me ha hecho muy buena relacion y que agora va con desseo de continuarlos cerca de vuestra persona, y assi os he querido escrivir y rogaros, y encargaros mucho, como lo hago, le tengais por muy encomendado para favrerle y emplearle en las ocasiones, que se offrieren de mi servicio, que en ello recibir de vos particular contentamiento, y sea Illustrissimo Don Juan mi muy caro y mui amado hermano nuestro Capitan General de la Mar nuestro Senor en vuestra continua guarda.

"De Madrid a XXII de Agosto 1575.

"Vuestro buen hermano

"Jo. EL REY,

Ant. Perez."

E.

Pietro Carrera, in his work *Il Gioco degli Scacchi*, gives the following original description:—

"Jo nella mia giouentù ritrouandorni nella Città di Palermo nell' anno 1597, conobbi lui tutto imbianchito, ma di gagliarda complessione, e di più gagliardo ceruello, percioché vestina da giouane molto attillatamente e haveva capricci da giouane; non dimeno egli fù ornato di ottima qualità, percioché fu castissimo, e modestissimo, no volle mai moglie, fu splendido, e magnifico oltre modo, faceua spese e larghe limosine, vedeua Messa ogni giorno di continuo dando sempre la limosina al Sacerdote, che haueua celebrato, chiunque egli si fosse; si confessaua, e comunicaua allo spesso, fù amatissimo de' Religiosi; non soffri, che nessun pittore il ritrahasse e alcuni

ritratti di lui, che hoggidi vi sono, fur fatti alla sfuggita senza ch' egli il sapesse. Egli fu di statura più che commune, ma proportionata, di bella faccia, e vivace fù facondo nel vagionare allegro, e affabile con ciascheduno."

F.

Compare the following description, in the *American Chess Monthly* of September last:—

"When Paolo Boi in the sixteenth century wandered from Italy to encounter Ruy Lopez and Xerone in the grand Tournament at Madrid, he was merely obliged to pass over a small portion of an inland sea. But Paul Morphy has sailed across an ocean in search of unconquered foemen. When the eyes of the Chess world were turned to the matches between Labourdonnais and M'Donnel, and between Staunton and St. Amant, the contest was only between two nations. Now the battle is between two continents. The question is, whether the old world shall yield the sceptre to the new—whether the throne of that royal game which originated in the extremest orient shall now be established in the extremest occident. The youthful years and little previous practice of the American champion, the ripe age and large experience of his competitors, the high cultivation to which Chess has attained everywhere in Europe during the last few years, and the general enthusiasm which has been so lately aroused in this country: all conspire to give additional brilliancy to the transatlantic tour of Paul Morphy. While we confess that our sympathies, as is natural, are with our countryman, we cannot avoid noticing with sentiments of pleasure and words of praise the generous courtesy and gentlemanly kindness which he has thus far met at the hands of our European brethren."

G.

In *Frank Leslie's Newspaper*, October 31st, 1858, they write:—

"Mr. Morphy states that he is too young a man to have any history, and that his Chess career may be fully described as follows:— 'Learned Chess at ten, played in the Tournament at twenty.' His father taught him the moves of the game at ten years of age, and within eighteen months the boy could beat him, as also his uncle, the well-known amateur, Ernest Morphy. The celebrated Herr Löwenthal came to New Orleans in 1850; Paul, then only thirteen, played three games with him, winning two and drawing a third. Mr. Rousseau, the opponent of Mr. C. H. Stanley, also succumbed to his prowess; and we can safely say that Paul Morphy has never yet met any man whom he did not appear to have a perfect facility in check-mating. He is considered by the leading players in the Congress to be the most brilliant and successful amateur living; and, as he proposes shortly to visit Europe, we fully expect to hear of his beating all the great Chess magnates there, as he has done those of the New World."

H.

"Mr. Morphy is a most fascinating player for those looking on, and there is always a crowd around his board whenever he is *en lutte* with an opponent. His attention is not by any means riveted on the game, and he makes his moves with a speed approaching rapidity. Knights are thrown away, and Bishops sacrificed, apparently in oversight; Rooks are exchanged against Pawns, Queens left carelessly *en prise*, but the young general has certain victory in his eye; and when his antagonist, perchance, thinks he can at last win one game from this redoubtable young genius of the South, Morphy quietly suggests that mate may be given in five, six, or seven moves. Then begins an analysis of the game, the loser explaining to the bystander, why it was he failed to come off a winner, invariably appealing to Mr. Morphy for endorsement, who as invariably coincides with his questioner. It has now come to this: nearly every member of the Congress endeavours to make the game a draw, being more satisfied at such a result with this young hero than with winning from others."

I.

"Mr. Samuel Warren, in his *Introduction to the Study of the Law*, strongly recommends Chess as a most desirable recreation for those who are training for legal honours. He regards it as involving much wholesome mental discipline, temper, vigilance, rapid and long-sighted combinations, all being in requisition. Indeed, it is difficult to conceive a game more commendable on these grounds."—See *Schachzeitung* of 1849, p. 347.

J.

Thus says Löwenthal in the *Era*:—

"We have great pleasure in announcing that Mr. Morphy has arrived in London, and has met with a most enthusiastic reception from the members of the St. George's Club, where he paid a visit last Wednesday, and played several excellent games. The prompt visit of this great player to England betokens his great anxiety to give the players of Europe an opportunity of encountering him. His powers as a Chess player have not in any degree been exaggerated. The quickness with which he forms and carries out his combinations is truly surprising. He possesses also another important quality, that of perfect coolness and self-possession."

~~~~~

## CHAPTER III.

GAMES PLAYED BY PAUL MORPHY IN HIS EARLY YOUTH.

## GAME I.

Played with Mr. ROUSSEAU at New Orleans, May 7, 1850.

*(Counter Gambit in the King's Knight's Opening.)*

- | <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)              | <i>Black.</i> (Mr. ROUSSEAU.)      |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth                   | 1. P. to K. fourth                 |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third                | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third              |
| 3. B. to Q. B. fourth                | 3. P. to K. B. fourth <sup>1</sup> |
| 4. P. to Q. third <sup>2</sup>       | 4. Kt. to K. B. third              |
| 5. Castles                           | 5. P. to Q. third <sup>3</sup>     |
| 6. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth               | 6. P. to Q. fourth                 |
| 7. P. takes P.                       | 7. Kt. takes P.                    |
| 8. Kt. to Q. B. third                | 8. Q. Kt. to K. second             |
| 9. Q. to K. B. third                 | 9. P. to Q. B. third <sup>4</sup>  |
| 10. Q. Kt. to K. fourth <sup>5</sup> | 10. P. takes Kt.                   |
| 11. Q. to K. B. seventh (ch.)        | 11. K. to Q. second                |
| 12. Q. to K. sixth (check)           | 12. K. to Q. B. second             |
| 13. Q. takes K. P. (check)           | 13. Q. to Q. third                 |
| 14. Q. takes Q. (check)              | 14. K. takes Q.                    |
| 15. Kt. to K. B. seventh (ch.)       | 15. K. to K. third                 |
| 16. Kt. takes R.                     | 16. P. takes P.                    |
| 17. P. takes P.                      | 17. K. to B. third                 |
| 18. P. to Q. Kt. fourth              | 18. Q. B. to K. third              |
| 19. R. to K. square                  | 19. B. to K. Kt. square            |
| 20. Q. B. to Q. Kt. second (ch.)     | 20. K. to Kt. fourth               |
| 21. R. to K. fifth (check)           | 21. K. to R. third <sup>6</sup>    |
| 22. B. to Q. B. square (ch.)         | 22. P. to K. Kt. fourth            |
| 23. R. takes Kt. P.                  | And wins.                          |

<sup>1</sup> This counter-gambit is considered hazardous; in its stead most books recommend "K. B. to Q. B. fourth." The danger is in the premature opening of the King's side, the consequences of which will be now seen in the impossibility of castling.

"P. to Q. fourth" is stronger, and preferred by most of the Chess masters.



<sup>3</sup> Black after his third move could not develop his game on the King's side, and his opponent has now completely the attack.

<sup>4</sup> In this position White makes a fine combination several moves deep, which clearly proves the profound mind of the young master.

<sup>5</sup> To understand the soundness of this sacrifice, it is not only required to see that after five moves the Rook may be won, but also to have a clear view of the position of Black, which enables White to keep the Kt. on K. R. eighth, thus materially contributing to the final victory.

<sup>6</sup> It is evident that the interposition of the Knight would give White a decided advantage by playing "Q. R. to K. square."

---

## GAME II.

Played with Herr LÖWENTHAL at New Orleans, May 25,  
1850.

(*Sicilian Opening.*)

| <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)            | <i>Black.</i> (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)       |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth                 | 1. P. to Q. B. fourth                 |
| 2. P. to K. B. fourth              | 2. P. to K. third                     |
| 3. Kt. to K. B. third              | 3. P. to Q. fourth                    |
| 4. P. takes P.                     | 4. P. takes P.                        |
| 5. P. to Q. fourth                 | 5. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth <sup>1</sup> |
| 6. B. to K. second                 | 6. B. takes Kt.                       |
| 7. B. takes B.                     | 7. Kt. to K. B. third                 |
| 8. Castles <sup>2</sup>            | 8. B. to K. second                    |
| 9. Q. B. to K. third               | 9. P. takes P.                        |
| 10. Q. B. takes P.                 | 10. Castles                           |
| 11. Kt. to Q. B. third             | 11. Kt. to Q. B. third                |
| 12. B. takes Kt.                   | 12. B. takes B. <sup>3</sup>          |
| 13. Kt. takes P.                   | 13. B. takes Q. Kt. P.                |
| 14. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square         | 14. B. to Q. fifth (check)            |
| 15. K. to R. square                | 15. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square            |
| 16. P. to Q. B. third              | 16. B. to Q. B. fourth                |
| 17. P. to K. B. fifth <sup>4</sup> | 17. Q. to K. R. fifth                 |
| 18. P. to K. Kt. third             | 18. Q. to K. Kt. fourth               |
| 19. P. to K. B. sixth              | 19. Kt. to K. fourth                  |
| 20. P. takes P.                    | 20. K. R. to Q. square                |
| 21. B. to K. fourth                | 21. Q. takes P. (on Kt. second)       |
| 22. Q. to K. R. fifth              | 22. B. to Q. third                    |

- |                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 23. B. takes P. (check) <sup>5</sup> | 23. K. to B. square                  |
| 24. B. to K. fourth                  | 24. R. to K. R. third                |
| 25. Q. to K. B. fifth                | 25. Q. takes P. <sup>6</sup>         |
| 26. Q. R. to Q. K. second            | 26. Q. R. to K. square               |
| 27. Kt. to K. B. sixth               | 27. Q. R. to K. third                |
| 28. Q. R. to K. Kt. second           | 28. Q. takes R. (check) <sup>7</sup> |
| 29. B. takes Q.                      | 29. K. R. takes Kt.                  |
| 30. Q. takes R. <sup>8</sup>         | 30. R. takes Q.                      |
| 31. R. takes R.                      | 31. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth              |
| 32. R. to K. B. fifth                | 32. P. to Q. Kt. third               |
| 33. B. to Q. fifth                   | 33. Kt. to K. R. third               |
| 34. R. to K. B. sixth                | 34. K. to Kt. second                 |
| 35. R. to Q. B. sixth                | 35. P. to Q. R. fourth               |
| 36. R. to Q. B. seventh              | 36. K. to Kt. third                  |
| 37. K. to Kt. second                 | 37. P. to K. B. third                |
| 38. K. to B. third                   | 38. Kt. to B. fourth                 |
| 39. B. to K. fourth                  | 39. K. to Kt. fourth                 |
| 40. B. takes Kt.                     | 40. K. takes B.                      |
| 41. P. to K. R. fourth               | 41. K. to Kt. third                  |
| 42. R. to Q. B. sixth                | 42. K. to R. fourth                  |
| 43. K. to Kt. third                  | 43. P. to K. B. fourth               |
| 44. R. to K. B. sixth                | 44. P. to B. fifth (check)           |
| 45. K. takes P.                      | 45. B. to K. B. seventh              |
| 46. K. to K. fourth                  | 46. B. to Q. B. fourth               |
| 47. R. to B. fifth (check)           | 47. K. takes P.                      |
| 48. R. takes B. <sup>9</sup>         | 48. P. takes R.                      |
| 49. K. to Q. fifth                   | And wins.                            |

<sup>1</sup> This move of Black contains the germ of his future misfortunes. It facilitates the development of the opposite King's side, and gives, through the following exchange, to the K. B. of White a menacing attitude.

<sup>2</sup> It must be observed how hard the first player tries to develop his forces, which is a clear proof of the talent of the young genius for the proper treatment of the game. With great tact, he does not defend the Q. P. with Q. B. P., but prefers to bring his pieces into play. It would be preferable for Black to play, "8. B. P. takes Q. P.," and "9. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third," should White retake P. with Q.; it is easily to be seen that Herr L. underrates the powers of his youthful adversary. Black's 25th move shows this effectually, as well as the premature attacks on the 17th and 38th moves.

<sup>3</sup> Now begins a very interesting series of moves which gives White occasion to make his attacking combination, beginning with the

17th move. It is another proof of the deep-reaching sight of the youthful master.

<sup>4</sup> The advance of this P. is characteristic of the style of the young adept, whose chief art consists in an elegant introduction of the pieces behind advancing Pawns. Black loses by his move with the Q., valuable time, of which loss his clever adversary immediately makes the most.—*See the conclusion of note*<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> An excellent combination, which proves the clear sight of the young genius through all the intricacies of the position.

<sup>6</sup> By this the White Rook got hold of an open attacking line.—*See again note*<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>7</sup> Black has no other choice, to parry the menacing move of the R. from K. Kt. second to K. Kt. eighth; and the blunder committed on the 25th move now tells.

<sup>8</sup> The steady and continuous march toward a speedy conclusion is a good example of an energetic pursuit of gained advantages.

<sup>9</sup> The mentioned energy is here at its height, and foreshadows, already at that tender age, the future perfection of the young master.

### GAME III.

Played with Mr. M'CONNEL.

(*French Opening.*)

| <i>White.</i> (Mr. M'CONNEL.)  | <i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)    |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth             | 1. P. to K. third          |
| 2. P. to Q. fourth             | 2. P. to Q. fourth         |
| 3. P. to K. fifth <sup>1</sup> | 3. P. to Q. B. fourth      |
| 4. P. to Q. B. third           | 4. Kt. to Q. B. third      |
| 5. P. to K. B. fourth          | 5. Q. to Q. Kt. third      |
| 6. Kt. to K. B. third          | 6. Q. B. to Q. second      |
| 7. P. to Q. R. third           | 7. Kt. to K. B. third      |
| 8. P. to Q. Kt. fourth         | 8. P. takes Q. P.          |
| 9. P. takes P.                 | 9. Q. R. to Q. B. square   |
| 10. B. to Q. Kt. second        | 10. Kt. to K. B. fourth    |
| 11. Q. to Q. third             | 11. K. B. takes P. (check) |
| 12. P. takes B.                | 12. Q. Kt. takes Kt. P.    |
| 13. Q. to Q. second            | 13. R. to Q. B. seventh    |
| 14. Q. to Q. square            | 14. K. Kt. to K. sixth     |

And White surrendered.

<sup>1</sup> The premature advance of the King's Pawn, which is so much objected to by all Chess authorities, and should be carefully avoided, is exemplified here; "K. P. takes Q. P." would have been the proper

move. The answer of Black, "P. to Q. B. fourth," shows clearly that in his early youth the champion had already mastered the theoretical part of the game, and knew well how to bring theory to bear on practice.

---

GAME IV.

Played with Judge A. B. MEEK.

(*Scotch Gambit.*)

| <i>White.</i> (Judge MEEK.)               | <i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)         |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth                        | 1. P. to K. fourth              |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third                     | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third           |
| 3. P. to Q. fourth                        | 3. P. takes P.                  |
| 4. B. to Q. B. fourth                     | 4. B. to Q. B. fourth           |
| 5. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth                    | 5. Kt. to K. R. third           |
| 6. Kt. takes B. P.                        | 6. Kt. takes Kt.                |
| 7. B. takes Kt. (check)                   | 7. K. takes B.                  |
| 8. Q. to R. fifth (check)                 | 8. P. to K. Kt. third           |
| 9. Q. takes B.                            | 9. P. to Q. third <sup>1</sup>  |
| 10. Q. to Q. Kt. fifth <sup>2</sup>       | 10. K. R. to K. square          |
| 11. Q. to Q. Kt. third (ch.) <sup>3</sup> | 11. P. to Q. fourth             |
| 12. P. to K. B. third                     | 12. Kt. to Q. R. fourth         |
| 13. Q. to Q. third                        | 13. P. takes P.                 |
| 14. P. takes P.                           | 14. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)   |
| 15. P. to K. Kt. third.                   | 15. R. takes P. (check)         |
| 16. K. to B. second                       | 16. Q. to K. second             |
| 17. Kt. to Q. second                      | 17. R. to K. sixth <sup>4</sup> |
| 18. Q. to Q. Kt. fifth                    | 18. P. to Q. B. third           |
| 19. Q. to K. B. square                    | 19. B. to K. R. sixth           |
| 20. Q. to Q. square                       | 20. Q. R. to K. B. square       |
| 21. Kt. to K. B. third                    | 21. K. to K. square             |

And White resigned.

<sup>1</sup> The books recommend "P. to Q. fourth," a move which was then unknown.

<sup>2</sup> This, and the next weak move of White, are taken advantage of by the opposite party with equal brilliancy and energy.

[Very true in regard to Morphy's play; but the *German Handbook*, if we mistake not, recommends "Q. to Q. Kt. fifth" for the defence. —*Trans.*]

<sup>3</sup> White ought to have castled now, and then taken up the attack by playing "Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth," and "Q. Kt. to Q. second."

<sup>4</sup> The obstinate pursuit of the Q. shows the mentioned ability of the champion in its full light.

## GAME V.

Played with Judge A. B. MEEK.

(*King's Knight's Gambit.*)

*White.* (MORPHY.)

*Black.* (Judge MEEK.)

- |                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth               | 1. P. to K. fourth                 |
| 2. P. to K. B. fourth            | 2. P. takes P.                     |
| 3. Kt. to K. B. third            | 3. P. to K. Kt. fourth             |
| 4. B. to Q. B. fourth            | 4. B. to K. Kt. second             |
| 5. P. to K. R. fourth            | 5. P. to K. Kt. fifth <sup>1</sup> |
| 6. Kt. to Kt. fifth              | 6. Kt. to K. R. third              |
| 7. P. to Q. fourth               | 7. P. to K. B. third               |
| 8. Q. B. takes P.                | 8. P. takes Kt.                    |
| 9. B. takes P.                   | 9. K. B. to B. third               |
| 10. Q. to Q. second <sup>2</sup> | 10. B. takes B.                    |
| 11. P. takes B.                  | 11. Kt. to K. B. second            |
| 12. B. takes Kt. (check)         | 12. K. takes B.                    |
| 13. Q. to B. fourth (check)      | 13. K. to Kt. square               |
| 14. Castles <sup>3</sup>         | 14. Q. to K. second                |
| 15. Kt. to Q. B. third           | 15. P. to Q. B. third              |
| 16. Q. R. to K. square           | 16. P. to Q. third                 |
| 17. Kt. to Q. five               | 17. P. takes Kt.                   |
| 18. P. takes P.                  |                                    |

And wins.

<sup>1</sup> Instead of advancing the Kt. P., which erroneous move gave Morphy a most welcome opportunity of displaying his usual brilliancy, the second player ought to have played "P. to K. R. third."

<sup>2</sup> It is characteristic of Morphy's style, that he declined to take the offered piece, only to maintain the attack, which his opponent would have turned in his favour by taking R. P. with B. checking.

<sup>3</sup> The energy with which White now drives home his advantage of position, is well deserving attention.

[The author here further remarks, that evidently Black could not have interposed the Queen instead of moving the King, on account of White's obvious reply, "P. to Kt. sixth (check)." This observation, however, seems to be founded on some palpable mistake.—*Translator.*]

## GAME VI.

Played with Mr. ERNEST MORPHY.

*(Ruy Lopez Game.)**White.* (P. MORPHY.)*Black.* (MR. E. MORPHY.)

- |                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth                    | 1. P. to K. fourth                  |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third                 | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third               |
| 3. B. to Q. Kt. fifth                 | 3. B. to Q. B. fourth               |
| 4. P. to Q. B. third                  | 4. Q. to K. second <sup>1</sup>     |
| 5. Castles                            | 5. Kt. to K. B. third               |
| 6. P. to Q. fourth                    | 6. B. to Q. Kt. third               |
| 7. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth <sup>2</sup> | 7. P. to K. R. third                |
| 8. B. takes K. Kt.                    | 8. P. takes B. <sup>3</sup>         |
| 9. P. to Q. fifth                     | 9. Kt. to Q. square                 |
| 10. Kt. to K. R. fifth                | 10. P. to Q. B. third               |
| 11. Kt. to K. B. fifth                | 11. Q. to Q. B. fourth              |
| 12. P. to Q. Kt. fourth               | 12. Q. to K. B. square <sup>4</sup> |
| 13. P. takes P.                       | 13. Q. P. takes P.                  |
| 14. Kt. to Q. sixth (check)           | 14. K. to K. second                 |
| 15. Q. to Q. third                    | 15. P. takes B.                     |
| 16. Kt. takes B. (check)              | 16. R. takes Kt.                    |
| 17. R. to Q. square                   | 17. Q. to K. Kt. second             |
| 18. Q. to Q. seventh (check)          | 18. K. to B. square                 |
| 19. Q. takes R.                       |                                     |

And wins.

<sup>1</sup> "K. Kt. to K. second" would have been the proper move. The way in which White follows up the advantage afforded to him by his opponent's weak reply, again exemplifies in a forcible manner the deep knowledge of position of the youthful hero.

<sup>2</sup> This way of pinning the adverse K. Kt. very often occurs in Morphy's games, and is one of the most striking peculiarities of his style. In the present case, it not only leads to a rapid development of his game, but serves to provide for the exigencies of both attack and defence.

<sup>3</sup> He could not have taken with the Queen without losing a Pawn. This, however, enables White to gain a desirable advantage, by bringing his K. Kt. to a speedy co-operation.

<sup>4</sup> Of course the Queen could not have taken the Bishop. White does not allow his antagonist a moment's rest, and continues his attack with his usual spirit.

## • CHAPTER IV.

THE CHESS CONGRESS AT NEW YORK, IN THE AUTUMN  
OF 1857.

THE rapid progress of the New World in all the branches of practical activity, has also extended to the noble game of Chess. In innumerable places Chess societies were started, and with them strong players were formed; congresses, tournaments, and flourishing periodicals, were called into life. Already, Europe is obliged to make great efforts to keep up its old reputation. As in commercial enterprises of every sort, a quick conception and rapid execution cause the capital to be returned with interest, thus the New World threatens the Old in regard to the noble game of Chess with speedy outstripping.

There is such a lively enthusiasm for the royal game beyond the seas, that, considering the practical sense and the absorbing energy with which the inhabitants of the New World carry everything they undertake, they promise in a short time to bring before us the most astonishing results.

The extension of existing Chess clubs, as regards their inner as well as outer circle of activity, the formation of new clubs in the different towns, a truly imposing Chess fraternization of all the players of the United States to form one great Chess association, are the next fruits, springing up, so to say, overnight like mushrooms.

Daily meetings of the clubs, wherein instructive lectures and interesting consultation games take place, whilst the members exercise their influence out of the clubs to augment the popularity of the game; numerous contests by correspondence on the part of different clubs, accelerated by the telegraphic wire, are among the measures which gradually make the high worth of our game in a social and moral sense acknowledged. There may be mentioned, besides, such means as

projects to form Chess museums, containing Chess antiquities and remarkable Chess jewels, the manufacture and exhibition of valuable Chess articles, the use of lithography and photography for the production and general extension of portraits of the celebrated masters: each and all contributing to increase the reputation of the noble game and its representatives.(A)

The most influential Chess clubs are in New York and New Orleans. It is from the latter that Morphy sprang, and for this reason the Chess Club of New Orleans has contributed most in the propagation of the game in the other hemisphere. The other club has exercised its influence in a rather extensive sense: its statutes have become models for most of the provincial clubs, and it has attracted to itself the most active literary powers of the United States.(B)

The press, which exercises a powerful influence upon everything in the other continent, has there greatly promoted the culture of our noble game; nearly a dozen extensively read newspapers give up part of their columns to Chess, amongst them several illustrated weekly papers in New York.(C) Above all, however, ought to be recognized the efforts of the learned and talented master, DANIEL WILLARD FISKE, who publishes at New York a monthly periodical devoted to Chess. It is to his efforts that we owe chiefly the meeting of the Chess Congress, where celebrities of all parts of the United States assembled, and thus made it the focus, so to say, of all Chess interest, and the source of the future general Chess fraternization.(D) The best proof, in that respect, has our hero, PAUL MORPHY himself given, when at the dinner at the Chess Congress he gave his toast "to the representatives of the Chess literature at New York, whose efforts," he said, "had so materially contributed to the general extension of the game." His speech was duly acknowledged, first by W. I. A. FULLER, the then editor of the Chess articles in FRANK LESLIE'S *Illustrated Newspaper*, and afterwards by DANIEL FISKE. The former, in his speech, quoted the words of Cicero in his famous speech for the poet Accias: "Hæc studia adolescentium alunt, senectutem oblectant, secundas res ornant, adversis perfugium ac solatium præbent, oblectant domi, non impediunt foris, pernoctant nobiscum, peregrinantur, rusticantur." If Cicero," he said, "had applied all these words



to Chess, he could not have pronounced a truer idea. Chess had nothing to do with daily-life concerns :

‘The world forgetting, by the world forgot,’

we feel free of all cares, and do not even devote a thought to the probable trials of the morrow.” At the above-named dinner, D. W. Fiske, in a very able speech, alluded also to what the Germans had done for Chess, and whilst proposing the health of HEYDEBRAND VON DER LASA, of whom he spoke in the very highest terms, enumerated the different points for which Chess is indebted to Germany.

The Germans may be justly proud at the full acknowledgment of their worth by the free sons of the West, and see therein new proofs of the future growth of the interest in the noble game on the transatlantic continent. It is true the persons of whom we spoke, and who spoke, were but few, and belong to the higher class of connoisseurs; their harmonious unanimity however, and the larger audience before whom they spoke, give us a living proof of the earnest of their endeavours, and a charming picture of the rapid progress which the culture of the noble game has made in every direction.

They give us also a relative scale for the appreciation of him who chiefly has profited by the great advancement which Chess has made on the other side of the water; who was called *the pearl* of the congress by its members, was looked upon by them with pride, and, in fact, took a prominent part in the most important affair of the American Association. This chief performance of the congress took place in the month of October, and consisted of two tournaments: one between the stronger players, and one between the weaker ones. The lists of the first contained sixteen members, paired by lot as follows:—

#### FIRST TOURNEY.

- |                                           |     |   |          |
|-------------------------------------------|-----|---|----------|
| 1. PAUL MORPHY, from New Orleans .        | won | . | 3 games. |
| JAMES THOMPSON, from New York             | „   | . | 0        |
| 2. LOUIS PAULSEN, from Dubuque, in Iowa „ |     | . | 3        |
| S. B. CALTHROP, from Connecticut .        | „   | . | 0        |
| 3. A. B. MEEK, from Alabama . . .         | „   | . | 3        |
| W. I. A. FULLER, from New York .          | „   | . | 2        |

- |    |                                     |   |   |          |
|----|-------------------------------------|---|---|----------|
| 4. | H. P. MONTGOMERY, from Philadelphia | „ | . | 3 games. |
|    | W. S. ALLISON, from Minnesota       | . | „ | 1        |
| 5. | TH. LICHTENHEIN, from New York      | . | „ | 3        |
|    | C. H. STANLEY, from New York        | . | „ | 2        |
| 6. | Dr. B. J. RAPHAEL, from Kentucky    | . | „ | 3        |
|    | H. KENNICOTT, from Illinois         | . | „ | 2        |
| 7. | F. PERRIN, from New York            | . | . | 3        |
|    | R. KNOTT, from Brooklyn             | . | . | 2        |
| 8. | N. MARACHE, from New York           | . | . | 3        |
|    | D. W. FISKE, from New York          | . | . | 2        |

## SECOND TOURNEY.

- |    |                 |               |                   |
|----|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. | P. MORPHY       | <i>versus</i> | A. B. MEER.       |
|    | 3               |               | 0                 |
| 2. | L. PAULSEN      | <i>versus</i> | H. P. MONTGOMERY. |
|    | 3               |               | 0                 |
| 3. | TH. LICHTENHEIN | <i>versus</i> | F. PERRIN.        |
|    | 3               |               | 0                 |
| 4. | B. J. RAPHAEL   | <i>versus</i> | N. MARACHE.       |
|    | 3               |               | 2                 |

## THIRD TOURNEY.

- |    |            |               |                  |
|----|------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. | P. MORPHY  | <i>versus</i> | TH. LICHTENHEIN. |
|    | 5          |               | 0                |
| 2. | L. PAULSEN | <i>versus</i> | RAPHAEL.         |
|    | 5          |               | 0                |

## FOURTH TOURNEY.

- |           |               |             |
|-----------|---------------|-------------|
| P. MORPHY | <i>versus</i> | L. PAULSEN. |
| 5         |               | 1           |

From the above it may be seen that out of sixteen games, which MORPHY played with different antagonists, he only lost one, against his nearest opponent, who, on his part, has not lost a single game against any other of his adversaries. From these results it may be concluded that the prizes were obtained by those who were justly entitled to them, and that therein luck and merit went hand in hand. The high quality of the games enforces our argument, as they prove considerable superiority on the part of the victors.

We select here some of them as characteristic of the above, and leave it to our readers to judge for themselves.

GAMES PLAYED BY PAUL MORPHY AT THE CHESS CONGRESS  
OF 1857.

## GAME VII.

Played with Mr. LOUIS PAULSEN.

*(Queen's Knight's Opening.)**White.* (Mr. L. PAULSEN).*Black.* (MORPHY.)

- |                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth                  | 1. P. to K. fourth                  |
| 2. Kt. to Q. B. third               | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third *             |
| 3. Kt. to K. B. third               | 3. B. to Q. B. fourth               |
| 4. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth            | 4. Kt. to K. B. third               |
| 5. Castles                          | 5. Castles                          |
| 6. Kt. takes K. P.                  | 6. R. to K. square <sup>1</sup>     |
| 7. Kt. takes Kt. <sup>2</sup>       | 7. Q. P. takes Kt.                  |
| 8. B. to Q. B. fourth               | 8. P. to Q. Kt. fourth <sup>3</sup> |
| 9. B. to K. second <sup>4</sup>     | 9. Kt. takes K. P.                  |
| 10. Kt. takes Kt. <sup>5</sup>      | 10. R. takes Kt.                    |
| 11. B. to K. B. third               | 11. R. to K. third                  |
| 12. P. to Q. B. third <sup>6</sup>  | 12. Q. to Q. sixth                  |
| 13. P. to Q. Kt. fourth             | 13. B. to Q. Kt. third              |
| 14. P. to Q. R. fourth              | 14. P. takes P.                     |
| 15. Q. takes P.                     | 15. B. to Q. second                 |
| 16. Q. R. to R. second <sup>7</sup> | 16. Q. R. to K. square <sup>8</sup> |
| 17. Q. to Q. R. sixth               | 17. Q. takes B.                     |
| 18. P. takes Q.                     | 18. R. to Kt. third (check)         |
| 19. K. to B. square                 | 19. Q. B. to R. sixth               |
| 20. R. to Q. square <sup>9</sup>    | 20. B. to Kt. seventh (check)       |
| 21. K. to Kt. square                | 21. B. takes P. (dis. check)        |
| 22. K. to B. square                 | 22. B. to Kt. seventh (check)       |
| 23. K. to Kt. square                | 23. B. to R. sixth (dis. check)     |
| 24. K. to R. square                 | 24. K. B. takes P.                  |
| 25. Q. to K. B. square              | 25. B. takes Q.                     |
| 26. R. takes B.                     | 26. R. to K. seventh                |
| 27. Q. R. to Q. R. square           | 27. R. to K. R. third               |
| 28. P. to Q. fourth                 | 28. B. to K. sixth                  |

And White resigns.

[\* In an elaborate analysis, published by the *Berlin Schachzeitung* of 1856, and afterwards translated by the *Chess Monthly*, we have endeavoured to show that this move of Black is erroneous, and that the best answer to it on the part of the first player would be, 3. "P. to K. B. fourth."—*Trans.*]

<sup>1</sup> "Kt. takes Kt." instead, would have been advantageously replied to with "P. to Q. fourth."

<sup>2</sup> It would be bad play on the part of White, to retreat his Knight to Q. third, in order to keep the Pawn. The following variations will demonstrate our opinion. Suppose:—

| <i>White.</i>              |  | <i>Black.</i>                           |  |
|----------------------------|--|-----------------------------------------|--|
| 7. Kt. to Q. third         |  | 7. B. to Q. fifth                       |  |
| 8. R. to K. square, or (A) |  | 8. B. takes Kt. and wins the Pawn back. |  |
| (A).                       |  |                                         |  |
| 8. Q. Kt. to K. second     |  | 8. B. to Q. Kt. third                   |  |
| 9. B. takes Kt.            |  | 9. Q. P. takes B.                       |  |
| 10. P. to K. fifth         |  | 10. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth                 |  |

And Black again has the better game.

Morphy, however, thinks that the first player should be able to maintain the Pawn by playing "Kt. to Q. third" on the seventh move, although his game would be very cramped.

<sup>3</sup> At this point "Kt. takes K. P." would again prove fatal for White's answer, "B. takes B. P. (check)."

<sup>4</sup> Better than "B. to Q. Kt. third," which would have been replied to with "Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth," followed up, eventually, by "P. to Q. Kt. fifth."

<sup>5</sup> Had he played "B. to B. third," instead of taking the Knight, the following variations might have arisen:—

| <i>White.</i>                |  | <i>Black.</i>                               |  |
|------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------------|--|
| 10. B. to K. B. third        |  | 10. Kt. takes B. P.                         |  |
| 11. R. takes Kt.             |  | 11. Q. to Q. fifth                          |  |
| 12. Kt. to K. fourth, or (A) |  | 12. R. takes Kt. And wins.                  |  |
| (A).                         |  |                                             |  |
| 12. Q. to K. B. square       |  | 12. Q. takes R. (check) and mates next move |  |
|                              |  |                                             |  |

<sup>6</sup> This is a fatal error, of which Black very cleverly takes advantage. "P. to Q. third" was the proper move.

<sup>7</sup> He ought to have played here "Q. to R. sixth." Morphy immediately takes advantage of this mistake by his following spirited reply. A similar position occurred in a game played between Messrs. Anderssen and Dufresne, in which also the move of the Rook was preparatory to the subsequent sacrifice of the Queen.

<sup>8</sup> Threatening mate in two moves by taking R. with Q. In this position White ought to have played "Q. to Q. square," instead of offering the exchange of Queens.

<sup>9</sup> "Q. to Q. third" would have been of no avail on account of Black's answer, "P. to K. B. fourth."

## GAME VIII.

Between the same Opponents.

*(Sicilian Opening.)**White.* (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third <sup>1</sup>
3. P. to Q. fourth <sup>2</sup>
4. Kt. takes P.
5. B. to K. third
6. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth
7. B. takes B.
8. Kt. to Q. sixth (check)
9. Kt. takes B. (check)
10. B. to Q. third
11. Castles
12. Kt. to Q. second
13. P. to K. R. third
14. P. to Q. R. third
15. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
16. Kt. to Q. B. fourth
17. P. to K. B. third
18. Kt. takes Kt.
19. Q. to Q. second
20. Q. R. to Q. square <sup>3</sup>
21. Q. to K. B. second
22. P. to K. B. fourth
23. Q. takes P.
24. R. to K. B. second
25. R. takes Q.
26. Q. R. to Q. second
27. P. to K. fifth
28. K. R. to Q. fourth
29. P. takes P. (check)
30. R. to Q. B. fourth
31. P. to Q. R. fourth
32. B. to K. fourth
33. B. to K. B. third
34. R. to Q. B. sixth

*Black.* (MR. L. PAULSEN.)

1. P. to Q. B. fourth
2. P. to K. third
3. P. takes P.
4. B. to Q. B. fourth
5. Q. to Q. Kt. third
6. Kt. to K. B. third
7. Q. takes B.
8. K. to K. second
9. R. takes Kt.
10. Kt. to Q. B. third
11. P. to K. R. fourth
12. P. to K. R. fifth
13. P. to K. Kt. fourth
14. R. to K. Kt. square
15. Q. to Q. Kt. third
16. Q. to Q. B. second
17. Q. Kt. to K. fourth
18. Q. takes Kt.
19. R. to Kt. second
20. Q. R. to Q. square
21. P. to Q. Kt. third
22. P. takes P.
23. Q. to K. Kt. fourth
24. Q. takes Q.
25. Q. R. to K. Kt. square
26. Q. R. to K. R. square
27. Kt. to Q. fourth
28. P. to K. B. third
29. Kt. takes P.
30. K. to Q. square
31. Kt. to Q. fourth <sup>4</sup>
32. Kt. to Q. B. second
33. P. to Q. fourth
34. R. to Q. second

- |                                      |                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 35. B. to K. Kt. fourth              | 35. Q. R. to K. R. third        |
| 36. R. to K. second                  | 36. K. to K. second             |
| 37. K. to R. second                  | 37. K. to B. second             |
| 38. P. to K. Kt. third               | 38. P. takes P. (check)         |
| 39. K. takes P.                      | 39. R. to K. second             |
| 40. P. to K. R. fourth               | 40. Kt. to K. square            |
| 41. P. to K. R. fifth                | 41. Kt. to K. B. third          |
| 42. K. R. takes K. P.                | 42. R. takes R.                 |
| 43. B. takes R. (check)              | 43. K. to Kt. second            |
| 44. B. to K. Kt. fourth              | 44. Kt. takes P. (check)        |
| 45. B. takes Kt.                     | 45. R. takes B.                 |
| 46. R. to K. seventh (check)         | 46. K. to B. third <sup>5</sup> |
| 47. R. takes P.                      | 47. K. to K. fourth             |
| 48. R. to Q. R. sixth                | 48. R. to Kt. fifth (check)     |
| 49. K. to B. third                   | 49. R. to B. fifth (check)      |
| 50. K. to K. second                  | 50. P. to Q. Kt. fourth         |
| 51. P. takes P.                      | 51. R. to K. B. fifth           |
| 52. P. to Q. B. third                | 52. P. to Q. fifth <sup>6</sup> |
| 53. P. to Q. B. fourth               | 53. R. to K. R. fifth           |
| 54. P. to Q. B. fifth                | 54. R. to R. seventh (check)    |
| 55. K. to Q. third                   | 55. R. to R. sixth (check)      |
| 56. K. to B. second <sup>7</sup>     | 56. R. to R. seventh (check)    |
| 57. K. to Kt. third                  | 57. R. to R. sixth (check)      |
| 58. K. to R. fourth                  | 58. K. to Q. fourth             |
| 59. R. to Q. sixth (check)           | 59. K. to Q. B. fifth           |
| 60. P. to Q. B. sixth                | 60. R. to R. eighth             |
| 61. R. takes P. (check) <sup>8</sup> | 61. K. takes R.                 |
| 62. P. to Q. B. seventh              | 62. R. to K. R. square          |
| 63. P. to Q. Kt. sixth               | 63. K. to Q. B. fifth           |
| 64. P. to Q. Kt. seventh             |                                 |

And wins.

<sup>1</sup> This is the correct move in the Sicilian game, which does not appear to us to be favourable to the second player.

<sup>2</sup> "Kt. to Q. B. third" seems still better, for if Black should reply to it with "P. to Q. R. third," White could also very properly advance his Q. P.; it, however, the second player should play "Kt. to Q. B. third," then, 4th, "B. to Q. Kt. fifth" would be a good answer.

<sup>3</sup> It is one of the peculiarities of the Sicilian opening, that it soon enables the first player to bring his pieces to bear on his adversary's weak points, viz., the Queen's third and fourth squares. Of course an attacking player will not fail to avail himself of this opportunity.

<sup>4</sup> Our readers will see by the following moves, that in certain positions a Bishop can be more useful than a Knight.

<sup>5</sup> The ensuing end game is admirably conducted by both parties, but the deep-reaching sight of the victor transpires from his having changed at the right moment the minor pieces.

<sup>6</sup> An excellent stratagem, which could only be parried by his opponent's genius and perseverance. Observe also White's 56th and 61st move.

<sup>7</sup> It is obvious he could not have played "K. to B. fourth."

<sup>8</sup> This pretty termination gives another proof of Morphy's brilliancy of style.

### GAME. IX.

Played with Mr. TH. LICHTENHEIN.

(K. B. Opening.)

| <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)              | <i>Black.</i> (MR. LICHTENHEIN.)   |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth                   | 1. P. to K. fourth                 |
| 2. K. B. to Q. B. fourth             | 2. Kt. to K. B. third              |
| 3. Kt. to K. B. third                | 3. Kt. takes P.                    |
| 4. Q. Kt. to B. third <sup>1</sup>   | 4. P. to Q. fourth <sup>2</sup>    |
| 5. B. takes P. <sup>3</sup>          | 5. Kt. to K. B. third              |
| 6. B. to Q. Kt. third                | 6. B. to Q. third                  |
| 7. P. to Q. third                    | 7. Castles                         |
| 8. P. to K. R. third                 | 8. P. to K. R. third               |
| 9. Q. B. to K. third                 | 9. Kt. to Q. B. third              |
| 10. Q. to Q. second                  | 10. Kt. to Q. R. fourth            |
| 11. P. to K. Kt. fourth              | 11. Kt. takes B.                   |
| 12. R. P. takes Kt.                  | 12. Q. B. to Q. second             |
| 13. R. to K. Kt. square              | 13. Kt. to K. R. second            |
| 14. Q. Kt. to K. fourth <sup>4</sup> | 14. K. to R. square                |
| 15. P. to K. Kt. fifth               | 15. P. to K. R. fourth             |
| 16. Kt. to K. R. fourth              | 16. P. to K. Kt. third             |
| 17. Q. to K. second                  | 17. B. to Q. B. third <sup>5</sup> |
| 18. P. to K. B. fourth               | 18. P. takes P. <sup>6</sup>       |
| 19. B. to Q. fourth (check)          | 19. K. to Kt. square               |
| 20. Kt. to K. B. fifth <sup>7</sup>  | 20. R. to K. square                |
| 21. Kt. to R. sixth (check)          | 21. K. to B. square                |
| 22. Castles                          | 22. B. takes Kt.                   |

- |                                 |                                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 23. P. takes B.                 | 23. Q. to K. second                  |
| 24. P. to K. fifth <sup>8</sup> | 24. B. takes P.                      |
| 25. B. takes B.                 | 25. Q. takes B.                      |
| 26. R. to Q. seventh            | 26. Q. to K. Kt. second <sup>9</sup> |
| 27. Q. to Q. B. fourth          | 27. R. to K. second                  |
| 28. R. takes R.                 | 28. K. takes R.                      |
| 29. R. to K. square (check)     |                                      |

And Black surrendered.

<sup>1</sup> The authorship of this move, an analysis of which was given in the *Berlin Schachzeitung* of 1856, from the pen of Herr Smigielski, is due to the lamented Kieseritzky. It has been proved there, that the second player must win a Pawn by taking Kt. with Kt. first, and playing "P. to K. B. third" on the next move. On the other side, however, the first player will maintain a strong attack, a striking example of which is given in one of the subsequent games of Morphy, played with Mr. Barnes in London.

<sup>2</sup> This is a novel move, evidently made with the purpose to free his pieces. It may be preferred by many a practical player to the strictly defensive variation given in our preceding note.

<sup>3</sup> He could also have taken with Q. Knight, and retreated it afterwards to K. third, should Black have attacked it with Q. B. P.

<sup>4</sup> Observe the attack, which is now being concentrated upon Black's left wing, and maintained in the peculiar style of the young champion.

<sup>5</sup> The first step to subsequent defeat. This Bishop ought not to have relinquished the diagonal of great importance for the defence, reaching from Q. second to K. R. sixth.

<sup>6</sup> It would have been stronger to take the Kt. first, and then the Pawn.

<sup>7</sup> The mistake, pointed out in our last note, now tells. Neither Kt. can now be taken with impunity; for if B. takes Kt., the other Kt. mates; if, however, P. takes Kt., White can easily win by checking with Kt. on K. B. sixth.

<sup>8</sup> There we have again the sacrifice of a Pawn, so peculiar to Morphy, which is only the prelude to the decisive attack with his combined forces.

<sup>9</sup> Neither "R. to K. second," which would have been replied to with "Q. takes Q.," nor "K. to Kt. second," could have saved the game. The latter move would have led to the following variation:—

*White.*

*Black.*

26. R. takes K. B. P. (check)  
27. R. to B. eighth (check)

25. K. to Kt. second  
26. K. to R. square

And wins; as, evidently, neither R. nor Kt. can take the Rook.

[The German author here remarks, that if Black should now (on the 27th move) play "K. to Kt. second," White, after having



changed the Queens, and afterwards checked with "Rook on K. B. seventh," would finally win by taking the Q. B. P. We should think, however, that White in this case could at once decide the struggle by checking with "R. on K. Kt. eighth."—*Trans.*]

### GAME X.

Between the same Opponents.

(*Evans's Gambit.*)

| <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)             | <i>Black.</i> (Mr. LICHTENHEIN.)   |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth                  | 1. P. to K. fourth                 |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third               | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third              |
| 3. B. to Q. B. fourth               | 3. B. to Q. B. fourth              |
| 4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth              | 4. B. takes P.                     |
| 5. P. to Q. B. third                | 5. B. to Q. B. fourth              |
| 6. Castles                          | 6. Kt. to K. B. third <sup>1</sup> |
| 7. P. to Q. fourth                  | 7. P. takes P.                     |
| 8. P. takes P.                      | 8. B. to Q. Kt. third              |
| 9. P. to K. fifth <sup>2</sup>      | 9. P. to Q. fourth                 |
| 10. P. takes Kt.                    | 10. P. takes B.                    |
| 11. P. takes P. <sup>3</sup>        | 11. R. to K. Kt. square            |
| 12. R. to K. square (check)         | 12. Kt. to K. second               |
| 13. B. to K. Kt. fifth              | 13. Q. B. to K. third              |
| 14. Kt. to Q. B. third <sup>4</sup> | 14. B. to Q. R. fourth             |
| 15. Q. Kt. to K. fourth             | 15. R. takes P.                    |
| 16. Kt. to B. sixth (check)         | 16. K. to B. square                |
| 17. R. to K. fifth                  | 17. P. to Q. B. third              |
| 18. B. to R. sixth                  | 18. Kt. to K. B. fifth             |
| 19. R. takes B. <sup>5</sup>        | 19. P. takes R.                    |
| 20. K. Kt. to Kt. fifth             | 20. K. to K. second <sup>6</sup>   |
| 21. B. takes R.                     | 21. Kt. takes B.                   |
| 22. Q. to K. B. third               | 22. Q. takes P. <sup>7</sup>       |
| 23. R. to Q. square                 | 23. B. to Q. seventh               |
| 24. Kt. to Kt. eighth (check)       | 24. R. takes Kt.                   |
| 25. Q. to B. seventh (check)        | 25. K. to Q. square <sup>8</sup>   |
| 26. Kt. to B. third                 | And wins.                          |

<sup>1</sup> "P. to Q. third," seems the only plausible move at this stage of the game. To play now the King's Knight proves fatal, as will be seen by the following energetic attack on the part of White. Had Black however, instead of playing "B. to Q. B. fourth," on the fifth

move, retreated the B. to Q. R. fourth (which move we feel inclined to prefer for the defence), then "Kt. to K. B. third," on the sixth move, could have been made with perfect safety.

<sup>2</sup> "B. to Q. R. third" at this point seems to be still more efficacious.

<sup>3</sup> "B. to K. square (check)," as suggested by Herr Löwenthal, seems also a strong move; for if Black moves his K. to B. square, White plays "B. to Q. R. third (check)" with a good game.

<sup>4</sup> This is better than taking Kt. with B., as the latter move would have been answered with "Q. takes B.," and if, then, White plays "P. to Q. fifth," Black castles with a good position.

<sup>5</sup> "R. takes Kt." instead, followed up eventually by "Q. Kt. to K. R. fifth," would have been a simpler way of proceeding. The move in the text, however, is remarkable for its elegance.

<sup>6</sup> It is evident that the Q. Kt. could not be taken. In answer to "Q. to K. second," White would have obtained a strong attack by playing "Q. to K. R. fifth."

<sup>7</sup> "Kt. to B. fourth" would have been stronger.

<sup>8</sup> In reply to "K. to Q. third," White could have taken the Bishop with impunity.

## GAME XI.

Between the same Opponents.

(*K. Kt. Gambit.*)

| <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)        | <i>Black.</i> (Mr. LICHTENHEIN.) |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth             | 1. P. to K. fourth               |
| 2. P. to K. B. fourth          | 2. P. takes P.                   |
| 3. Kt. to K. B. third          | 3. P. to Q. fourth               |
| 4. P. takes P.                 | 4. B. to K. second <sup>1</sup>  |
| 5. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)  | 5. P. to Q. B. third             |
| 6. P. takes P.                 | 6. P. takes P.                   |
| 7. B. to Q. B. fourth          | 7. B. to R. fifth (check)        |
| 8. P. to K. Kt. third          | 8. P. takes P.                   |
| 9. Castles.                    | 9. P. takes P. (check)           |
| 10. K. to R. square            | 10. B. to B. third               |
| 11. Kt. to K. fifth            | 11. Kt. to R. third              |
| 12. P. to Q. fourth            | 12. B. takes Kt.                 |
| 13. Q. to K. R. fifth          | 13. Q. takes P.                  |
| 14. B. takes P. (check)        | 14. Kt. takes B.                 |
| 15. Q. takes Kt. (check)       | 15. K. to Q. square              |
| 16. B. to K. Kt. fifth (check) | 16. B. to B. third               |

- |                                     |                          |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 17. Kt. to Q. B. third <sup>2</sup> | 17. Q. B. to Q. second * |
| 18. R. takes B.                     | 18. K. to Q. B. second   |
| 19. B. to B. fourth (check)         | 19. K. to Kt. second     |
| 20. R. to Q. sixth                  | 20. Q. to Q. B. fourth   |
| 21. Kt. to K. fourth <sup>3</sup>   | 21. Q. takes P.          |
| 22. R. takes B. (check)             | 22. Kt. takes R.         |
| 23. Q. takes Kt. (check)            | 23. K. to R. third       |
| 24. Kt. to Q. sixth                 | 24. K. R. to Q. square   |
| 25. Q. to Q. Kt. seventh (ch.)      | 25. K. to R. fourth      |
| 26. B. to Q. second (check)         | 26. Q. takes B.          |
| 27. Kt. to B. fourth (check)        | 27. K. to R. fifth       |
| 28. P. mates.                       |                          |

<sup>1</sup> "B. to Q. third" was better play. The move chosen by Black leads to the Cunningham defence, which, in this position, is anything but favourable to the second player.

<sup>2</sup> At this point White has brought all his pieces into play, and the sacrifice is amply justified by the advantage of position he obtained.

\* [Why not "B. takes B"? There was no imminent danger, for in answer to "Q. R. to Q. square," he could have safely interposed the Bishop.—*Trans.*]

<sup>3</sup> This quiet move—which, however, is decidedly stronger than taking the Bishop—shows again the oft-mentioned energy of the young champion.

## GAME XII.

Played with Mr. THOMPSON.

(*Evans's Gambit.*)

- | <i>White.</i> (Mr. THOMPSON.) | <i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)           |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth            | 1. P. to K. fourth                |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third         | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third             |
| 3. B. to Q. B. fourth         | 3. B. to Q. B. fourth             |
| 4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth        | 4. B. takes P.                    |
| 5. P. to Q. B. third          | 5. B. to R. fourth                |
| 6. P. to Q. fourth            | 6. P. takes P.                    |
| 7. Q. to Q. Kt. third         | 7. Q. to K. B. third <sup>1</sup> |
| 8. Castles                    | 8. P. to Q. third                 |
| 9. P. takes P.                | 9. B. to Q. Kt. third             |
| 10. P. to K. fifth            | 10. P. takes P.                   |

- |                                         |                                        |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 11. P. takes P.                         | 11. Q. to K. Kt. third                 |
| 12. Q. B. to Q. R. third                | 12. Q. B. to K. third                  |
| 13. Q. Kt. to Q. second                 | 13. K. Kt. to K. second                |
| 14. B. takes B.                         | 14. P. takes B.                        |
| 15. Q. R. to K. square                  | 15. Castles (K. R.)                    |
| 16. Q. Kt. to K. fourth                 | 16. Q. R. to Q. square                 |
| 17. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth <sup>2</sup> | 17. R. takes Kt.                       |
| 18. Kt. takes R.                        | 18. R. to Q. sixth                     |
| 19. Q. to Q. Kt. second <sup>3</sup>    | 19. R. takes Kt.                       |
| 20. K. to R. square                     | 20. B. to Q. fifth <sup>4</sup>        |
| 21. Q. to Q. B. square                  | 21. R. to Q. B. sixth                  |
| 22. Q. to Q. Kt. second                 | 22. R. to K. Kt. sixth                 |
| 23. Q. to Q. B. square                  | 23. R. takes P.                        |
| 24. Q. to K. B. fourth                  | 24. Kt. to K. B. fourth                |
| 25. Q. to K. B. third                   | 25. R. takes R. P. (check)             |
| 26. K. takes R.                         | 26. B. takes P. (check)                |
| 27. R. takes B.                         | 27. Kt. takes R.                       |
| 28. Q. to K. R. third                   | 28. K. Kt. to K. R. fifth <sup>5</sup> |
| 29. P. to K. B. third                   | 29. Q. to Q. B. seventh (ch.)          |
| 30. K. to R. square                     | 30. K. Kt. to B. fourth                |
| 31. B. to B. square                     | 31. Q. to K. seventh                   |
| 32. B. to K. B. fourth                  | 32. Q. Kt. to Q. sixth                 |
| 33. B. takes P.                         | 33. P. to K. fourth <sup>6</sup>       |
| 34. K. to Kt. square <sup>7</sup>       | 34. Q. Kt. to K. B. fifth              |
| 35. Q. to R. second <sup>8</sup>        | 35. Q. to Q. B. fifth                  |
| 36. B. to Q. Kt. eighth <sup>9</sup>    | 36. Q. Kt. to K. seventh (ch.)         |
| 37. K. to B. second                     | 37. Q. to Q. fifth (check)             |
| 38. K. to K. square <sup>10</sup>       | 38. K. Kt. to K. Kt. sixth             |
| 39. Q. to R. third                      | 39. Q. to Q. B. sixth (check)          |
| 40. K. to B. second                     | 40. K. Kt. to K. fifth (check)         |
| 41. P. takes Kt. <sup>11</sup>          | 41. Q. takes Q.                        |
| 42. K. takes Kt.                        | 42. Q. to Kt. seventh (check)          |

And wins.

<sup>1</sup> It may be questionable, whether "Q. to K. second" would not, perhaps, be the safer move. See the 19th variation of sect. 8 of the *German Handbook*. It is true, however, that the move in the text gives the second player a chance of taking the attack in his own hands.

<sup>2</sup> This attack is premature, as will be seen by Black's reply, which wins a piece.

<sup>3</sup> Either "Q. to Q. B. second," or "Kt. to K. R. fourth," would have equally lost a piece.

<sup>4</sup> Black has now obtained the attack and keeps it up successfully.

<sup>5</sup> From this point the two Knights are admirably well manœuvred.

<sup>6</sup> This is stronger than checking with Q. Kt. in order to win the exchange.

<sup>7</sup> He could not have taken the K. Kt. Thus:—

| <i>White.</i>             | <i>Black.</i>                |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 34. Q. takes Kt.          | 34. Q. takes R. (check)      |
| 35. K. to R. second       | 35. Q. to B. seventh (check) |
| 36. K. to R. third or (A) | 36. Kt. to B. fifth (check)  |

And wins.

(A.)

|                      |                               |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 36. K. to R. square  | 36. Q. to R. fifth (check)    |
| 37. K. to Kt. second | 37. Kt. to B. fifth (ch.) &c. |

<sup>8</sup> "Q. to K. Kt. fourth" would have been answered with "P. to K. R. fourth," winning the Queen.

<sup>9</sup> This was the only square for the Bishop to escape being captured.

<sup>10</sup> Obviously the Kt. could not be taken.

<sup>11</sup> If K. takes Kt., Q. mates; if "K. to Kt. second," Kt. checks on B. fifth, and wins the Queen.

### GAME XIII.

Between the same Opponents.

(Same Opening.)

| <i>White.</i> (Mr. THOMPSON.) | <i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.) |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth            | 1. P. to K. fourth      |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third         | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third   |
| 3. B. to Q. B. fourth         | 3. B. to Q. B. fourth   |
| 4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth        | 4. B. takes P.          |
| 5. P. to Q. B. third          | 5. B. to R. fourth      |
| 6. P. to Q. fourth            | 6. P. takes P.          |
| 7. Q. to Q. Kt. third         | 7. Q. to K. B. third    |
| 8. Castles                    | 8. P. to Q. third       |
| 9. P. to K. fifth             | 9. P. takes P.          |
| 10. P. takes P. <sup>1</sup>  | 10. P. takes P.         |
| 11. Q. Kt. to Q. second       | 11. K. Kt. to K. second |
| 12. B. to Q. Kt. second       | 12. Castles             |
| 13. Q. Kt. to K. fourth       | 13. Q. to K. Kt. third  |

- |                                    |                            |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 14. K. B. to Q. third              | 14. Q. B. to K. B. fourth  |
| 15. K. Kt. to R. fourth            | 15. Q. to R. fourth        |
| 16. Kt. takes B.                   | 16. Kt. takes Kt.          |
| 17. P. to K. B. fourth             | 17. K. R. to K. square     |
| 18. K. R. to B. third <sup>2</sup> | 18. Q. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth |
| 19. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth            | 19. Kt. takes B.           |
| 20. Q. takes Kt.                   | 20. Q. to K. Kt. third     |
| 21. K. R. to R. third <sup>3</sup> | 21. R. to R. sixth         |
| 22. Q. to Q. Kt. fifth             | 22. R. takes R.            |
| 23. Q. takes Q. Kt. P.             | 23. R. to K. square        |
| 24. Kt. takes R.                   | 24. B. to Kt. third        |
| 25. R. to K. B. square             | 25. Kt. to K. sixth        |
| 26. P. to K. B. fifth              | 26. Q. to K. Kt. fifth     |
| 27. Kt. to B. second               | 27. Q. to K. seventh       |
| 28. R. to Q. Kt. square            | 28. Kt. to Q. eighth       |

And wins.

<sup>1</sup> "B. to Q. R. third" (the correct answer to which is "K. Kt. to K. second") would be less efficacious. The usual move, however, at this stage of the game, viz., "R. to K. square," leads to the following variation:—

- | <i>White.</i>              | <i>Black.</i>                 |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 10. R. to K. square        | 10. Q. B. to Q. second (best) |
| 11. Kt. takes P.           | 11. Kt. takes Kt.             |
| 12. B. takes B. P. (check) | 12. Q. takes B.               |
| 13. R. takes Kt. (check)   | 13. Kt. to K. second          |
| 14. B. to Q. R. third      | 14. Castles (K. R.)           |
| 15. R. takes Kt.           | 15. Q. takes Q.               |
| 16. P. takes Q. &c.        |                               |

<sup>2</sup> "Kt. to K. Kt. fifth" would have been replied to with "R. to K. sixth," it being Black's interest by all means to get rid of the dangerous K. Bishop.

<sup>3</sup> It is evident that "B. takes P." would have lost a piece by Black's answer, "Kt. takes B."

## NOTES.

### A

It has often been asserted that the New World did not advance in other but material interests. If therefore, all at once, proofs are given to us that rapid developments take place there in purely moral spheres, it must necessarily produce astonishment. We should, perhaps, even be induced sometimes to confess that we are surpassed; and that is

the case with music as well as poetry, for we find in them a depth and originality, no more known to us, and wherein we can perceive a mixture of mature experience and fresh feeling in its most tender form. Further illustrations, however, are here out of place, and we must content ourselves with the simple mention of that erroneous assertion, which has recently again been so entirely disproved by the late transatlantic Chess transactions. We only mention here a few thoughts taken from *Frank Leslie's Illustrated Paper*, and no one can doubt the general enthusiasm and high inspiration for our noble game beyond the ocean:—

"We have devoted a large portion of our paper to the proceedings of the National Chess Congress, which has just closed its first sitting in our city. This assemblage, or at least, its transactions, will form an era in the history of the delightful game, for there were presented mental phenomena in the assemblage such as must astonish the world.

Chess from this time forwards must occupy a more prominent position than it has heretofore done in popular estimation; the admiration for it will now extend to the multitude, instead of being confined, comparatively speaking, to the happy few. We notice this fact with pleasure, because wherever Chess is adopted as a pastime, its moral and chastening influence is observable: it sheds a charm over social life, and an intense love for it can have no other effect than to refine the heart and elevate the mind."

## B

Among the newly instituted Chess clubs or Chess societies of the United States, are chiefly to be remarked that of Albany, under the presidency of Edward Morton; that of Baltimore, under A. White; that of Belton, in Texas; that of Boston (in Massachusetts), under Richardson; that of Chicago (in Illinois), under Burly; that of Cincinnati, under Mackenzie; that of Dubuque, under L. Paulsen; that of Louisville, in Kentucky; that of Lynn, in Massachusetts, under Brown; that of Milwaukee, under W. Smith; that of Mobile (in Alabama), under Ayres; that of Philadelphia; that of Portland, under Gillum; that of Sacramento (in California), under B. Brown; that of St. Louis, under Hamilton; that of San Francisco, under Selim Franklin; that of Santa Fé, under Grayson; that of Syracuse, under Haskin; and that of Winona, under J. Smith. In many of the above places there are several societies, and besides, in many towns, places devoted to Chess, which invariably are well frequented.

## C.

Of the transatlantic newspapers which devote part of their columns to Chess, we shall only mention the following:—

1. *Frank Leslie's Illustrated Newspaper*, in New York; the present Chess Editor, T. Frere; the former, N. Marache; and before him, J. A. Fuller.

2. *Porter's Spirit of the Times*, in New York; Chess by C. H. Stanley.
3. *Albion*, in New York, by Fr. Perrin.
4. *Sunday Delta*, in New Orleans, by Ch. A. Maurian.
5. *American Union*, in Boston, by Loyd.
6. *Evening Gazette*, in Boston.
7. *Lynn News*, in Lynn, Massachusetts.
8. *Syracuse Standard*, in Syracuse.
9. *Winona Republican*, in Winona (Minnesota).
10. *Weekly Dispatch*, in Baltimore.
11. *Sunday Dispatch*, in Cincinnati.

## D.

The great Chess Association of the United States has made the advancement of Chess interest its general, and the calling together and conducting of a Chess congress every three years its special, duty. The association has a president (Colonel Ch. D. Mead, in New York), two vice-presidents, two secretaries (L. Elkin, from Pennsylvania, and D. W. Fiske), and a treasurer (J. Thompson, of New York). There is, besides, a standing committee for problems, as well as another for legislation, to which latter also our hero Paul Morphy belongs. The following is a part of the programme of the half-yearly bulletin of the association :—

"The assemblage of the first National Chess Congress resulted in the formation of the American Chess Association. In entering upon their duties, the committee of management of this new organization deem it proper to make a statement of what measures are, in their opinion, necessary to render the Association of permanent value, and, through it, to make the game of Chess in America, a thoroughly national recreation. The success of the first gathering of American amateurs proves that union and effort on the part of the players and clubs of this country would soon place the game in the same exalted position here that it has so long occupied abroad, and make it the universal pastime of the sober, the reflecting, and the educated people of the United States. The committee of management would therefore call the attention of members of the Association, and of all amateurs, to the following suggestions :—

"I. *Clubs*.—The formation of clubs in all our cities would be a task as easy as it is desirable. There is no town which does not contain a score or two of amateurs, and the advantages of association for practice and intercourse must be evident to all. The committee of management will at all times be glad to assist in the establishment of these organizations, by giving, through the corresponding secretary, all needed information with regard to Chess laws, the purchase of books, boards, and men, etc.

"II. *Lectures*.—Each club should cause to be delivered every winter, one or more public lectures on Chess history, Chess literature, and so forth. Oftentimes these lectures might be prepared by



some member of the club resident in the town where they are to be delivered. Bi-monthly lectures, confined to the club, on the openings and ends of games, would rapidly improve the practice of members, and prove particularly beneficial and interesting to young players.

"III. *Chess Monthly*.—All lovers of Chess should make it their special business to see that the Chess Monthly is well sustained. The maintenance of such an exponent of American Chess ideas, of such a central organ of American Chess players, will not only exert a favourable influence upon the progress of Chess in this country, but will enhance our Chess reputation abroad.

"IV. *Chess in Newspapers*.—The publication of Chess matter in the weekly and other newspapers is of course in our country, where the press has so many readers, a powerful method of advancing the interests of the game. Every club should have its peculiar organ of this kind. The regular insertion of a Chess department in some one journal in each city could be arranged at little or no expense. It should generally be under the editorial supervision of the secretary of the club. The committee will at any time furnish Chess type, at founder's prices.

"V. *Public Games*.—The playing of matches by correspondence, by telegraph, or by consultation between individuals or clubs of different cities, would serve, in a large measure, to keep alive and increase the public interest in Chess. The games resulting from such matches, if fairly and carefully contested, form the best and most important additions to the literature of practical Chess. The close analysis which this branch of Chess play requires, has often thrown new light upon the various openings. Matches of this character ought always to be conducted in a friendly spirit, and the rules which are to govern the players should be unmistakably laid down before commencing.

"VI. *The Association*.—A hearty and cordial support should be given to the American Chess Association. It is intended to make it a living, working institution, which shall be both a benefit and an honour to the American Chess community. Officers of clubs should take pains to see that their list of members—and consequently their influence and means—be largely increased."

The commemoration dinner of the Chess Congress took place on Saturday, October 17th, last year, in the Hotel St. Denis; the proprietor of which, Denis Julien, had a reputation not only as a favourite problem-composer and valued member of the Chess circle, but also as an able and pleasant host. The decoration of the saloon represented Chess emblems, and even the table was adorned with symbols referring to Chess; above all was conspicuous a tremendous tart, the surface of which was a Chessboard of sugar, with Chessmen of white and red sugar-candy. Besides these were smaller Chessboards of sugar, kings and queens in ice, knights of jelly; and among the many gastronomic novelties we shall only mention the beefsteaks *à la Staunton*, and potatoes *à la M'Donnel*. The President of the Congress, Judge A. B. Meek, sat at the head of the table, and next to

him the President of the New York Chess Club, Colonel D. Mead. Towards the end of the dinner, the former rose to speak, and in a lengthened address, amongst many witty allusions, also said:—

“It is not often, at Chess, that I complain of having the first move, but at the present time, and under such flattering circumstances, I can scarcely deem it an advantage, for it necessarily places me in a crowded position, and forces me to adopt a close rather than a brilliant style of play. Still, acknowledging gracefully the full honour of the odds allowed me, I must say that this is to me an occasion of deep and peculiar interest. It has been my fortune, in a life of much social experience and adventure, to participate in many pleasant festive occasions; but this superadds to the ordinary charms of convivial intercourse, attractive features never presented before. It is the crowning rose in the flowery incidents of the last two weeks. A Chess congress, a Chess tournament, and now a Chess dinner, are hereby occasions of marked and noble delight to the lovers of the noble game. They constitute an era in the social history of our country, for unquestionably the character and progress of their amusements are, in no small degree, an index of the intellectual and moral development of a people. They show the quality and direction of their tastes and sentiments.

“What the patriot patron fathers of our fraternity so anxiously desired, has to some extent been realized in this country. This convocation of Chess magnates from all portions of our Union is an evidence of the wide diffusion of our favourite game among the American people. Here, at the call so laudably sent forth from the New York Club, have assembled the disciples of Philidor from every section of our wide and flourishing Republic. They have come, with fraternal impulses, from the auroral hills of New England, the rich regions of the middle States, the flowery prairies of the illimitable West, and from my own golden and sunny section, where the blue waves of the Gulf of Mexico swell up a constant choral symphony with the music of our national Union.

“They came together as strangers, but they have met as brothers and friends. Ties of congenial taste and sympathy have been established, which will ever be cherished among the most pleasing connections of life, and must exert no insensible influence in eradicating sectional prejudices, and uniting each and every part of the country, like the separate squares of the Chessboard, in one harmonious whole.

“I conclude with an expression of my gratification at the auspicious prospect opened for Chess in the United States, by the establishment of our National Chess Association. Our players have evinced in the tournament, that they possess skill and science equal to the masters of the Old World; and, ere long—beside the classic names of Staunton, and Anderssen, and Von der Lasa, and St. Amant, and Löwenthal—the Muse of Caissa will delight to register those of Morphy, and Paulsen, and Stanley, and Montgomery, and Lichten-

hein, and Hammond, and Mead, and others who have nobly won green chaplets by their doughty deeds in the embattled lists of Chess, and on the mosaic pavement which she so proudly treads."

### E.

As to the more remarkable personalities of the Chess Congress we give the following notices:—

1. Hon. ALEX. B. MEEK, the President of the Congress, is known as a lawyer, an orator, and a poet. Born in Columbia, in 1814, he has passed the greater part of his life in Alabama. He was attorney-general in the southern district of Alabama, and afterwards judge there. He has also published an appendix to the code of laws of Alabama, and has distinguished himself as member of the legislative body of Mobile, in the years 1853-1854, as well as by establishing free schools in Alabama. Through his activity, as well as through his eloquence, which he displayed on many public occasions, he became very popular. He also gained considerable reputation in literary circles by numerous lectures in several branches of history, and meritorious researches into the historical development of the south-western countries. We would recommend, amongst others, his work entitled *Romantic Passages in South-western History*. Three years ago he published a little poem entitled the *Red Eagle*, which soon became a favourite with the public. It was founded upon the war of General Jackson with the Creek Indians.

In the summer of 1858 he published his *Songs and Poems of the South*, in which he depicts in glowing language the feelings and sentiments of the south. Having made a happy marriage two years ago, he now lives in Mobile, but every year passes several months in the northern towns. Tall and strongly built, of a kindly and gay disposition, he combines in his office of president, dignity with amenity of manners, and by these qualities has considerably contributed to the success of the first Chess Congress of America.

2. Colonel D. MEAD, formerly President of the Chess Club at New York, now President of the great Chess Association, is known in the United States as the most enthusiastic and popular lover of the noble game. He was born in New York, and is now forty-three years old. Having taken his degrees at the College of Columbia, he practised law during ten years, and then went to Europe, where he remained a considerable time. Here, a true knight-errant, he tried to find out the Chess celebrities of the different countries, and believes that he had found nowhere an opponent of a force considerably superior to his own, although he had met in Paris, several times, with Kieseritzky.

Once, only, in Florence, a stranger who passed through the town was presented to him, against whom he had not the shadow of a chance. The Colonel believes that this stranger could be no other than the famous German master, Heydebrandt von der Lasa.

In the year 1839, he and J. Thompson founded the Chess Club at New York, which soon distinguished itself by winning a game by correspondence with Norfolk. Colonel Mead afterwards made a second voyage to Europe and on his return, was again elected president of the now considerably enlarged club. It was owing to the reputation he had of being the most devoted lover of the game, and upon the express recommendation of the leader of the congress, Judge Meek, that he was elected to the high and honourable office of President of the Association. In his speech at the Congress dinner he dwelt upon the social influence of Chess, and mentioned, as a result of his long experience, that during a quarter of a century he had made the acquaintance of several thousand players in the New as well as in the Old World, and had had opponents of princely rank as well as of humble extraction, but that he had not met one he could object to shake hands with, or exchange fraternal salutations.

3. DANIEL WILLARD FISKE, Secretary of the Chess Congress, was born in the county of Jefferson, and is now twenty-five years old. After two years' study in Hamilton College, he went, in 1850, to Europe, in order to visit the universities of Upsala and Copenhagen, and to travel in Germany, France, and England. His chief study was that of the old Icelandic language, and of its descendants the Danish and Swedish, and he is now considered the most distinguished Scandinavian scholar in the United States. He has been for some years assistant librarian at the Astor Library, New York, and is at present engaged in elaborating the Scandinavian articles for Appleton's *American Cyclopædia*.

Three years ago, when studying the Persian language, he met with some Chess poetry, and it was then, for the first time, that he got acquainted with the game. He quickly conquered the difficulties of its rudiments, and entered, in 1856, the Chess Club of New York, where the members gave him the odds of a piece. Thus he continued till the month of February of 1857, when, to the surprise of every one, he won the first prize in a little tournament which took place amongst eight of the strongest members of the club. The interest which he took in the literary part of Chess, augmented in proportion to his progress in practical play, and he is now possessed of one of the largest Chess libraries of the United States. In the month of January of the same year, he began the publication of a monthly periodical on Chess, the well-known *Chess Monthly*, which is now looked upon as the chief organ of Transatlantic Chess, and has already made a reputation on this side of the ocean. There is but one opinion as to the literary and theoretical merits of this periodical: the correctness of its historical researches nearly surpasses German punctiliousness, and shows that the author is as well versed in German as in his own literature. It is also a favourable circumstance that the author is in direct correspondence with some of the most distinguished Chess writers of Europe, and spares neither time nor labour in investigating those materials which are necessary to his subject.

The honour belongs to him, to have been the first to give the impulse to the national Chess Congress, and, through his extensive acquaintance with the Chess celebrities in New York and other states, to have contributed to their reciprocal understanding, and to the final realization of this great event. Notwithstanding his youth, he already enjoys a high reputation in the literary as well as in the Chess world; and his election to the most onerous, important, and influential office (that of secretary) in the Congress, appears but a natural acknowledgment of his ability and activity.

4. LOUIS PAULSEN, the second victor in the great tournament, is a German, born in Lippe-Deilmold, twenty-four years old, and from 1854 a denizen of Iowa, in the United States. He has distinguished himself not only by his success in the tourney, but still more by his wonderful talent in blindfold play. He has lately succeeded in playing and winning twelve games at the same time, without seeing the board. The *Schachzeitung* of September, 1858, gives a more detailed account of these extraordinary performances, as well as of Mr. Paulsen himself.

5. C. H. STANLEY, born in 1819, in England, enjoyed, during many years, a high reputation in the United States, in the literary as well as in the practical part of the game. His love of the game dates from his early youth; he was instructed in it by the well-known master, Popert, of Hamburg, and won, when but eighteen years old, a match of Staunton, in which that master gave him the odds of Pawn and two moves. When he arrived in New York, he visited the Chess Club, and conquered there every opponent. His victories over Schulten, Rousseau (of New Orleans), Turner (Kentucky), and Hammond (Boston), all four players of high reputation in the United States, caused his reputation to be greatly enhanced. After having played a match of some import with Mr. Turner, eight years ago, his increased professional avocations kept him for some time from Chess; and it was only when the celebrated St. Amant passed in his travels through New York, that he again resumed Chess play; they played with equal success, each winning four games. Stanley was for a long time the leader of the Chess press in the United States. He wrote at first Chess articles for the paper called the *Spirit of the Times*, and afterwards published the *New York Chess Player's Magazine*. He also contributed Chess articles to the *Albion*, and to the *New York Illustrated News*.\* He is the life and soul of social circles, and shines by his gay humour and ready wit. It is well known he suffers a defeat with as much equanimity as he announces a victory. His gentlemanly conduct has made him a great favourite with his associates on the chequered field.

6. THEODOR LICHTENHEIN, born at Königsberg, in Prussia, in 1829; studied at first for the medical profession, and afterwards

[\* Since this was written, Mr. Stanley has resumed the editorship of the Chess column in the *American Spirit of the Times*.—*Trans.*]

entered the service of the Prussian army, and about eight years ago, emigrated to New York. He learnt Chess at the age of twelve, and six years afterwards, he became president of one of the Chess Clubs in Königsberg. He then left off Chess for some time, till in 1856 he resumed it in the New York Chess Club, where he owed his victories more to a safe and well-calculated play than to brilliancy. In the great tournament he bore off the third prize.

7. DR. B. J. RAPHAEL, from Kentucky, was born in 1818, in Richmond, and took his degrees at the University of Virginia. He learnt the rudiments of the game from his father, but made slow progress at first. It was only when he came to New York and visited the Club, which at that time was held in Carlton House, that his strength increased, by constant practice with reputed players, such as Mead, Stanley, Thompson, &c., who gave him the odds of a Knight. After three years' attendance in the New York Hospital, having completed his medical studies there, he went for some time to Europe, chiefly for practice in the hospital "La Charité," in Paris.\* There he met sometimes St. Amant and Kieseritzky in the Café de la Régence; he was also, in the winter of 1843, an eyewitness of the match between Staunton and St. Amant. On returning to the United States, he established himself in Louisville, in Kentucky, as a medical practitioner and lecturer at the College, and accepted an appointment at the hospital. In 1845 he took part in forming a Chess Club, which soon afterwards, jointly with the clubs of Lexington and Frankfort, had the merit of instituting the well-known tournaments which take place every year in the bathing-places of Kentucky. Seconded by Mr. Ballard, he played two games by correspondence with the Lexington club, as well as several matches by the electric telegraph with Frankfort, Cincinnati, Nashville, and other towns. In the spring of 1857 he changed his residence to New York, where he enjoys an extensive medical practice. In the tournament he obtained the fourth prize.

8. W. I. A. FULLER, the former talented Chess editor of the New York illustrated paper, has passed a varied and chequered life. He has fought with whales in the Polar seas, has swam through large rivers for a wager, and once, at the Falls of Niagara, he swam for his life. For a short time he was schoolmaster and newspaper editor in the far west; in after-times, he once lost his way on the road to California, and, wandering about in endless wildernesses, he lost everything, barely saving his life; at another time, soaring high above this terrestrial tumult, above the peaks of the Chimborasso, he drank the health of his country in the juice of the grape of the plains of Champagne, accompanying Mr. Godard, the well-known aeronaut, in a balloon. He has finally succeeded to a law firm; and, although

[\* We believe this to be the meaning of the German phrase, which is somewhat obscure; the literal translation would be "to learn all the particulars relating to charity."—*Trans.*]

serving a goddess with blinded eyes, his own eyes are said to be still wide open in the interest of his clients. Strong and stout, of great perseverance and clear intellect, he knows no obstacle in what he has once undertaken, be it to serve a friend, to play a game of Chess, to combat an adversary in a court of justice, or to make a political speech.

9. N. MARACHE, well known as a practical player and problem composer, was the successor of Fuller as editor of the Chess articles in the illustrated New York paper. Born in France in 1818, in Meaux, he came, at the age of thirteen, to America. But he only got acquainted with the noble game at the age of twenty-six, when, in the space of a quarter of an hour, he understood its rudiments. He was delighted with the game, and procured some Chess works, among which, some volumes of the *Chess Player's Chronicle* and Lewis's *Treatise*. In the space of three weeks, he could give the Rook to his first master, who had given him the Queen. He owed, however, most to Mr. D. S. Roberts, with whom he also soon became equal.

In 1845 he began to compose problems, and his first essays appeared in the *Spirit of the Times*. Since that time, nearly one hundred of his problems have been published. In 1846 he edited the first American Chess periodical under the title, the *Chess Palladium and Mathematical Sphinx*, of which, however, only three numbers were printed. At the reorganization of the New York Chess Club, through Mr. Fr. Perrin, Marache became a member, having conquered Stanley shortly before. In 1856 he won the first prize in a tournament of the society, consisting of a silver cup; and from that time he was considered the best player of the New York Club.

10. FREDERICK PERRIN, born in London, descended from a Swiss family, and is now in his forty-third year. From infancy he excelled in all games where intellect was required, but Chess he preferred to all others. At the age of fourteen he went to a college in Switzerland, where he had but little opportunity to cultivate his favourite game. Afterwards we find him in London, where he filled a commercial situation, and his hours of leisure were devoted to Chess practice in the cigar divan. There he encountered many players of European fame, but generally played with the late Mr. Daniels, well known in English Chess circles, on account of his brilliant play.

On his arrival in America in 1845, he began again to practise Chess seriously, and played with many of the well-known players in Philadelphia, chiefly, however, with one Mr. Vezin. Afterwards he accepted the appointment of Professor of Modern Languages at Princeton College, and played nearly every day with Eugene B. Cook, whose excellent problems have found favour with all the followers of Caissa. In 1853 he left Princeton College and returned to business in New York, where he now lives in very prosperous circumstances. During several years the club met in his house, and he was considered as pleasant an antagonist as he was an active secretary of the society newly reorganized by himself. His Chess articles, now published in the *Albion*, contain much valuable matter.

11. JAMES THOMPSON, born in London in 1805, came, at the age of ten years, with his parents, to the United States, where they settled, in the county of Susquehanna. From 1826 he has lived in New York. He learnt the elementary part of the game when eight years old; but it was only in 1836 that he began seriously to practise it, at the time when Mr. Bussford opened his Chess rooms in Fulton Street. At that place a club, numbering about forty members, was formed, which afterwards changed its place of meeting to Barclay Street, where the preliminary games between Stanley and Schulten were played. Soon afterwards the club met at the house of Mr. Perrin, where Mr. J. Thompson was the strongest player. When St. Amant passed through New York, and presented to the society a complete copy of the *Palamède*, Thompson won this work in the tournament, in which it was given as a prize. During his stay in Europe in 1840 and 1850, he played with Kieseritzky nearly one hundred games, of which he won a slight majority, having the odds of Pawn and move given to him. He passes for a very brilliant player; and had he not been so unfortunate as to be opposed in the great tournament in his first tourney to Morphy, he would, there is no doubt, have valiantly disputed some of the prizes with their more fortunate owners.

12. The other participators in the great tournament are, Mr. HARDMAN PHILIPS MONTGOMERY, a young law student (twenty-four years of age), from Philadelphia; W. S. ALLISON, from Minnesota, who first introduced Paulsen into the Chess world; S. R. CALTHROP, from Connecticut; HIRAM KENNICOTT, from New York, at present living at Chicago, in Illinois; and R. KNOTT, from Brockly, New York.

~~~~~


CHAPTER V.

PAUL MORPHY'S VICTORIES IN NEW YORK.

THE great tournament of the Chess Congress procured to PAUL MORPHY not only the highest triumph, but also the acknowledgment of the superiority of his Chess powers. The prize which was presented to him consisted of a dinner service of massive silver, each piece of which had a different Chess emblem engraved upon it. The tray contained a representation of the final encounter of the winners of the two first prizes, with a suitable inscription. A still higher recompense did the victor find in the newly acquired consciousness of his powers, which also became realized in a fresh and splendid triumph.

At the end of the Congress the victor addressed a challenge to the members of the New York Club, and proposed a match for one hundred dollars, giving the odds of Pawn and move. The winner of the first seven games to be the victor.(A) Mr. C. H. STANLEY, the well-known American master, accepted the challenge, and underwent a complete defeat. He only drew one game, losing four games consecutively. This so disheartened him that he gave up the contest. These games, played in the rooms of the New York Chess Club, naturally attracted a crowd of spectators, who became not only great admirers of the young master, but also stanch believers in his mental powers. After this surprising triumph he still went further, and offered the same conditions to all the players in the United States. His name, however, was already too much feared; and, even under conditions so advantageous to his opponent, none dared to accept the challenge.

It is said, that out of eighty-five games, which he had then played during some weeks, he had only lost four: one against Mr. HAMMOND, from Boston, who on his part lost seven; one against PAULSEN, who lost eight; one against STANLEY,

who lost thirteen; and one against the well-known master, SCHULTEN, who lost the great number of twenty-three.

Amongst other games won in New York, we shall only mention three against D. W. FISKE, and an equal number against N. MARACHE, as well as eight against J. THOMPSON. A more detailed account will be given in the Notes,^(B) and some specimens of these encounters will be found in the following games.

GAMES PLAYED BY PAUL MORPHY IN NEW YORK.

GAME XIV.

Played with Mr. C. H. STANLEY.

(*Giucoco Piano.*)

<i>White.</i> (Mr. STANLEY.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. B. third	4. Kt. to K. B. third
5. P. to Q. third	5. P. to Q. third
6. P. to K. R. third	6. Castles
7. B. to K. Kt. fifth	7. B. to Q. Kt. third
8. Q. Kt. to Q. second	8. Q. B. to K. third
9. Castles	9. P. to K. R. third
10. B. to K. R. fourth	10. K. to R. square
11. Kt. to K. R. second	11. P. to K. Kt. fourth ¹
12. B. to K. Kt. third	12. P. to K. R. fourth
13. Kt. to K. B. third	13. P. to K. R. fifth
14. Kt. takes R. P.	14. P. takes Kt.
15. B. takes P.	15. K. to Kt. second ²
16. Q. to K. B. third	16. K. R. to R. square
17. Q. to Kt. third (check)	17. K. to B. square
18. Q. to K. Kt. fifth	18. K. Kt. to Q. second
19. B. takes B.	19. P. takes B.
20. Q. takes Q.	20. Kt. takes Q.
21. Kt. to K. B. third	21. K. to Kt. second
22. P. to K. Kt. fourth	22. K. Kt. to K. B. square
23. K. to Kt. second	23. Kt. to K. Kt. third

24. B. to K. Kt. fifth ³	24. Q. Kt. to K. B. second
25. P. to K. R. fourth	25. Kt. takes B.
26. P. takes Kt.	26. Kt. to B. fifth (check)
27. K. to Kt. third ⁴	27. B. mates

¹ The advance of these Pawns is a favourite manœuvre of Morphy's.

² This, of course, is a defensive move ; but it is worth noticing, how the open files on K.'s side are taken advantage of, to turn the attack.

³ "B. to K. Kt. third" would have been safer.

⁴ A mistake, which finishes the game at once; but even "K. to Kt. square" could not have saved it, for Black would have played "R. to K. R. sixth," and, on the next move, "Q. R. to K. R. square," play what White may.

GAME XV.

From the Match at the Odds of Pawn and Move, between
the same Opponents.

(Remove Black's K. B. P. from the Board.)

<i>White.</i> (MR. STANLEY.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. third
2. P. to Q. fourth	2. P. to Q. fourth
3. P. to K. fifth	3. P. to Q. B. fourth
4. Q. B. to K. third ¹	4. Q. to Q. Kt. third
5. P. to Q. Kt. third	5. Kt. to Q. B. third
6. Kt. to K. B. third ²	6. P. takes P.
7. B. takes P.	7. Kt. takes B.
8. Kt. takes Kt.	8. B. to Q. B. fourth
9. P. to Q. B. third ³	9. Kt. to K. second
10. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)	10. Kt. to Q. B. third
11. B. takes Kt. (check)	11. P. takes B.
12. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)	12. P. to K. Kt. third
13. Q. to K. Kt. fourth	13. Castles
14. Castles	14. B. to Q. R. third ⁴
15. Q. takes K. P. (check)	15. K. to R. square
16. R. to Q. square	16. Q. R. to K. square
17. Q. to K. Kt. fourth ⁵	17. Q. R. takes K. P.
18. Kt. to Q. second	18. B. to Q. B. square
19. Q. to K. Kt. third	19. K. B. to Q. third
20. Q. to Q. third	20. B. to Q. R. third

21. Q. to Q. B. second ⁶	21. Q. R. to K. R. fourth
22. Q. Kt. to K. B. third ⁷	22. P. to Q. B. fourth
23. K. Kt. to K. second	23. R. takes Kt. ⁸
24. P. takes R.	24. Q. to Q. square
25. P. to Q. B. fourth	25. R. takes P.
26. R. takes P.	26. Q. to K. R. fifth
27. Q. to Q. B. third (check)	27. K. to Kt. square
28. Kt. to Kt. third	28. Q. to R. sixth

And wins.

¹ "P. to Q. B. third" would be stronger.

² At this point "P. to Q. B. third" would be a bad move, for Black would now take P. with P., and eventually check with B. on Q. Kt. fifth.

³ Had he checked with B. on Q. Kt. fifth, Black would have moved K. to Q. square, winning a piece.

⁴ Black here purposely gives up the King's Pawn, to get the attack.

⁵ "Q. takes B. P." would at least have lost a piece.

⁶ Now, the adverse Queen being out of play, Black is enabled to establish his pieces on the other flank.

⁷ It strikes us that "P. to K. R. third" was the only move, under the circumstances. Had he played "K. Kt. to B. third," the following variation would have occurred:—

White.

22. K. Kt. to K. B. third
23. Kt. takes B.
24. K. to R. square

Black.

22. B. takes R. P. (check)
23. Q. takes B. P. (check)
24. K. R. to B. fifth, and wins.

⁸ This sacrifice is characteristic of Morphy's style.—See move 17, in *Game XII*.

GAME XVI.

Played with Mr. SCHULTEN.

(*Gambit declined.*)

White. (Mr. SCHULTEN.)

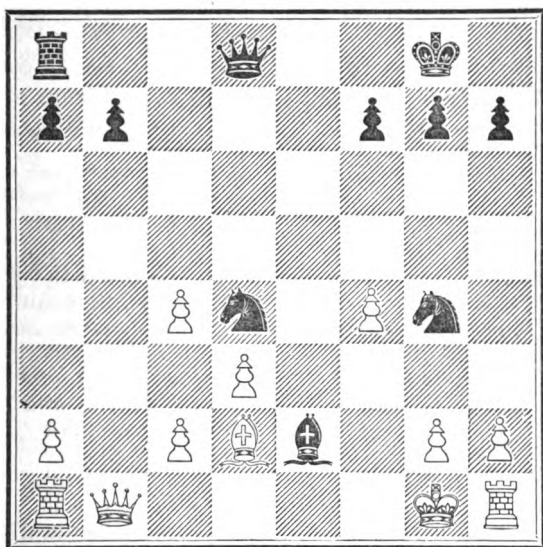
1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth
3. P. takes Q. P.
4. Kt. to Q. B. third*
5. P. to Q. third
6. B. to Q. second

Black. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to Q. fourth
3. P. to K. fifth ¹
4. Kt. to K. B. third
5. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
6. P. to K. sixth ²

7. B. takes P.	7. Castles
8. Q. B. to Q. second	8. B. takes Kt.
9. P. takes B.	9. R. to K. square (check)
10. B. to K. second	10. B. to K. Kt. fifth
11. P. to Q. B. fourth ³	11. P. to Q. B. third
12. P. takes P.	12. Q. Kt. takes P.
13. K. to B. square	13. R. takes B.
14. Kt. takes R.	14. Kt. to Q. fifth
15. Q. to Q. Kt. square	15. B. takes Kt. (check)
16. K. to B. second	16. Kt. to Kt. fifth (check)
17. K. to Kt. square ⁴	

BLACK.



WHITE.

Black having to play, forced the checkmate in seven moves.

¹ This strong move could be obviated on the part of the first player, by playing "Kt. to K. B. third" on the third move. If, then, Black takes K. P., the Knight could be well established on K. fifth.

*[This is a very weak defence. The best move appears to be "B. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)," as we have shown in an analysis of this opening, published in 1850 by the Berlin *Schachzeitung*.—*Trans.*]

² These peculiar sacrifices of the Pawns are characteristic of Morphy's style.

³ Better than "P. to K. R. third," which might have been answered with "Q. takes P."

⁴ "K. to Kt. third" would have been answered with mate in two moves. This charming little game shows the soundness of Morphy's play, the rapid development of his pieces, and the energy with which he takes advantage of his opponent's errors until he crushes him.

GAME XVII.

Between the same opponents.

(*Bishop's Gambit.*)

<i>White.</i> (Mr. SCHULTEN.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. P. takes P.
3. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. P. to Q. fourth
4. P. takes P. ¹	4. B. to Q. third
5. Kt. to Q. B. third	5. Kt. to K. B. third
6. P. to Q. fourth	6. Castles
7. Kt. to K. second	7. P. to K. B. sixth ²
8. P. takes P.	8. Kt. to K. R. fourth
9. P. to K. R. fourth *	9. R. to K. square
10. Kt. to K. fourth	10. B. to K. Kt. sixth (check)
11. K. to Q. second ³	11. B. to Q. third
12. K. to Q. B. third	12. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
13. B. takes P.	13. P. to Q. B. third
14. Kt. takes B.	14. Q. takes Kt.
15. B. to Q. R. fourth †	15. B. to Q. R. third
16. R. to K. square	16. Kt. to Q. second
17. P. to Q. Kt. third	17. Kt. to Q. Kt. third
18. B. takes P.	18. Q. R. to Q. B. square
19. K. to Q. second ⁴	19. R. takes B.
20. P. takes R.	20. B. takes Kt.
21. R. takes B.	21. Q. takes Q. P. (check)
22. K. to K. square	22. Q. to K. Kt. eighth (ch.)
23. K. to Q. second	23. R. to Q. square (check)

24. K. to Q. B. third	24. Q. to Q. B. fourth (ch.)
25. K. to Q. Kt. second	25. Kt. to Q. R. fifth (check)

And wins.

¹ "B takes P." followed by "Kt. to K. B. third" seems stronger.

² Again characteristic of Morphy's style.

* [Loss of time. He ought to have played here "Q. B. to K. third," in order to meet the threatened check of the hostile Queen, and at the same time to provide for the speedy castling on Q.'s side."—*Trans.*]

³ "K. to B. square" would have been answered with "R. takes Kt."

† [Another weak move. It is our opinion that the Q. Pawn was of comparatively little value under the circumstances. He ought to have played "B. to Q. third," and then advanced the "Q. Kt. P." in order to facilitate the immediate retreat of his most imperilled majesty.—*Trans.*]

⁴ Had he played "K. to Q. Kt. second," the following might have been the result:—

White.

19. Q. to Q. Kt. second
20. P. takes R.
21. R. takes B.

Black.

19. R. takes B.
20. B. takes Kt.
21. Kt. to Q. R. fifth (check)
and wins.

GAME XVIII.

Between the same Opponents.

(*Evans's Gambit.*)

White. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
5. P. to Q. B. third
6. Castles
7. P. to Q. fourth
8. P. takes P.
9. Kt. to Q. B. third¹
10. Q. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
11. P. takes B.
12. Q. B. to K. third
13. K. to R. square
14. B. to Q. R. fourth

Black. (MR. SCHULTEN.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. B. takes P.
5. B. to Q. B. fourth
6. P. to Q. third
7. P. takes P.
8. B. to Q. Kt. third
9. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
10. B. takes Kt.²
11. K. to B. square
12. Q. Kt. to K. second
13. P. to Q. B. third
14. P. to Q. fourth

15. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square	15. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square
16. Q. to Q. third	16. B. to Q. B. second
17. K. R. to K. Kt. square	17. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. third
18. P. to K. fifth	18. Q. to K. R. fifth
19. B. to K. Kt. fifth	19. Q. to K. R. sixth
20. Kt. to K. second	20. P. to K. B. third
21. Kt. to K. B. fourth	21. Kt. takes Kt.
22. B. takes Kt.	22. P. to K. Kt. fourth
23. Q. to Q. R. third (check)	23. K. to K. square
24. Q. R. takes P.	24. R. takes R.
25. K. B. takes P. (check)	25. K. to K. B. second
26. K. B. takes Q. P. (check)	26. K. to Kt. third
27. Q. to K. B. eighth	27. Q. to Q. second ³
28. B. takes R.	28. B. to Q. square
29. P. takes P.	29. B. takes P.
30. B. to K. fourth (check)	30. K. to R. fourth
31. Q. B. to K. third	31. P. to K. R. third
32. R. to Kt. third	32. B. to K. Kt. second
33. Q. to K. B. seventh (check)	

And wins.

¹ Either this move or the advance of Q. P. is recommended by Morphy for the attack in the *Evans's Gambit*. He also approves of Black's reply on the 9th move.

² "Q. B. to Q. second" at this point would have been better, according to Morphy. "P. to Q. R. third," however, would have led to the ensuing variation.

White.

11. B. to Q. R. fourth
12. B. takes Kt. (check)
13. Q. to Q. R. fourth
14. Q. takes P. (check)
15. Q. takes K. B. with a good game.

Black.

10. P. to Q. R. third
11. B. to Q. R. fourth
12. P. takes B.
13. K. B. takes Kt.
14. Q. B. to Q. second

³ Had he played "R. to Q. Kt. square," White would have mated in four moves, thus:—

White.

28. Q. takes K. B. P. (check)
29. R. takes P. (check)
30. R. to Kt. fourth (dis. check)
31. B. mates.

Black.

27. R. to Q. Kt. square
28. Kt. takes Q.
29. K. to R. third
30. K. to R. fourth

["R. to Kt. third," on the 27th move, instead of "Q. to Q. second" would at least have lost the Queen.—*Trans.*]

GAME XIX.

Between the same Opponents.

(Ruy Lopez.)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. SCHULTEN.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. Kt. fifth	3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. B. third	4. K. Kt. to K. second
5. Castles	5. Castles
6. P. to Q. fourth	6. P. takes P.
7. P. takes P.	7. B. to Kt. third
8. P. to Q. fifth ¹	8. Kt. to Q. Kt. square
9. P. to Q. sixth	9. P. takes P.
10. Q. B. to K. B. fourth ²	10. B. to Q. B. second
11. Kt. to Q. B. third	11. P. to Q. R. third
12. B. to Q. B. fourth	12. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
13. B. to Q. Kt. third	13. Q. B. to Q. Kt. second
14. Q. B. takes P.	14. B. takes B.
15. Q. takes B.	15. P. to K. R. third
16. Q. R. to Q. square	16. K. Kt. to Q. B. square
17. Q. to K. B. fourth	17. K. Kt. to Q. Kt. third
18. Kt. to K. fifth	18. Q. to K. B. third
19. Q. takes Q.	19. P. takes Q.
20. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth	20. K. to Kt. second
21. Kt. takes B. P.	21. B. to Q. B. third
22. P. to K. fifth	22. P. to Q. R. fourth
23. R. to Q. third	23. R. to K. R. square
24. Q. Kt. to Q. fifth	24. K. Kt. to Q. B. fifth
25. B. takes Kt.	25. P. takes B.
26. R. to K. Kt. third (ch.)	26. K. to B. square
27. Kt. to Q. Kt. sixth	27. Q. R. to R. second
28. K. R. to Q. square	28. B. to Q. Kt. fourth
29. R. to Q. fourth	29. R. to Q. B. second
30. K. R. (from Q. fourth) to K. Kt. fourth	

And wins.

¹ The books recommended the advance of the Queen's Pawn in this opening. It is quite congenial to Morphy's style in general, and often adopted by him both in the *Giuoco Piano* and *Evans's Gambit*.

² "Q. takes P." is given by the books. If then Black plays "B. to Q. B. second," White answers with "Q. to Q. R. third." The

move in the text, however, tends to a better development of White's game, and has been first recommended by the author (Herr MAX LANGE), in his *Schachpartieen*, where it will be found in note 4, Game XIX., p. 51.

GAMES PLAYED WITH MEMBERS OF THE NEW YORK CHESS CLUB.

GAME XX.

Played with Mr. F. PERRIN.

(*Sicilian Opening.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. F. PERRIN.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to Q. B. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. P. to K. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. takes P. ¹
4. Kt. takes P.	4. Kt. to Q. B. third
5. Q. B. to K. third ²	5. Kt. to K. B. third
6. K. B. to Q. third	6. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (ch.)
7. P. to Q. B. third	7. B. to Q. R. fourth
8. Castles	8. B. to Kt. third
9. Q. Kt. to Q. second	9. Q. Kt. to K. fourth
10. B. to K. second	10. P. to Q. fourth
11. P. to K. B. fourth	11. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third
12. P. to K. fifth	12. B. takes Kt.
13. P. takes B.	13. K. Kt. to Q. second
14. B. to Q. third	14. P. to K. B. fourth
15. P. to K. Kt. fourth ³	15. P. to K. Kt. third
16. P. takes P.	16. K. P. takes P.
17. K. to R. square	17. K. Kt. to K. B. square
18. Q. R. to Q. B. square	18. K. Kt. to K. third
19. B. takes P.	19. K. Kt. takes Q. P. ⁴
20. B. takes B.	20. R. takes B.
21. P. to K. B. fifth	21. Kt. takes P. ⁵
22. R. takes Kt.	22. P. takes R.
23. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)	23. K. to Q. second
24. Q. to K. B. seventh (ch.)	24. Q. to K. second ⁶
25. P. to K. sixth (check)	25. K. to Q. square
26. B. to K. Kt. fifth	

And wins.

¹ See our notes to the second and third move in Game VIII.

² In the Sicilian game, more than in any other opening, a speedy co-operation of the pieces proves useful. Observe, therefore, the following moves of White.

³ This attack with the Pawns on King's side, is one of the striking features of Morphy's style, and perfectly correct in the present case.

⁴ If "P. takes B." White checks on K. R. fifth, and Black would ere long be obliged to yield on account of his cramped position.

⁵ Black ought not to have taken that Pawn, which White gave up with his wonted energy. Castling, perhaps, was the best move under the circumstances.*

* [That is to say, of the two it would have been the lesser evil. In our opinion Black's game was already past recovery.—*Trans.*]

⁶ If Kt. interposes, White mates in two moves.

GAME XXI.

Played with Mr. MARACHE.

(*Evans's Gambit.*)

White. (Mr. N. MARACHE.)

Black. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
5. P. to Q. B. third
6. P. to Q. fourth
7. P. to K. fifth¹
8. P. takes P. (*en passant*)
9. Castles
10. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth²
11. B. to Q. third
12. B. takes B.
13. B. to Q. R. third
14. B. takes R.
15. B. to Q. R. third
16. B. to Q. B. square
17. B. to K. B. fourth
18. Q. to Q. B. second
19. Q. to K. fourth⁴
20. Q. takes Q.

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. B. takes P.
5. B. to Q. R. fourth
6. P. takes P.
7. P. to Q. fourth
8. Q. takes P.
9. K. Kt. to K. second
10. Castles
11. Q. B. to K. B. fourth
12. Kt. takes B.
13. Q. to K. Kt. third
14. Q. takes Kt.³
15. P. takes P.
16. Q. to K. Kt. third
17. R. to Q. square
18. Q. Kt. to Q. fifth
19. K. Kt. to K. Kt. sixth
20. Q. Kt. mates

¹ The advance of the K. P. at this point is a weak and unusual move, by which the second player gets the best of the game.

² Another weak move. Either "B. to Q. R. third," or "R. to K. square," would have led to a stronger attack.

³ By thus giving up the exchange, Black turns the attack, and makes his strong phalanx of Pawns on Queen's side tell.

⁴ White's choice of moves was extremely limited in this position. He could have played neither "R. to Q. square," nor "Q. to. Q. R. fourth," with any hope of retrieving his position. Suppose:—

<i>White.</i>		<i>Black.</i>	
19. R. to Q. square, or (A)	(A).	19. K. Kt to K. sixth	
20. Q. takes Q.		20. Q. Kt. to K. seventh (ch)	
21. K. to R. square		21. R. mates	
19. Q. to Q. R. fourth		19. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	
20. Q. takes B. (best)	(B).	20. Q. Kt. to K. seventh (ch.)	
21. K. to R. square		21. Kt. takes B.	
22. R. to K. Kt. sq. or (B)		22. R. to Q. eighth	
23. P. to K. Kt. third		23. Q. to Q. B. sixth (check)	
And mates next move.			
22. P. to K. Kt. third	(B).	22. Q. to Q. B. third (check)	
23. P. to K. B. third		23. Q. takes P. (check)	
And Black again mates in two more moves.			

GAME XXII.

Played at the odds of Queen's Knight with MR. D. JULIEN.

(Remove *White's Q. Kt. from the Board.*)

(*K. Kt. Gambit.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (MR. D. JULIEN.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. P. takes P.
3. Kt. to K. B. third	3. P. to K. Kt. fourth
4. B. to Q. B. fourth	4. B. to K. Kt. second
5. Castles	5. P. to K. R. third
6. P. to Q. B. third	6. P. to Q. third
7. Q. to Q. Kt. third	7. Q. to K. second
8. P. to Q. fourth	8. P. to Q. B. third ¹
9. Q. B. to Q. second	9. Q. Kt. to Q. second
10. Q. R. to K. square	10. Q. Kt. to Q. Kt. third
11. B. to Q. third	11. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
12. P. to Q. R. fourth	12. B. takes Kt.
13. R. takes B.	13. Q. Kt. to Q. second

14. Q. takes Kt. P.	14. R. to Q. Kt. square
15. Q. takes B. P.	15. R. takes P.
16. P. to K. fifth	16. R. takes B.
17. Q. to Q. B. eighth (ch.)	17. Q. to Q. square
18. P. takes P. (dis. check)	18. B. to K. fifth
19. R. takes B. (check)	19. Kt. takes R.
20. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)	

And wins.

¹ "Kt. to K. B. third" would have been the correct move at this stage of the game.

GAME XXIII.

Played at the same odds with a Member.

(Remove White's Q. Kt. from the Board.)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. ———)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. P. takes P.
3. Kt. to K. B. third	3. P. to K. Kt. fourth
4. B. to Q. B. fourth	4. P. to K. Kt. fifth
5. P. to Q. fourth	5. P. takes Kt.
6. Castles	6. B. to K. R. third ¹
7. Q. takes P.	7. Kt. to Q. B. third
8. B. takes P. (check)	8. K. takes B.
9. Q. to K. R. fifth (ch.)	9. K. to Kt. second
10. B. takes P.	10. B. takes B.
11. R. takes B.	11. Kt. to K. R. third
12. Q. R. to K. B. square	12. Q. to K. square
13. Q. to R. fourth	13. P. to Q. third
14. Q. to B. sixth (check)	14. K. to Kt. square
15. Q. takes Kt.	15. B. to Q. second
16. K. R. to K. B. third	16. Kt. to K. second
17. P. to K. R. fourth	17. Kt. to K. Kt. third
18. P. to K. R. fifth	18. B. to K. Kt. fifth
19. P. takes Kt.	19. P. takes P. ²
20. R. to B. eighth (check)	20. Q. takes R.
21. R. takes Q. (check)	

And mates next move.

¹ "P. to Q. fourth" is the proper move at this point.

² "B. takes R." would have been answered with "P. to Kt. seventh."

GAME XXIV.

Played at the same odds with another Member.

(Remove White's Q. Kt. from the Board.)

White. (MORPHY.)

Black. (Mr. — Y.)

1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. takes P.
4. P. to K. fifth	4. Q. to K. second
5. B. to K. second	5. Kt. to K. fifth
6. Castles	6. P. to Q. fourth
7. P. takes P. (<i>en passant</i>)	7. Kt. takes P.
8. R. to K. square	8. Q. B. to K. third
9. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	9. Q. to Q. second
10. Kt. to K. fifth	10. Q. to Q. B. square
11. K. B. to K. R. fifth	11. B. to K. second
12. B. takes B.	12. K. takes B.
13. Kt. takes B. P.	13. Kt. takes Kt.
14. B. to K. Kt. fourth	14. Kt. to Q. square
15. Q. takes P.	15. R. to K. Kt. square
16. R. takes B. (check)	16. Kt. takes R.
17. R. to K. square	17. Q. Kt. to B. third
18. Q. to Q. B. fifth (check)	18. K. to B. third
19. Q. to K. B. fifth (check)	19. K. to K. second
20. R. takes Kt. (check)	

And wins.¹

¹ Black's game is hopeless. Had he now moved the King to Q. square, then "Q. to K. Kt. fifth (check)" would have at once decided the struggle; had he taken the Rook, however, White would have played as follows:—

White.

Black.

20.	20. Q. takes R.
21. Q. takes Q. (check)	21. K. to B. square
22. Q. to B. fifth (check)	22. K. to K. second
23. Q. to Q. seventh (check)	23. K. to B. square
(If K. to B. third, White mates in three moves.)	
24. B. to K. sixth	24. Kt. to K. fourth
25. Q. takes Q. B. P., and wins.	

GAME XXV.

Played at the same odds with another Member.

(Remove *White's Q. Kt.* from the Board.)

White. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. P. to Q. fourth
4. Kt. takes P.
5. B. to Q. B. fourth
6. Kt. takes B. P.
7. B. takes Kt. (check)
8. P. to K. fifth
9. Castles *
10. Q. to Kt. fourth (check)
11. B. to K. Kt. fifth
12. Q. R. to Q. square ⁴
13. Q. to K. fourth
14. P. to Q. B. fourth
15. R. takes Kt.
16. R. takes B.
17. Q. to K. fifth

Black. (Mr. — z.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. Kt. takes P.
4. Kt. to K. third
5. Kt. to K. B. third ¹
6. K. takes Kt.
7. K. takes B. ²
8. B. to Q. B. fourth
9. Kt. to Q. fourth
10. K. takes P. ³
11. Q. to K. B. square
12. K. to Q. third
13. Q. to B. second
14. K. to Q. B. third
15. K. to Kt. third
16. P. to Q. B. third ⁵
17. R. to K. square

¹ "P. to Q. third" seems stronger. The introduction of the following sacrifice into practice is attributed to *Cochrane*.

² If "P. takes B.," White takes Q., and regains the piece by interposing the Q. after Black's checking with B.

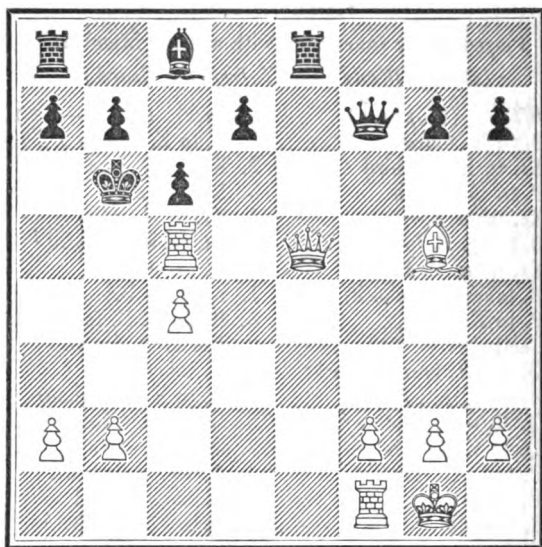
* [We here draw the attention of our readers to the remarkable fact, that the great American player often disdains to win a piece, even when giving large odds, only to maintain his superiority of position. Had he taken the Knight, Black, by retaking with Queen, would have obtained a fine attack with a piece ahead.—*Trans.*]

³ Black ought to have played "K. to B. second," but he now attempts to keep up his material advantage.

⁴ Observe the steady yet energetic way of maintaining the attack.

⁵ It is evident that "K. takes R." would only accelerate the final catastrophe.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White having to play, check mated in four moves.

GAMES PLAYED WITH VARIOUS PLAYERS OF THE UNITED STATES.

GAME XXVI.

Played with Mr. G. HAMMOND, *from Boston.*

(*Giuoco Piano.*)

White. (MR. G. HAMMOND.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. B. third

Black. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. Kt. to K. B. third

5. P. to Q. fourth	5. P. takes P.
6. P. to K. fifth	6. P. to Q. fourth ¹
7. B. to Q. Kt. third ²	7. Kt. to K. fifth
8. P. takes P.	8. B. to Q. Kt. third
9. Castles	9. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
10. Q. B. to K. third	10. Castles
11. Q. to Q. third	11. B. takes Kt.
12. P. takes B.	12. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth
13. Q. to K. B. fifth	13. Q. Kt. takes Q. P.
14. B. takes Q. Kt. ³	14. B. takes B.
15. Q. Kt. to B. third	15. P. to K. Kt. third
16. Q. to K. Kt. fourth	16. P. to K. R. fourth
17. Q. to Kt. second ⁴	17. B. takes P.
18. Kt. takes P.	18. P. to Q. B. third
19. K. R. to K. square	19. K. R. to K. square
20. P. to K. B. fourth	20. P. takes Kt.
21. P. takes B.	21. Kt. to K. third
22. Q. takes Q. P.	22. Q. takes Q.
23. B. takes Q.	23. Kt. to K. B. fifth ⁵
24. B. takes Q. Kt. P.	24. R. to Q. Kt. square
25. B. to Q. B. sixth	25. K. R. to K. third
26. B. to Q. seventh	26. R. to K. second
27. Q. R. to Q. square ⁶	27. Q. R. takes P.
28. R. to K. fourth	28. R. takes B.

And wins.

¹ It is worth noticing that Morphy never declines choosing the most forcible variations, and those which are especially recommended by the books.

² The usual move here is, "B. to Q. Kt. fifth." Black's Queen's Knight, which the first player ought to have pinned, and eventually taken, is very properly made use of on the 13th move.

³ "B. takes K.Kt." would also turn in Black's favour. *Ex. gr.* :—

White.

14. B. takes K. Kt.
15. Q. takes Kt.
16. Q. to Kt. third

Black.

14. Kt. takes P. (check)
15. Q. takes B. (check)
16. Q. takes Q. &c.

⁴ If "Q. to Kt. third," B. could also have taken K. P. with impunity.

⁵ It will be seen that Morphy's principal aim is invariably either to maintain the attack, or to wrest it from his opponent's hand.

⁶ After this move, White's game could hardly have been saved, but the subsequent mistake decides its fate at once.

GAME XXVII.

Played with Mr. L. ELKIN, from *Philadelphia*.

(*Kieseritzky Gambit*.)

<i>White.</i> (Mr. L. ELKIN.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. P. takes P.
3. Kt. to K. B. third	3. P. to K. Kt. fourth
4. P. to K. R. fourth	4. P. to K. Kt. fifth
5. Kt. to K. fifth	5. Kt. to K. B. third
6. B. to Q. B. fourth	6. P. to Q. fourth
7. P. takes P.	7. K. B. to Q. third
8. P. to Q. fourth	8. Kt. to K. R. fourth
9. Q. to Q. second ¹	9. Q. to K. second
10. K. to Q. square	10. Castles
11. Q. to K. square	11. R. to K. square
12. Kt. to Q. third	12. Q. to Q. square
13. Q. to Q. B. third	13. P. to K. Kt. sixth
14. Q. Kt. to Q. second	14. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth (ch.)
15. Q. Kt. to K. B. third	15. Q. Kt. to Q. second
16. B. to Q. Kt. fifth ²	16. R. to K. second
17. B. takes Kt.	17. Q. takes B.
18. Q. B. to Q. second	18. Q. R. to K. square
19. K. R. to K. square	19. B. takes Kt. (check)
20. P. takes B.	20. Q. to K. R. sixth
21. Kt. to K. fifth	21. P. to K. Kt. seventh
22. B. takes P.	22. Kt. takes B.
23. Q. to K. third	23. B. takes Kt.
24. P. takes B.	24. R. takes P.

And wins.

¹ We cannot recommend this eccentric move, which tends to make the King and Queen change places. It would have been stronger to check with the Bishop on Q. Kt. fifth. We refer our readers to an article commenting upon this opening, from the pen of Herr Springfield, in the *Berlin Schachzeitung* of 1858, and to the first game with Harrwitz in this volume.

² This move, and the following exchange of the pieces, only facilitate the development of Black's game. Morphy does not fail to avail himself in his usual style of the advantage thus afforded him by his opponent.

GAME XXVIII.

Played with Mr. HIRAM KENNICOTT, *from Illinois.*

(*Scotch Gambit.*)

White. (Mr. H. KENNICOTT.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. P. to Q. fourth
4. B. to Q. B. fourth
5. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth
6. Kt. takes B. P.
7. B. takes Kt. (check)
8. Q. to K. R. fifth (ch.)
9. Q. takes B.
10. Q. to Q. Kt. fifth
11. Castles
12. Q. to Q. fifth (check)
13. B. to K. Kt. fifth
14. P. to K. B. fourth¹
15. P. to K. B. fifth
16. Q. takes K. B. P.
17. B. to B. sixth (check)
18. Q. to K. B. fourth
19. B. to K. Kt. fifth
20. Q. takes Q.
21. P. takes B.
22. K. to R. square
23. R. to K. square
24. Kt. to Q. R. third

Black. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. P. takes P.
4. B. to Q. B. fourth
5. K. Kt. to R. third
6. Kt. takes Kt.
7. K. takes B.
8. P. to K. Kt. third
9. P. to Q. third
10. K. R. to R. square
11. R. takes P.
12. R. to R. third
13. Q. to K. square
14. K. to Kt. second
15. P. takes P.²
16. R. to K. Kt. third
17. K. to Kt. square
18. Q. B. to K. R. sixth³
19. Q. to Q. sixth (check)⁴
20. P. takes Q.
21. R. takes B. (check)
22. P. to K. seventh
23. Kt. to Q. fifth
24. Q. R. to K. square.

And wins.

¹ Up to this point, White has conducted the game correctly. The now following advance of the K. B. P., however, seems premature, and in its stead "Kt. to Q. second," to bring the pieces to a speedy co-operation, ought to have been preferred. (See our note 3, to Game IV.)

The following variation is also deserving of attention:—

White.

11. Castles
12. B. to K. Kt. fifth

Black.

11. R. takes P.
12. Q. to K. square

13. Kt. to Q. second	13. R. to K. fourth
14. Q. to Q. Kt. third (check)	14. Q. B. to K. third
15. Q. to K. Kt. third	

At this point, having brought his pieces into play, White can safely advance the K. B. P., play what Black may.

² Had he attacked Q. with R., White could have played "P. to K. B. sixth (check)," followed by "P. to K. B. seventh."

³ Observe how the youthful hero, even when struggling under difficulties, avails himself of every chance of turning the attack.

⁴ The decisive move, which shows the correctness of our previous remarks with regard to the premature advance of the King's Bishop's Pawn.

GAME XXIX.

Played against Messrs. D. W. FISKE, F. PERRIN, and
J. A. FULLER, in Consultation.

The following game, one of those few which were lost by the American champion is a fine specimen of correct play, having been masterly conducted on the part of the consulting parties.

(Two Knights' Opening.)

<i>White.</i> (THE ALLIES.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. Kt. to K. B. third
4. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth	4. P. to Q. fourth
5. P. takes P.	5. Kt. to Q. R. fourth
6. P. to Q. third ¹	6. P. to K. R. third ²
7. Kt. to K. B. third	7. P. to K. fifth
8. Q. to K. second	8. Kt. takes B.
9. P. takes Kt.	9. B. to Q. B. fourth
10. P. to K. R. third ³	10. Castles
11. Kt. to K. R. second	11. Kt. to K. R. second
12. B. to K. third	12. B. to Q. third
13. Castles	13. Q. to K. R. fifth
14. P. to K. B. fourth	14. P. takes P. (<i>en passant</i>)
15. Kt. takes P.	15. Q. to R. fourth
16. Q. Kt. to B. third	16. R. to K. square
17. Q. to K. B. second	17. Kt. to K. B. third
18. B. to Q. fourth	18. Kt. to K. fifth

19. Kt. takes Kt.	19. R. takes Kt.
20. Q. R. to K. square	20. Q. B. to K. B. fourth
21. R. takes R.	21. B. takes R.
22. Kt. to K. R. fourth	22. R. to K. B. square ⁴
23. P. to Q. B. fifth	23. B. to K. fourth
24. B. takes B.	24. Q. takes B.
25. P. to Q. B. fourth	25. P. to K. Kt. fourth
26. Kt. to K. B. third	26. B. takes Kt.
27. P. takes B.	27. R. to K. square
28. P. to K. B. fourth	28. Q. to K. sixth
29. P. takes P.	29. P. takes P.
30. Q. takes Q.	30. R. takes Q.
31. K. to Kt. second	31. K. to Kt. second
32. P. to Q. sixth	32. P. takes P.
33. P. takes P.	33. R. to Q. sixth
34. P. to Q. B. fifth	34. K. to Kt. third
35. R. to B. third	35. R. to Q. seventh (check)
36. K. to Kt. third	36. P. to K. B. fourth *
37. R. to Q. Kt. third	37. P. to K. B. fifth (check)
38. K. to B. third	38. R. to K. R. seventh
39. P. to Q. seventh	39. R. takes P. (check)
40. K. to K. fourth	40. R. to K. R. square
41. R. takes P.	41. K. to B. third
42. R. to Q. B. seventh	42. K. to K. second
43. R. to Q. B. eighth	43. R. to Q. square
44. R. takes R.	44. K. takes R.
45. P. to Q. B. sixth	45. P. to Q. R. fourth
46. P. to Q. Kt. third	46. K. to K. second
47. P. to Q. R. third	47. K. to Q. square
48. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	48. P. takes P.
49. P. takes P.	And Black resigned.

¹ Checking with the Bishop on Q. Kt. fifth is the customary move at this stage of the game. The move in the text was first suggested by the author in the *Magdeburg Schachzeitung* (1849, p. 37), where the following variation is given:—

White.

6. P. to Q. third
7. Castles
8. P. to Q. B. third
9. P. takes Kt.

Black.

6. B. to Q. B. fourth
7. Castles
8. Kt. takes B.
9. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth, &c.

² "B. to Q. B. fourth," or to "Q. third," would have been stronger.

³ The allies here chose the best move, which, in the long run, must secure the victory.

⁴ "P. to K. B. fourth" might have been more to the purpose.

[It is evident that White, in answer to the move suggested by the German author, could not have taken P. with Kt., for Black plays then "R. to K. B. square," and if White takes "K. Kt. P. with Kt.," "R. takes Q." and wins.—*Trans.*]

[* For the sake of those of our readers who are not well versed in end-games, we may here observe that "R. takes P.," instead of "P to K. B. fourth" would have been most effectually replied to with "R. to Q. third."—*Trans.*]

NOTES.

A.

We here quote the following paragraphs from the *American Chess Monthly*, 1858.

"After the close of the congress, Mr. Morphy, by a note to Mr. Secretary Perrin, proffered the odds of the Pawn and move to any player of the New York Club. This challenge was accepted by Mr. C. H. Stanley, and a match was arranged, Mr. Morphy giving the above-named odds, for one hundred dollars a side. The first winner of seven games was to be considered the winner of the match, but after playing five, the score standing Morphy four, Stanley none, and drawn one, Mr. Stanley through his second resigned the contest. Mr. Morphy's second was Mr. T. J. Bryan, who acted in the same capacity for Mr. Staunton at the time of the great match between England and France; Mr. Bailey was Mr. Stanley's second. The games were chiefly played at the rooms of the New York Club, and drew an immense concourse of observers. We regret to state that the play of Mr. Stanley, on account of indisposition and want of practice, was not of that strength and brilliancy, which he evinced in former years in his matches with Mr. Rousseau, Mr. Turner, &c.

"We desire to state that Mr. Morphy extends the challenge sent to the New York Club so as to comprise all the leading practitioners of the United States. He proffers any American player the odds of the Pawn and move, and will always be glad to arrange a match upon those terms.

"Mr. Morphy left New York on the 17th of December. On the previous evening a large number of the Chess players of the metropolis gave him a farewell dinner."

B.

SCORE OF THE GAMES PLAYED BY MORPHY, AT NEW YORK, IN
THE AUTUMN OF 1857.(The first number are the games lost by Morphy; the second those he
won; and the third the drawn games.)

A. Games on even terms.

a. Against members of the New York Chess Club.

C. H. Stanley	1	—	12	
J. W. Schulten	1	—	23	
J. Thompson	0	—	8	
Th. Lichtenhein	0	—	4	(3)
D. W. Fiske	0	—	3	
N. Marache	0	—	3	
W. J. A. Fuller	0	—	2	
M. Solomons	0	—	2	
C. D. Mead	0	—	1	
F. Perrin	0	—	1	(2)
B. J. Raphael	0	—	1	
D. Parry	0	—	1	
	2	—	61	(5)

b. Against other players of the United States.

L. Paulsen from Dubuque	1	—	8	(3)
G. Hammond from Boston	1	—	7	
A. B. Meek from Alabama	0	—	5	
L. Elkin from Philadelphia	0	—	1	
H. P. Montgomery do.	0	—	1	
H. Kennicott from Illinois	0	—	1	
S. R. Calthrop from Connecticut	0	—	1	

Games played even 4 85 (8)

B. At the odds of Pawn and move.

N. Marache	0	—	3	(2)
C. H. Stanley	0	—	4	(1)

C. At the odds of Pawn and two moves.

F. Perrin	2	—	8	
H. Richardson	1	—	3	

D. At the odds of Pawn and three moves.

T. J. Bryan	2	—	8	

E. At the odds of Queen's Knight.

D. Julien	3	—	10	(3)
T. J. Bryan	18	—	30	(7)
F. Perrin	9	—	17	(3)

76 PAUL MORPHY'S VICTORIES IN NEW YORK.

A. Reif	1	—	7	(1)
A. King	0	—	2	
M. Mantin	0	—	1	
M. Solomon	0	—	0	(1)
F. At the odds of the Queen's Rook.				
A. Perrin	0	—	9	
M. Mantin	0	—	1	
T. M. Brown	0	—	1	
G. Blindfold Games.				
L. Paulsen	0	—	2	
Consultation Games against Fiske, Fuller, and Perrin	1	—	0	
Total				41 191 (26)

The whole gives an amount of 258 games, which have been played by the young hero in the incredible short space of two months.



CHAPTER VI.

PAUL MORPHY IN NEW ORLEANS.

A TRULY enthusiastic reception awaited PAUL MORPHY at New Orleans, when he returned from the Chess Congress to his home, the Chess Club of New Orleans. Every one was proud to be a countryman of the young hero, and considered it an honour to follow the Chess flag under his presidency. Strangers and guests came flocking to the Club, whose numbers augmented daily, and it was soon necessary to look out for more spacious accommodation.

The young president could scarcely find opponents worthy of his powers; but then he found occasion for brilliant play, by giving odds, and by conducting with extraordinary exactness, blindfold games. (A)

Excited by the success of PAULSEN, who at the Chess Congress had played five games blindfold at the same time, the young master tried at first two games at the same time, and then three, which latter feat he performed before a numerous audience in January, 1858, with perfect ease and in his usual brilliant style.

He soon advanced in this new branch of the game, and played successively four, then five, and at last six games, in an incredibly short time, with the same elegance and power as over the Chessboard, and without being visibly tired at the end of the performance.

Of four games played on the 10th of March in three hours, he won three and drew the fourth; in other cases he conquered all his four opponents, which were chosen from among the strongest players of the club. (B)

Besides these victories in the club itself, he fought, as their champion, with unvaried success against passing guests of high repute, giving even considerable odds to well-known masters of the United States. Mr. W. W. MONTGOMERY, from Georgia, and Mr. WORRALL, from Mexico, a former opponent of STAUNTON, both had to experience the superiority

of the young master. Against the first, MORPHY lost only one game in fifteen, and in nine of the games he gave the Knight; against the latter he won, out of fifteen games at the same odds, eight. (c)

It was, however, not necessary for our young hero to have to conquer new opponents in order to stimulate him to measure his strength with European masters.

The late English champion, HOWARD STAUNTON, enjoyed beyond the seas a reputation far above that of other European masters.

His *Handbook*, an imitation of the German book of the same name, enjoyed great popularity in the New World, and his exaltation by his countrymen had early found an echo in the American Chess circles. Thus the next challenge was to be directed to the English veteran, as, in the opinion of the New World, his defeat was to be the first decisive triumph of America over Europe.

Private circumstances prevented the young master from immediately executing his plan, and delayed his voyage to Europe. The general enthusiasm, however, for his outspoken wish, made them blind to the impropriety of proposing to the veteran champion a voyage across the sea to encounter his young opponent. So inconsistent a proposition, however softened by favourable and humane conditions, was still inexcusable as wanting in tact. It is probable also, to the sober sense of the young master the proposition of the Club must have appeared faulty.

The Club of New Orleans, however, was too enthusiastic to give way to a quiet and slow development of events. The lively expressed desire was to be realized without delay, and the Old World was to be taken by storm. A clear proof of it is the letter directed to the English champion, which gives the purified and cooled sentiments of the general opinion of the Club.

“NEW ORLEANS, *Feb. 4, 1858.*

“SIR,—On behalf of the New Orleans Chess Club, and in compliance with the instructions of that body, we, the undersigned committee, have the honour to invite you to visit our city, and there meet Mr. Paul Morphy in a Chess match.

- "In transmitting this invitation, permit us to observe that we are prompted no less by the desire to become personally acquainted with one whom we have so long admired, than by the very natural anxiety to ascertain the strength of our American players by the decisive criterion of actual conflict over the board.

"We can see no valid reason why an exercise so intellectual and ennobling as Chess should be excluded from the generous rivalry which exists between the Old and the New World in all branches of human knowledge and industry.

"That the spirit of emulation from which this rivalry arises has not hitherto been made to embrace our chivalrous game may be mainly ascribed to the fact that, although the general attention paid to Chess in the United States during the last fifteen years has produced a number of fine players, yet their relative force remained undetermined, and none could assert an indisputable right to pre-eminence.

"The late Chess Congress has, however, removed this obstacle, by finally settling the claims of the several aspirants to the championship; and it must now be a matter of general desire to fix, by actual contest with the best European amateurs, the rank which American players shall hold in the hierarchy of Chess.

"For this purpose it was suggested that Mr. Morphy, the winner at the late Congress and the present American champion, should cross the ocean and boldly encounter the distinguished magnates of the Transatlantic Chess circles; but it unfortunately happens that serious family reasons forbid Mr. Morphy, for the present, to entertain the thought of visiting Europe.

"It therefore becomes necessary to arrange, if possible, a meeting between the latter and the acknowledged European champion, in regard to whom there can be no scope for choice or hesitation—the common voice of the Chess world pronounces your name; and to us it is a subject of congratulation that the sceptre of Transatlantic Chess is wielded by one who, with respect to regularity of communication between the two countries, and for other reasons, enjoys facilities for accepting our invitation possessed by no other European player.

"We take the liberty herewith to enclose a series of proposed 'terms of the match,' which have been drawn up, not for the purpose of imposing conditions, but with a view to obviate the necessity of repeated correspondence. We have been studious to make these terms as equitable as possible, and to include all matters upon which contestation was likely to arise.

"You are respectfully invited to suggest any alterations which you may deem advisable not only in the minor points embraced, but also as to the amount of the stakes, the time fixed for the commencement of the match, &c. &c.

"Fully subscribing to the wisdom of the proposal made by you in the introduction to the *Book of the Tournament*, we beg leave to express our entire willingness to insert a clause providing that 'one-half at least' (or even *all*) 'of the games shall be *open* ones.'

"In conclusion, Sir, receive the assurance that it will afford us extreme pleasure to welcome among us a gentleman who is as greatly admired for his prowess in play as he is esteemed for his many and valuable contributions to the literature of Chess.

"Hoping soon to receive a favourable answer, we remain, with distinguished regard, your obedient servants,

"E. W. HALSEY, CHAS. A. MAURIAN, Jun.
FRANCIS MICHINARD, P. E. BONFORD."
E. PANDELY,

To this was annexed a list of propositions containing the conditions of the match, as below :—

TERMS OF THE MATCH.

1. The amount of the stakes, on each side, to be five thousand dollars, and the winner of the first eleven games to be declared the victor, and entitled to the stakes.
2. The match to be played in the city of New Orleans.
3. Should the English player lose the match, the sum of one thousand dollars (£200) to be paid to him out of the stakes, in reimbursement of the expenses incurred by him in accepting this challenge.
4. The games to be conducted in accordance with the rules laid down in Mr. Staunton's *Chess Player's Handbook*.

5. The parties to play with Staunton chessmen of the usual club-size, and on a board of corresponding dimensions.

6. The match to be commenced on or about the 1st of May, 1858, (or on any other day during the present year most agreeable to Mr Staunton), and to be continued at not less than four sittings each week.

7. In order that the stay of the English player in New Orleans be not unnecessarily prolonged, he shall have the right to fix the hours of play at from ten o'clock A.M., to two P.M., and from six to ten o'clock P.M.

8. The time occupied in deliberating on any move shall not exceed thirty minutes.

9. The right to publish the games is reserved exclusively to the contestants, subject only to such private arrangements as they may agree upon.

10. The stakes on the part of Mr. Staunton, to be deposited prior to the commencement of the match in the hands of ———; and those on the part of Mr. Morphy, in the hands of Eugene Rousseau, Esq., cashier of the Citizens' Bank of Louisiana.

Omitting the second point, which does not even allow a limited choice to the challenged party, there is nothing to object to the straightforwardness of the conditions. (D) It is, however, remarkable, how young aspiring America could expect that in a combat which was to procure the general acknowledgment of their newly acquired position, the veteran champion should make the advances, and how they overlooked the national pride which must clearly come into play. The simple explanation, however, of counting upon European good nature on the part of our Transatlantic friends, we shall not here assert; but, on the contrary, we shall put it on account of the enthusiastic excitement of the challengers. The declining answer of the English veteran was the following :—

“PROPOSED CHESS MATCH BETWEEN ENGLAND AND AMERICA FOR ONE THOUSAND POUNDS A SIDE.—We have been favoured with a copy of the *defi* which the friends of Mr. PAUL MORPHY, the Chess champion of the United States, have transmitted to Mr. STAUNTON. The terms of this *cartel* are distinguished by extreme courtesy, and with one notable

exception, by extreme liberality also. The exception in question, however, (we refer to the clause which stipulates that the combat shall take place in New Orleans!) appears to us utterly fatal to the match; and we must confess our astonishment, that the intelligent gentlemen who drew up the conditions did not themselves discover this. Could it possibly escape their penetration, that if Mr. PAUL MORPHY, a young gentleman without family ties or professional claims upon his attention, finds it inconvenient to anticipate, by a few months, an intended voyage to Europe, his proposed antagonist, who is well known for years to have been compelled, by laborious literary occupation, to abandon the practice of Chess beyond the indulgence of an occasional game, must find it not merely inconvenient, but positively impracticable, to cast aside all engagements, and undertake a journey of many thousand miles for the sake of a Chess-encounter? Surely the idea of such a sacrifice is not admissible for a single moment. If Mr. MORPHY—for whose skill we entertain the liveliest admiration—be desirous to win his spurs among the Chess chivalry of Europe, he must take advantage of his purposed visit, next year; he will then meet in this country, in France, and Germany, and in Russia, many champions whose names must be as household words to him, ready to test and do honour to his prowess."

Thus the young master was again, and, we believe, rightly reduced to go and fight for the championship and its acknowledgment by the Old World in its own domain. At the same time there was in the answer of the Englishman, a statement of good augury for the expectant champion. For the confessed want of practice and consequent decline of strength, necessarily involved the forfeiture of the European Chess sceptre upon the exclusive possession of which, the English master could never have properly proved his claim. Although he once conquered ST. AMANT, this one-sided success, accompanied by other accidental circumstances, did not give a decided result; the Berlin School, also, had, at that time, produced already at least equal powers, and the surprising results of the great European tournament, in 1851, only serve to corroborate our opinion. (E)

The victory over the English master, although it might have produced great satisfaction among his American countrymen, would not have proved in the eyes of Europe his decided superiority. Therefore this negative answer could only be considered favourable to the young hero as it induced him, at least in an indirect manner, to cross the seas, and thus gave him the opportunity of encountering all the renowned masters of the Old World.

GAMES AT ODDS.

GAME XXX.

At the odds of the Queen's Rook. Remove White's Q. R. from the board.

(*Bishop's Gambit.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> Mr. CH. A. MAURIAN.
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. P. takes P.
3. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. Q. to R. fifth (check)
4. K. to B. square	4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
5. B. to Q. Kt. third	5. Kt. to K. B. third
6. Kt. to K. B. third	6. Q. to R. third
7. Kt. to K. fifth	7. P. to Q. fourth
8. Kt. to Q. B. third	8. K. B. to Q. third
9. P. to Q. fourth ¹	9. Kt. takes P.
10. Kt. takes Kt.	10. K. B. takes K. Kt.
11. K. B. takes Q. P.	11. P. to Q. B. third
12. P. takes B.	12. P. takes B.
13. Kt. to Q. sixth (check)	13. K. to Q. second
14. Q. takes P.	14. K. to Q. B. second
15. P. to Q. B. fourth ²	15. Q. to K. third
16. Q. takes R.	16. Kt. to Q. B. third
17. P. takes P.	17. Q. to Q. fourth
18. Q. takes Kt. (check)	18. Q. takes Q.
19. P. takes Q.	19. K. takes P.
20. B. takes P.	20. R. to Q. square

21. K. to B. second	21. B. to K. third
22. R. to Q. B. square (check)	22. K. to Kt. third
23. B. to K. third (check)	23. K. to R. third

And White mated in three moves.

¹ From this point an interesting complication arises in the middle of the board, which, of course, must finally result in favour of the more profound of the two players.

² Observe the ingenuity with which White repeatedly plays the Pawns, preparatory to the following attack with the pieces.

GAME XXXI.

At the odds of Queen's Knight and move. Remove Black's Q. Kt. from the board.

(*K. Kt. Gambit.*)

<i>White.</i> (Mr. MAUBIAN.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth]	2. P. takes P.
3. Kt. to K. B. third	3. P. to K. Kt. fourth
4. P. to K. R. fourth	4. P. to K. Kt. fifth
5. Kt. to K. fifth	5. Kt. to K. B. third ¹
6. B. to Q. B. fourth	6. P. to Q. fourth
7. B. takes P.	7. Kt. takes B.
8. P. takes Kt.	8. P. to K. B. sixth
9. Castles	9. Q. takes R. P.
10. P. to Q. fourth	10. P. to K. B. seventh (ch.)
11. R. takes P.	11. P. to K. Kt. sixth
12. R. to K. B. fourth	12. Q. to R. seventh (check)
13. K. to B. square	13. Q. to R. eighth (check)
14. K. to K. second	14. Q. takes P. (check)
15. K. to Q. third	15. Q. to K. R. sixth
16. Q. to K. square	16. Q. B. to K. B. fourth (ch.)
17. K. to Q. B. fourth	17. Castles
18. Q. to Q. R. fifth	18. P. to Q. R. third
19. Q. Kt. to B. third	19. Q. B. takes P.
20. R. takes P.	20. K. B. to Q. third
21. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth	21. P. takes Kt. (check)

22. K. takes P.	22. K. to Kt. square
23. B. to K. Kt. fifth ²	23. B. takes Kt.
24. B. takes R.	24. R. takes B.
25. Q. to Q. B. third	25. R. takes P. (check)
26. K. to B. fourth	26. R. takes P. (check)
27. Q. takes R.	27. Q. to K. third (check)
28. Q. to Q. fifth	28. B. to Q. sixth (check)

And wins.

¹ "P. to Q. third," appears a stronger move to turn the attack.

² An interesting variation would have arisen, had he checked with the Knight. Thus:—

White.

Black.

23. Kt. to Q. B. sixth (check)

23. P. takes Kt.

24. K. takes P.

At this point, "Q. to Q. B. square" appears the only move to save Black's game; for if he plays "B. to Q. sixth," White takes Q. B. P. with R., and wins.

GAME XXXII.

At the odds of Queen's Rook, which must be removed from the board.

(*King's Bishop's Opening.*)

White. (MORPHY.)

Black. (Mr. H——.)

1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. B. to Q. B. fourth	2. B. to Q. B. fourth
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. takes P. ¹
4. Kt. to K. B. third	4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
5. B. to Q. Kt. third	5. P. to Q. third
6. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth	6. Kt. to K. R. third
7. Castles	7. Castles
8. P. to K. B. fourth	8. P. to Q. R. fourth
9. P. to K. B. fifth ²	9. Q. to K. B. third
10. Q. to K. R. fifth	10. P. to Q. R. fifth
11. B. to Q. fifth	11. P. to Q. B. third
12. Kt. takes R. P.	12. K. takes Kt.
12. B. to K. Kt. fifth	13. Q. to K. fourth
14. Kt. to Q. second	14. P. takes B.
15. Kt. to K. B. third	15. Q. to K. square

16. P. to K. B. sixth	16. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
17. Q. to R. fourth	17. B. takes Kt.
18. P. takes P. on K. Kt. second	18. P. to Q. sixth (dis. ch.)
19. K. to R. square	19. Q. B. takes Kt. P. (ch.)
20. K. takes B.	20. K. takes P.
21. B. takes Kt. (check)	21. K. to R. second
22. B. takes R. (dis. check)	22. K. to Kt. square
23. B. to K. seventh	23. Kt. to Q. B. third
24. Q. to Kt. fifth (check)	24. K. to R. second
25. R. to K. B. fourth ³	

And wins.

¹ Under ordinary circumstances, "B. takes P." would be stronger; for in answer to the move in the text, White could have taken the B. P., checking. It is true, however, that on account of the large odds he gives, the first player is obliged to avoid this variation, which, although it wins a Pawn in the long run, still would have led to an exchange of pieces.

² With regard to this and the sixteenth move of White, see our Note 4 to Game II.

³ Even this decisive move shows the oft-mentioned energy of the young master. He might have made the more obvious move "R. to B. third," but then Black could have prolonged the game by playing "Q. to Q. second."

GAME XXXIII.

At the odds of the Queen's Knight. Remove White's Q. Kt. from the board.

(*Evans's Gambit.*)

McCormell

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. —y.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to K. B. fourth	3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	4. B. takes P.
5. P. to Q. B. third	5. B. to B. fourth
6. Castles	6. Kt. to K. B. third ¹
7. P. to Q. fourth	7. P. takes P.
8. P. takes P.	8. B. to Kt. third
9. Q. B. to Q. R. third	9. P. to Q. third
10. P. to K. fifth	10. Kt. to K. fifth

11. R. to K. square	11. P. to Q. fourth
12. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth	12. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
13. Q. R. to Q. B. square	13. Q. to Q. second
14. Q. to Q. R. fourth	14. B. takes Kt.
15. Q. R. takes Kt.	15. Castles (Q. R.)
16. P. to K. sixth ²	16. P. takes P.
17. R. takes B.	

And wins.³

¹ See our Note 1 to Game X.

² This time the sacrifice of a Pawn is a defensive move. It enables Black to capture the Bishop with the Rook, which he could not have done without advancing the King's Pawn, on account of Black's reply, "Q. to K. Kt. fifth."

³ If Black now plays "Q. to K. B. second," White captures R. P. with Q. and mates in a few more moves.

GAME XXXIV.

At the same odds.

(*Muzio Gambit.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. —z.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. P. takes P.
3. Kt. to K. B. third	3. P. to K. Kt. fourth
4. B. to Q. B. fourth	4. P. to K. Kt. fifth
5. Castles	5. P. takes Kt.
6. Q. takes P.	6. Q. to K. B. third
7. P. to K. fifth	7. Q. takes P.
8. B. takes B. P. (check)	8. K. takes B.
9. P. to Q. fourth	9. Q. takes P. (check)
10. Q. B. to K. third	10. Q. to K. B. third
11. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)	11. Q. to K. Kt. third
12. R. takes P. (check)	12. Kt. to K. B. third
13. R. takes Kt. (check)	13. K. takes R.
14. B. to Q. fourth (check)	14. K. to K. second
15. R. to K. square (check)	15. K. to B. second
16. Q. to Q. fifth (check)	16. Q. to K. third
17. Q. to K. B. third (check)	17. K. to K. square

18. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)	18. K. to Q. square
19. R. takes Q.	19. P. takes R.
20. B. takes R.	

And White ultimately won the game.

GAMES PLAYED BLINDFOLD.

GAME XXXV.

From three games played at the same time.

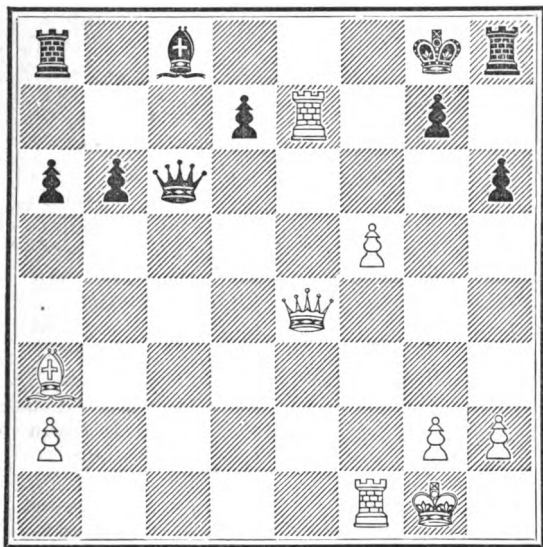
(*Evans's Gambit.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. N——.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. Kt. to B. third	2. Q. Kt. to B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	4. B. takes P.
5. P. to Q. B. third	5. B. to R. fourth
6. P. to Q. fourth	6. P. takes P.
7. Castles	7. P. to K. R. third
8. Q. to Q. Kt. third	8. Q. to K. B. third
9. P. to K. fifth	9. Q. to K. Kt. third
10. P. takes P.	10. K. Kt. to K. second
11. P. to Q. fifth	11. Kt. to Q. square
12. P. to Q. sixth ¹	12. K. Kt. to Q. B. third
13. Q. B. to Q. R. third	13. Q. Kt. to K. third
14. B. takes Kt.	14. K. B. P. takes B. ²
15. P. takes P.	15. B. takes P.
16. Kt. to Q. B. third	16. P. to Q. R. third
17. Q. R. to Q. square	17. Kt. takes P.
18. Kt. takes Kt.	18. B. takes Kt.
19. P. to K. B. fourth	19. B. takes Kt.
20. Q. takes B.	20. Q. to K. B. third
21. Q. to Q. B. fifth	21. Q. to K. B. square
22. Q. R. to Q. sixth	22. Q. to K. B. fourth
23. Q. R. to Q. fifth	23. Q. to K. B. square
24. Q. to Q. R. fifth	24. Q. to K. B. third
25. P. to K. B. fifth ³	25. P. to Q. Kt. third ⁴
26. Q. to K. square	26. P. to K. fourth

27. R. takes K. P. (check)	27. K. to B. second
28. Q. to K. fourth	28. Q. to Q. B. third
29. R. to K. seventh (check)	29. K. to Kt. square

White here announced checkmate in four moves. (See the Diagram.)

BLACK.



WHITE.

White having to play, checkmated in four moves.

¹ White offers a second Pawn, in order to confine entirely Black's game. It is remarkable how vigorously White keeps up the attack, with yet comparatively few pieces in play.

² It would have been stronger to retake either with Q. P. or Q.

³ The following manoeuvres plainly show the superiority of the blindfold player, and his skill in managing the pieces, brought to bear on the attack behind advancing Pawns. We must again refer our readers to Note 4, Game II.

⁴ Evidently the Rook could not be taken, for White would have checked with K. R., and afterwards have captured "Q. P. with Q.," checking.

GAME XXXVI.

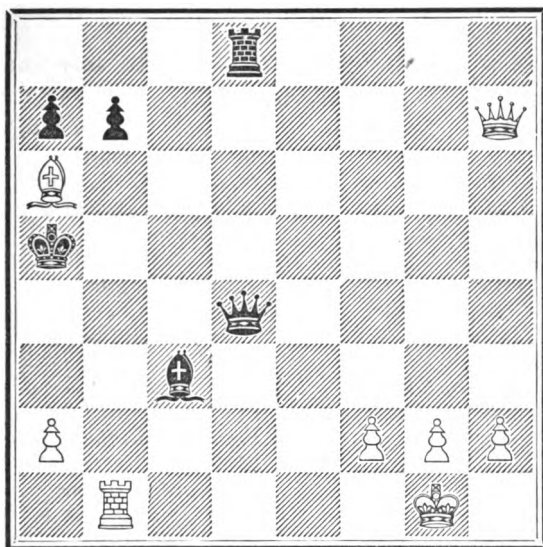
One out of four games, played simultaneously.

(*Same Opening.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. M——.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	4. B. takes P.
5. P. to Q. B. third	5. B. to R. fourth
6. Castles	6. P. to Q. third ¹
7. P. to Q. fourth	7. P. takes P.
8. Q. to Q. Kt. third ²	8. Q. to K. B. third
9. P. to K. fifth	9. P. takes P.
10. R. to K. square	10. K. Kt. to K. second
11. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	11. Q. to K. Kt. third
12. B. takes Kt.	12. Kt. takes B.
13. Kt. takes K. P. ³	13. Q. to Q. Kt. third
14. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)	14. P. to Q. B. third
15. Q. takes B. P. (check)	15. K. to Q. square
16. Kt. takes Q. B. P.	16. Kt. takes Kt.
17. B. takes Kt.	17. Q. to Q. B. fourth
18. P. takes P.	18. Q. to Q. third
19. Q. takes K. Kt. P.	19. B. takes R.
20. Q. takes R. (check)	20. K. to Q. B. second
21. Q. takes R. P. (check)	21. B. to Q. second ⁴
22. B. takes B.	22. Q. takes Q. P.
23. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (dis. check)	23. K. to Q. Kt. third
24. Kt. to Q. B. third	24. B. takes Kt.
25. R. to Q. Kt. square	25. R. to Q. square
26. B. to Q. R. sixth (dis. check)	26. K. to Q. R. fourth

White checkmated in three moves. (See the Diagram.)

BLACK.



WHITE

White having to play, mated in three moves.

¹ The correct move in this position is "Kt. to K. B. third," followed by castling on the next move, should White play 7. "P. to Q. fourth." The defence suggested by Colonel Mead for Black's sixth move, viz., "Kt. to K. second" is very weak on account of White's reply, "Kt. to K. Kt. fifth." See again our Note 1 to Game X.

² This move has been first suggested by Herr G. Waller (*Berlin Schachzeitung* of 1849, p. 124). It is not so strong as the usual move at this stage of the game, viz., "P. takes P.," but in practical play it may be successfully ventured on against inferior opponents. In reply to "Q. to Q. Kt. third," Black can safely answer with "Q. to K. second;" for if White now plays "P. to K. fifth," Black takes P. with P., and if then follows, "R. to K. square," Black will have a good game by playing "Q. B. to Q. second."

³ White could have won a piece by checking with Q. on R. fourth, but he prefers the following combination on account of its beauty.

⁴ If "K. takes B.," White checks on K. fourth, takes B. with Q. on the next move, and wins easily with the united passed Pawn on K's side.

GAME XXXVII.

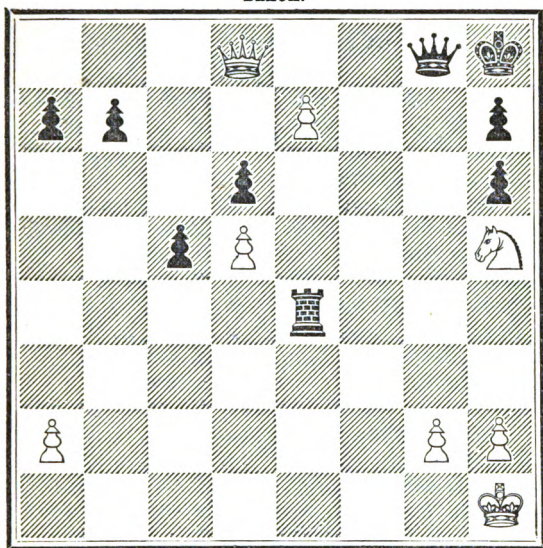
Another one out of four games played at the same time.

(*Same Opening.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. N——.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	4. B. takes P.
5. P. to Q. B. third	5. B. to B. fourth
6. Castles	6. P. to Q. third
7. P. to Q. fourth	7. P. takes P.
8. P. takes P.	8. B. to Kt. third
9. Q. Kt. to B. third	9. Kt. to Q. R. fourth
10. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth ¹	10. Kt. takes B.
11. Q. to Q. R. fourth (check)	11. P. to Q. B. third
12. Q. takes Kt.	12. Kt. to R. third
13. K. to R. square	13. Castles
14. P. to K. B. fourth	14. K. to R. square
15. P. to K. B. fifth ²	15. P. to K. B. third
16. Kt. to K. sixth	16. B. takes Kt.
17. P. takes B.	17. Q. to K. second ³
18. B. takes Kt.	18. P. takes B.
19. R. to K. B. third	19. R. to K. Kt. square
20. Q. R. to K. B. square	20. R. to K. Kt. third
21. Kt. to K. second	21. Q. R. to K. B. square
22. Kt. to B. fourth	22. R. to Kt. fourth
23. P. to Q. fifth	23. P. to Q. B. fourth
24. Q. to Q. B. third	24. B. to Q. square
25. Kt. to K. second	25. Q. to K. Kt. second
26. Kt. to K. Kt. third	26. Q. to Q. B. second ⁴
27. R. takes P.	27. B. takes R.
28. R. takes B.	28. R. takes R.
29. Q. takes R. (check)	29. Q. to K. Kt. second ⁵
30. Q. to Q. eighth (check)	30. Q. to Kt. square
31. P. to K. seventh	31. R. to K. fourth
32. Kt. to K. R. fifth	32. R. takes P. on K. fourth

White here announced checkmate in five moves.

BLACK.



WHITE.

White having to play, checkmated in five moves.

¹ A novel move, introduced by Morphy.

² We have often seen the advance of this Pawn in Morphy's games. To push it on at an early opportunity is one of his favourite stratagems, but at the same time he takes good care to keep the hostile K. B. Pawn from its fourth and fifth squares.

³ "Kt. to Kt. square," to prevent the doubling of the Pawns, would have been stronger.

⁴ Black has scarcely a great choice of moves in this cramped position. One thing, however, is certain, viz. that by the move in the text, he enables White to start forth with a profound combination, which clearly shows the deep-reaching sight of the blindfold player.

⁵ The following variation would also have terminated in White's favour:—

White.

- 30. P. to K. seventh
- 31. Q. to K. sixth (check)
- 32. P. takes Q., etc.

Black.

- 29. K. to Kt. square
- 30. Q. to Q. B. square
- 31. Q. takes Q.

GAME XXXVIII.

One of six games played simultaneously.

(Same Opening.)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. N——.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	4. B. takes Kt. P.
5. P. to Q. B. third	5. B. to Q. R. fourth
6. P. to Q. fourth	6. P. takes P.
7. Castles	7. P. takes P.
8. Q. B. to Q. R. third	8. P. to Q. third
9. Q. to Q. Kt. third	9. Kt. to K. R. third
10. Q. Kt. takes P.	10. B. takes Kt.
11. Q. takes B.	11. Castles
12. Q. R. to Q. square	12. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth
13. P. to K. R. third	13. K. Kt. to K. fourth
14. Kt. takes Kt.	14. Kt. takes Kt.
15. B. to K. second ¹	15. P. to K. B. fourth
16. P. to K. B. fourth	16. Kt. to Q. B. third
17. B. to Q. B. fourth (check)	17. K. to R. square
18. Q. B. to Kt. second	18. Q. to K. second
19. Q. R. to K. square	19. R. to K. B. third
20. P. takes P.	20. Q. to K. B. square
21. Q. R. to K. eighth	21. Q. takes R.
22. Q. takes R.	22. Q. to K. second ²
23. Q. takes Kt. P. (check)	23. Q. takes Q.
24. P. to B. sixth	24. Q. takes Kt. P. (check) ³
25. K. takes Q.	25. B. takes R. P. (check)
26. K. takes B.	26. P. to K. R. fourth
27. R. to K. Kt. square	

And wins.

¹ Better than "B. to Q. Kt. third," to which "B. to K. third" would have been a good reply.

² It is evident that "P. takes Q" would have been answered with immediate checkmate, and that this combination, like the following one, must have been premeditated a good many moves before, by the blindfold player.

[Certainly ;—and then our readers must bear in mind, that he

played five other games at the same time, amongst which the following spirited little one! This astonishing feat, which he so often repeated afterwards, both in the Old and New world, with a phalanx of strong players arrayed against him, would immortalise Morphy's name, even without his brilliant subsequent victories over nearly all the leading players of Europe!—*Trans.*]

³ A desperate effort. He might have played "Q. to B. square," but still with very little chance of recovery. Suppose:—

White.

Black.

25. P. to B. seventh (dis. ch.)

24. Q. to K. B. square

25. Kt. to K. fourth

26. P. takes Kt., and White will maintain his attacking position.

[If Black now plays "P. to K. R. fourth," White answers with "P. to K. sixth (dis. check)" and plays "Q. B. to K. B. sixth" on the next move.—*Trans.*]

GAME XXXIX.

Another one of six games played at the same time, and without seeing the board.

(*K. Kt. Gambit.*)

White. (MORPHY.)

Black. (Mr. X——.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth
3. Kt. to K. B. third
4. Kt. to Q. B. third
5. B. to Q. B. fourth
6. Q. P. takes B.
7. Q. to Q. sixth
8. Q. B. takes P.
9. B. to K. Kt. fifth
10. Castles
11. Q. R. to K. square
12. P. to K. fifth
13. Kt. to Q. fourth
14. P. to K. sixth
15. Kt. takes K. P.
16. R. takes B.

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. takes P.
3. P. to Q. B. third
4. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
5. B. takes Kt.
6. Kt. to K. second
7. Castles
8. Kt. to K. Kt. third
9. Q. to K. square
10. K. to R. square
11. P. to K. B. third
12. P. to K. B. fourth¹
13. P. to K. B. fifth
14. P. takes P.
15. B. takes Kt.
16. Q. to Q. B. square

17. R. takes Kt.	17. P. takes R.
18. Q. takes P.	18. Q. to K. B. fourth
19. R. takes P.	19. Q. takes Q.
20. R. takes R. (check)	20. K. to R. second
21. B. to Kt. eighth (check)	21. K. to R. square
22. B. to Kt. seventh (dis. check)	22. K. to R. second
23. B. takes Q. (check)	23. K. takes B.
24. B. to B. fourth	

And wins.

¹ If "P. takes B.," White wins by taking "P. with Kt." For instance:—

White.

- 13. Kt. takes P.
- 14. R. takes R.
- 15. Q. takes Kt. etc.

Black.

- 12. P. takes B.
- 13. R. takes R. (check)
- 14. P. to K. R. third (best)

NOTES.

A.

Compare the following report of the *Chess Monthly* of March, p. 92.

"From New Orleans we learn that Mr. Morphy, upon his return home, met with an enthusiastic reception from the players of the Crescent City. He lately played, without seeing the boards, at one time two, and at another three games at once, against strong players of the New Orleans club. The rooms were literally crowded on both occasions with interested spectators. Mr. Morphy won all the games, and arrangements were in progress for another exhibition of the same kind in which he was to play four blindfold games at once. The New Orleans club had removed to larger and more convenient quarters and was rapidly increasing in numbers."

See also the report of the *Chess Monthly*, p. 157-158.

"On the evening of Wednesday, March 10th, Mr. Morphy delighted a large audience of New Orleans amateurs by playing four games simultaneously without seeing the boards. Since this occasion he played at one time five and another six blindfold games simultaneously. In the first case he won four and drew one game, and, in the second instance, he came off conqueror over all his antagonists, who were selected from among the best players of the city. These festivals of Chess have drawn, on each occasion, throngs of spectators."

B.

The *New Orleans Delta* gives the following account of the young master's blindfold play:—

"He displayed to a very high degree the boldness and brilliancy of conception, the rapidity of execution and fertility of resource which he usually exhibits with the board before him, and defeated all his antagonists (four of the best players of the club) after some hours' fighting. This severe mental labour seemed in no way to have fatigued him. We have no doubt that with a little practice, Mr. Morphy could easily conduct seven or eight games in the same manner."

C.

The given details are taken from the following report of the July (1858) number of the *Chess Monthly*, p. 222.

"The New Orleans club, through the interest attendant upon Mr. Morphy's play, has grown into one of the largest and most efficient Chess organizations in the country. Besides Mr. Morphy, the club numbers several players who do not compare unfavorably with the strongest Chess athletes of other cities. Among them may be mentioned Mr. Maurian, Mr. Mc Connel, and Mr. Halsey. The Crescent City was, not long since, favored with a visit from Mr. W. W. Montgomery, of Georgia, so well known in our Northern Chess circles as a forcible and elegant player. Mr. Montgomery passed through Mobile on his way to New Orleans, where he won largely of Judge Meek, Mr. Hurtel, and others, his score with the former gentleman being five to two in his favour.

"His score in New Orleans stood as follows:—

Even Games.

Mr. Montgomery	0	Mr. Morphy	4	
"	0	Mr. Maurian	3	Drawn 1.
"	5	Mr. Halsey	3	
"	1	Mr. Mc Connell	0	" 1.

Receiving the Odds of the Pawn and Two Moves.

Mr. Montgomery	1	Mr. Morphy	2

Receiving the Odds of the Knight.

Mr. Montgomery	0	Mr. Morphy	9	Drawn 1.

"After having played the even games and those at the odds of Pawn and Two with Mr. Morphy, the wish was expressed by some of the New Orleans amateurs to witness some contests at the odds of the Knight, to which Mr. Montgomery very kindly consented. It was evident, however, that in many of the battles at these heavy odds Mr. Montgomery played far below his actual strength. Mr. Worrall, an amateur from Mexico, lately played a few games, receiving the

odds of the Knight from Mr. Morphy. The score stood Morphy, 8; Worrall, 7."

As to cross play between Morphy, Staunton, and Worrall, *Frank Leslie's Paper* gives the following sentiments:—

"In several Chess circles the idea seems to be prevalent that the cross play between the above-named masters was to the disadvantage of Morphy. This is a mistake, as facts seem to prove the contrary. Mr. Worrall has played in all forty-five games with Mr. Staunton, of which he lost twenty-three and won twenty-two. Therein is comprised a little match at the odds of a Knight which the Mexican won. With Morphy the Mexican has played fifteen games, of which he won seven and lost eight. If we consider besides, that in so long a series of games Mr. Worrall must have made some progress, the result, if cross play is to be a proof, is certainly in favour of Morphy."

D.

It may be as well to insert in this place the final correspondence between Messrs. Staunton and Morphy, which took place after the Birmingham Meeting, and in which the former definitely declined the proposed match.

Café de la Régence, Paris, October 6, 1858.

Sir,—On my arrival in England, three months since, I renewed the challenge to you personally which the New Orleans Chess Club had given some months previously. You immediately accepted, but demanded a month's delay, in order to prepare yourself for the contest. Subsequently you proposed that the time should be postponed until after the Birmingham Meeting, to which I assented. On the approach of the period you had fixed, I addressed you a communication requesting that the necessary preliminaries might be immediately settled; but you left London without replying to it.

I went to Birmingham for the express purpose of asking you to put a stop to further delay, by fixing a date for the opening of our match; but before the opportunity presented itself you came to me, and, in the presence of Lord Lyttelton, Mr. Avery, and other gentlemen, you stated that your time was much occupied in editing a new edition of Shakespeare, and that you were under heavy bonds to your publishers accordingly. But you reiterated your intention to play me, and said that, if I would consent to a further postponement until the first week in November, you would, within a few days, communicate with me, and fix the exact date. I have not heard further from you, either privately by letter, or through the columns of the *Illustrated London News*.

Permit me to repeat what I have invariably declared in every Chess community I have had the honour of entering—that I am not a professional player; that I never wished to make any skill I possess the means of pecuniary advancement; and that my earnest wish is never to play for any stake but honour. My friends in New Orleans, however, subscribed a certain sum, without any countenance from me; and that sum has been ready for you to meet, a considerable time past. Since my arrival in Paris I have been assured by numerous gentlemen that the value of these stakes can be immediately increased to any amount; but, for myself personally, reputation is the only incentive I recognise.

The matter of Seconds cannot certainly offer any difficulty. I had the pleasure of being received first in London by the St. George's Chess Club—of which you are so distinguished a member—and of those gentlemen I request the honour of appointing my seconds, to whom I give full authority in settling all preliminaries.

I have the honour to remain, Sir,

Your very humble servant,

H. Staunton, Esq.

PAUL C. MORPHY.

London, October 9, 1858.

Sir,—In reply to your letter I have to observe that you must be perfectly conscious that the difficulty in the way of my engaging in a Chess match is one over which I have no control. You were distinctly apprised, in answer to the extraordinary proposal of your friends that I should leave my home, family, and avocations, to proceed to New Orleans for the purpose of playing Chess with you, "that a long and arduous contest, even in London, would be an undertaking too formidable for me to embark in without ample opportunity for the recovery of my old strength in play, together with such arrangements as would prevent the sacrifice of my professional engagements." Upon your unexpected arrival here the same thing was repeated to you, and my acceptance of your challenge was entirely conditional on my being able to gain time for practice.

The experience, however, of some weeks, during which I have laboured unceasingly, to the serious injury of my health, shows that not only is it impracticable for me to save time for that purpose, but that by no means short of giving up a great work on which I am engaged, subjecting the publishers to the loss of thousands, and myself to an action for breach of contract, could I obtain time even for the match itself. Such a sacrifice is, of course, out of all question. A match at chess or cricket may be a very good thing in its way, but none but a madman would for either forfeit his engagements and imperil his professional reputation. Under these circumstances, I waited only the termination of your late struggle to explain that, fettered as I am at this moment, it is impossible for me to undertake any enterprise which would have the effect of withdrawing me from duties I am pledged to fulfil.

The result is not, perhaps, what either you or I desired, as it will occasion disappointment to many; but it is unavoidable, and the less to be regretted, since a contest wherein one of the combatants must fight under disadvantages so manifest as those I should have to contend against, after many years' retirement from practical Chess, with my attention absorbed, and brain overtaxed by more important pursuits, could never be accounted a fair trial of skill. I have the honour to be,

Yours, &c.

H. STAUNTON.

Paul Morphy, Esq.

P.S.—I may add that, although denied the satisfaction of a set encounter with you at this period, I shall have much pleasure if you will again become my guest, in playing you a few games, *sans façon*.

E.

We refer our readers to the following passage from a letter of the late Chess-master Bledow, the originator of the *Schachzeitung*, to Heydebrandt von der Lasa, written January 10th, 1844.

"The long expected and much talked of match* has at last taken place, and, as Kicsieritzky says, has proved Staunton's superiority. Is this as clear to you? It is true of the first eight games he has won seven, but of the next thirteen he has only won four; of the last six games he has lost three and only won one. This does not appear to me a proof of decided superiority, especially if it be true, that St. Amant had, in the beginning, to combat also a nervous fever." In another letter in which Bledow mentions the idea of a general tournament, and proposes as place of meeting Trier, Nov. 12, 1843, he says—"We shall, I hope, meet all of us next year at Trier, and till then the victor in the match of Paris must not keep his head too high—in Trier the crown must be given."

The consciousness of German worth could not be expressed in a simpler and clearer way.

[* Between Messrs. Staunton and St. Amant.—*Trans.*]

CHAPTER VII.

VOYAGE TO, AND ARRIVAL IN ENGLAND.

THE consciousness of great talents and profound studies, and its subsequent practical confirmation owing to astonishing successes, has matured in the young master a proud and well-founded confidence. This high sentiment, nourished by the unabated enthusiasm of his countrymen, naturally produced a desire to see his merit acknowledged by the Chess world at large, and to obtain fresh triumphs over the successful magnates of the Old World. The very distance of the scene of his future combats, gave additional strength to the ardour of his wishes. A voyage across the ocean, in the interest of the noble game, was something so new and romantic, that external impediments insensibly disappeared before so enchanting a prospect, and the road to the arena of Chess-glory upon classical ground, was at last free to our hero. At that time, there was also the fortunate prospect of finding at Birmingham, at the end of June, a number of distinguished European players, assembled at the long-premeditated meeting of the British Association, and thus, his departure was determined on for the beginning of that month.

On the 8th of June, in the morning, PAUL MORPHY made his appearance in New York, in order to embark next day in the steamer *Arabia*, for the Old World (A). Warmer wishes and more sincere hopes expressed on all sides, have probably never accompanied the parting countryman; and even inspiring words from the daily press, drawing a parallel between the young champion and errant knights of yore, followed his voyage across the main (B).

In the mean time, shortly after the departure of the young hero, the news of the postponement of the Birmingham Chess meeting arrived in New York, thus he had a space of two months left to him to try his skill in preparatory combats, ere he could present himself before the Association. The

friendly reception and the ready acknowledgment of his merits by the Old World, were in accordance with his renown, which had for some time resounded on this side the Atlantic (c). True, on his first arrival on English soil, his play was somewhat affected by the fatigues of a long sea voyage, and the unwonted impressions of a strange country. His oft-admired power, however, soon got the upper hand; and strong English players who at first stood their ground firmly, were soon compelled to give way before undoubted superiority.

On Wednesday the 23rd of June, PAUL MORPHY made his appearance in the Cigar Divan, Strand, the well-known Chess abode of the English metropolis, and on the same day he paid a visit to the St. George's Chess Club. There is an anecdote connected with his visit to the Strand and his first meeting STAUNTON, which has appeared in several American papers (D). In the St. George's Club, where his reception was very cordial, he is reported to have expressed his readiness to play with one of the strong English players, a match for stakes from £100 to £1000, according to his opponent's wishes. The next day he visited the newly opened Philidorian Chess Rooms, and rejoiced those present by a splendid specimen of blindfold play (E)*. The next few days our hero did not play any decisive games with great masters, as he was not yet quite recovered from his sea-voyage. Besides it is supposed the veteran Chess grandees wanted to witness his strength with other players, before they engaged themselves to do him battle. In the mean time, consultation games were arranged, in which some of the stronger English players played against each other, having MORPHY alternately on one side.

The first of these games was played in the London Club. In this second celebrated Chess establishment of the metropolis, he was introduced by HERR LÖWENTHAL, and most heartily welcomed by its amiable and highly-cultivated President, Mr. MONGREDIEN, and the Hon. Secretary, Mr. MEDLEY.

* This is a mistake; Morphy did not play blindfold in the Philidorian Chess Rooms, but took part in a game of four, playing with Mr. Mucklow against Messrs. Brien and Falkbeer. The game resulted in favour of the latter parties; but being a mere experiment, was never noticed by any publication.—*Trans.*

GEORGE WALKER, the meritorious Chess author and veteran Chess player was also present, and thus consultation games were easily arranged. Chance paired the players in the first game, in which MORPHY and MONGREDIEN had to contend against MEDLEY and LÖWENTHAL; the game lasted a couple of hours, and finally resulted in a draw, to the satisfaction of both parties. Afterward, a second game was played by WALKER, MORPHY, and GREENAWAY, on one side, *versus* LÖWENTHAL, MONGREDIEN, and MEDLEY, on the other. This contest, though highly interesting, was left unfinished, as it was too late to play it out, neither party having any advantage of position. Two other consultation games, in which he met STAUNTON, were of more interest and more consequence for our hero. His partner was BARNES, whilst his celebrated opponent's partner was ALTER. Both games terminated in the young hero's favour, and gave a good proof of his energetic confidence.

CONSULTATION GAMES.

GAME XL.

(Philidor's defence.)

<i>White.</i> (Messrs. LÖWENTHAL and MEDLEY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Messrs. MORPHY and MONGREDIEN.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. P. to Q. third ¹
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. to K. B. fourth ²
4. B. to Q. B. fourth ³	4. Kt. to Q. B. third
5. P. takes K. P. ⁴	5. Q. P. takes K. P.
6. Q. takes Q. (check)	6. Kt. takes Q.
7. Kt. takes P.	7. P. takes P.
8. Q. B. to Q. second	8. K. B. to Q. third
9. Q. B. to Q. B. third	9. Kt. to K. B. third
10. P. to K. R. third	10. Q. B. to K. third
11. Q. Kt. to Q. second	11. Castles
12. Castles (K. R.)	12. K. Kt. to Q. fourth
13. B. takes Kt.	13. B. takes B.
14. Q. Kt. to Q. B. fourth	14. P. to Q. Kt. fourth ⁵

15. Kt. takes B.	15. P. takes Kt.
16. K. R. to Q. square	16. P. to K. sixth ⁶
17. P. takes P.	17. B. takes K. Kt. P.
18. K. takes B.	18. P. takes Kt.
19. B. takes P.	19. Kt. to Q. B. third
20. B. to Q. fourth ⁷	20. Q. R. to K. square
21. R. to Q. second	21. Q. R. to K. third
22. Q. R. to K. square	22. Q. R. to K. Kt. third(ch.)
23. K. to R. second	23. K. R. to B. sixth
24. R. to K. Kt. second	24. Kt. takes B.
25. P. takes Kt.	25. Q. R. to K. R. third
26. Q. R. to K. seventh	26. K. R. takes P. (check)
27. K. to Kt. square	27. R. to R. eighth (check)
28. K. to B. second	28. R. to K. B. third (check)
29. K. to K. second	29. R. to K. B. second
30. R. to K. eighth (check)	30. R. to K. B. square

Drawn game.

¹ It seems to be Morphy's almost invariable practice to adopt this opening, which owes its name to the great Philidor, by whom it was recommended, whenever he chances to be opposed to players of reputed strength. For this reason it will often occur in the following pages. It is strange, however, that Morphy's opponents have in general abstained from making the most attacking moves, thus giving the second player a chance to make good a defence, which, although not erroneous in itself, yet always leads to a somewhat cramped position, as it necessarily locks up the King's Bishop for a long time.

² "P. takes P." is stronger. The *Counter Gambit* in the Philidorian defence is anything but safe, and should have turned in favour of the White Allies, had they played better on their fifth move.

³ This move is correct. Black dare not take K. P. with B. P., on account of, "Kt. takes K. P." in reply.

⁴ They ought to have played now, "Kt. to K. Kt. fifth."

⁵ A mistake, which loses a Pawn.

⁶ A forced move.

⁷ Had the White Allies, instead of this move, played "B. to K. B. fourth," they would have kept their Pawn, and a better position in the bargain.

GAME XLI.

(Bishop's Gambit.)

White. (Messrs. MORPHY, WALKER, and GREENAWAY.) *Black.* (Messrs. LÖWENTHAL, MONGREDIEN, and MEDLEY.)

1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. P. takes P.
3. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. P. to Q. fourth
4. B. takes P. ¹	4. Kt. to K. B. third
5. Kt. to K. B. third	5. Kt. takes B.
6. P. takes Kt.	6. Q. takes P.
7. Kt. to Q. B. third	7. Q. to K. R. fourth
8. P. to Q. fourth	8. K. B. to Q. third
9. Q. to K. second (check)	9. K. to Q. square
10. Castles	10. P. to K. Kt. fourth
11. Q. to Q. Kt. fifth	11. P. to K. B. fourth
12. Q. to Q. fifth	12. Q. Kt. to B. third
13. K. Kt. to K. fifth	13. R. to K. B. square
14. B. to Q. second	14. Kt. to K. second
15. Q. to Q. B. fourth	15. R. to K. B. third
16. Q. R. to K. square	16. P. to Q. B. third
17. Q. Kt. to Q. R. fourth	17. Q. B. to Q. second
18. Q. Kt. to Q. B. fifth	18. Q. B. to B. square
19. R. to K. B. third	19. P. to K. Kt. fifth
20. R. to Q. Kt. third	20. P. to Q. Kt. third

At this point the game was given up as drawn, by mutual consent of the belligerent parties.

¹ See our Note 1 to Game XVII.

GAME XLII.

(Philidor's Defence.)

White. (Messrs. STAUNTON and ALTER.) *Black.* (Messrs. MORPHY and BARNES.)

1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. P. to Q. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. to K. B. fourth

4. P. takes K. P. ¹	4. K. B. P. takes K. P.
5. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth	5. P. to Q. fourth
6. P. to K. sixth	6. Kt. to K. R. third
7. Q. Kt. to B. third ²	7. P. to Q. B. third
8. K. Kt. takes K. P. ³	8. P. takes Kt.
9. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)	9. P. to K. Kt. third
10. Q. to K. fifth	10. R. to Kt. square
11. B. takes Kt.	11. B. takes B.
12. Q. R. to Q. square *	12. Q. to K. Kt. fourth ⁴
13. Q. to Q. B. seventh	13. B. takes P.
14. Q. takes Q. Kt. P. ⁵	14. P. to K. sixth
15. P. to K. B. third	15. Q. to K. second
16. Q. takes R.	16. K. to B. second
17. Kt. to K. fourth	17. K. B. to K. B. fifth
18. B. to K. second	18. K. to Kt. second
19. Castles	19. Q. to Q. B. second
20. Kt. to Q. B. fifth	20. B. takes R. P. (check)
21. K. to R. square	21. B. to Q. B. square
22. R. to Q. fourth	22. B. to K. Kt. sixth
23. R. to K. fourth ⁶	23. K. to R. square
24. K. R. to Q. square	24. Q. to K. Kt. second
25. R. to K. R. fourth	25. B. takes R.
26. Q. takes Kt.	26. Q. B. to Q. R. third
27. Q. to K. R. second	27. B. takes B.
28. R. to Q. seventh	28. Q. to K. R. third
29. Kt. to K. fourth	29. Q. B. to Q. B. fifth
30. Kt. to K. B. sixth	30. P. to K. seventh
31. R. to K. seventh	31. Q. to Q. B. eighth (check)
32. Q. to Kt. square	32. Q. takes Q. (check)
33. K. takes Q.	33. P. to Q. eighth (Queen, and check)
34. R. takes Q.	34. B. takes R.

And the White allies resigned.

¹ "B. to Q. B. fourth" is a stronger move. See Game XL., and also the author's *Schachpartien* (1857) p. 31.

² There is a better move at this point to keep up the attack. viz., "P. to K. B. third," which was first suggested by Herr Mayet, and thoroughly analysed by Heydebrandt. It may lead to the following result:—

White.

7. P. to K. B. third

8. P. takes P.

9. P. takes P., or even Q. takes P. with a good game.

Black.

7. B. to Q. B. fourth

8. Castles

3 "Kt. takes R. P." is here recommended by the books. Thus:—

White.

8. Kt. takes R. P.

9. Kt. takes K. B.

10. Q. Kt. takes K. P.

11. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth, with the better game.

Black.

8. Q. B. takes P.

9. K. takes Kt. (best)

10. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth

The White allies, however, here deliberately chose to their own detriment, the weaker move. This is another instance of the remarkable fact, that many of Morphy's antagonists, though writers upon Chess themselves, and taught by experience, were compelled to yield to the genius of the young American Champion, only because they were notable, like him, or, perhaps, did not feel inclined, to make use at the decisive moment of their theoretical knowledge of the game!

* [Even now, we believe, "Kt. takes P.," could have won the game. *Trans.*]

4 They could have equally played "Q. to K. second." *Ex. gr.*

White.

13. B. to Q. B. 4th, (or A)

14. Q. takes P.

Black.

12. Q. to K. second

13. B. to K. Kt. second

14. B. takes Kt. (check) &c.

(A.)

13. Kt. takes P.

14. Kt. to B. sixth (check)

13. Q. takes P.

14. K. to B. second, with a good game.

5 "Kt. takes P." at this point might have led to the following variation, by which Black, with three pieces against the Queen, would have obtained a good game:—

White.

14. Kt. takes P.

15. R. to Q. eighth (check)

16. Kt. to Q. sixth (check)

17. Q. takes Q.

Black.

14. Q. to K. second

15. Q. takes R.

16. Q. takes Kt.

17. K. to B. second, &c.

6 "R. to K. Kt. fourth" would have been more to the purpose, yet it would not have saved their game. The position of the White allies is hopeless,* and their actual defeat was realised with true Morprian brilliancy and energy.

* [The German book here says: "of the Black allies (*die schwarze Parthei*)."] From the following, however, it appears, that this was either a misprint, or a *lapsus calami*.—*Trans.*]

GAME XLIII.

(Irregular Opening.)

<i>White.</i> (Messrs. MORPHY and BARNES.)	<i>Black.</i> (Messrs. STAUNTON and OWEN.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to Q. fourth ¹
2. P. takes P.	2. Q. takes P.
3. Kt. to Q. B. third	3. Q. to Q. square
4. P. to Q. fourth	4. Kt. to K. B. third
5. B. to Q. third	5. Kt. to Q. B. third ²
6. Q. B. to K. third	6. P. to K. third
7. Kt. to K. B. third	7. K. B. to Q. third
8. Castles	8. Castles
9. Q. to K. second ³	9. P. to Q. Kt. third
10. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	10. B. to Q. Kt. second
11. Q. Kt. to K. fourth	11. K. B. to K. second
12. Kt. takes Kt. (check)	12. B. takes Kt.
13. Q. to K. fourth	13. P. to K. Kt. third
14. Q. to K. R. fourth	14. B. takes B.
15. Kt. takes B.	15. P. to K. R. fourth ⁴
16. P. to Q. B. third	16. Q. to K. B. third [*]
17. Q. R. to K. square	17. Kt. to K. second
18. P. to K. B. fourth	18. Kt. to K. B. fourth
19. Q. to K. R. third	19. K. R. to K. square
20. Q. R. to K. fifth	20. Q. R. to Q. square
21. K. R. to K. square	21. Kt. to Kt. second
22. P. to K. Kt. fourth	22. P. to Q. B. fourth ⁵
23. B. to K. fourth ⁶	23. B. to Q. R. third
24. P. takes R. P.	24. Kt. takes P.
25. B. to K. B. third	25. P. takes Q. P.
26. B. takes Kt.	26. P. takes B.
27. Q. takes R. P.	27. Q. to Kt. second
28. K. to B. second ⁷	28. Q. to K. B. third
29. Q. to R. fourth	29. B. to Q. sixth ⁸
30. Q. to K. Kt. third	30. B. to K. Kt. third
31. P. to K. B. fifth ⁹	31. B. takes P.
32. Kt. to K. fourth (dis. ch.)	32. Q. to Kt. third
33. Kt. to B. sixth (check)	33. K. to B. square
34. Q. takes Q.	34. B. takes Q. ¹⁰

35. Kt. takes R.	35. K. takes Kt.
36. P. to K. R. fourth	36. P. to Q. sixth
37. K. to K. third	37. K. to K. second
38. K. to K. second	38. R. to Q. third ¹¹
39. R. to K. Kt. fifth ¹²	39. K. to B. third
40. R. to K. B. square (ch.)	40. B. to K. B. fourth
41. R. to K. Kt. eighth	41. R. to Q. fourth
42. P. to K. R. fifth	42. R. to K. fourth
43. R. to K. B. second	43. R. to K. fifth
44. R. to K. R. second	44. B. to K. R. second
45. R. to K. R. eighth	45. K. to Kt. second
46. R. to Q. R. eighth	46. K. to K. R. third ¹³
47. R. takes P.	47. R. to K. B. fifth
48. R. to Q. Kt. seventh	48. P. to K. fourth
49. R. takes Q. Kt. P. (ch.)	49. P. to K. B. third
50. P. to Q. R. fourth	50. P. to K. fifth
51. R. to K. sixth	51. R. to K. B. sixth
52. P. to Q. R. fifth	

And wins.

¹ It was certainly an act of unreasonable temerity on the part of the Black Allies, to choose an opening like this, the intrinsic weakness of which will be seen by its result, against so powerful an opponent. Taken from this point of view, the present game will show that self-conceit, however founded on facts, cannot stand against eminent and accomplished skill; nor dare it commit the slightest error with impunity.

[This critical remark, which we have literally translated from the German, appears to us rather strong language with regard to a mere experiment. It is a well-known fact, that the English champion at the time of Morphy's arrival was out of practice. Why, therefore, in the name of common sense, should he not be entitled like others, to have an opening of his own choice, which somewhat deviates from the regular book-moves? "Self-conceit," or "arrogance" (*Hochmuth*) are certainly the last terms which we, for our part, should like to apply to the opening of a game of Chess.—*Trans.*]

² It is obvious that the Pawn could not be taken.

³ The commencement of a deep combination, which terminates in White's favour.

⁴ Now White has obtained a decisive advantage of position, which he drives home with irresistible energy.

* [To prevent the White Allies from playing at this moment "P. to K. B. fourth," which could be answered with "Kt. takes P."—*Trans.*]

⁵ If "R. to Q. fourth," Black's game would become still more cramped.

⁶ The correct move. If "P. takes Q. B. P.," Black could reply to it with "Q. takes P.," threatening to play, eventually, "P. to K. B. third."

⁷ Another deep and masterly manœuvre, which finally wins the exchange. At this point the White Allies are reaping the fruits of their profound combinations, which began on the ninth move, and the reward of their pains is falling due. At that early part of the game they compelled their adversaries step by step to advance the Pawns on King's side, thus enabling White's pieces to enter their game. Black's confined position, however, and all their subsequent embarrassments, can be traced back to their first move, of which they are but the natural consequences. It is only just to observe, that up to this point the attack has been conducted with remarkable energy on the part of the White Allies; and that the real decision of the contest rested on their following well-considered sacrifice of a Pawn, on the thirty-first move.

⁸ This defence would be sound, but for the following sacrifice, which shows the superiority of the American master.

⁹ See our preceding notes.

¹⁰ "P. takes Q." would, perhaps, have been stronger.

¹¹ This fruitless attempt on the part of the Black Confederates to make their united Pawns in the centre tell, proves fatal. They ought to have played "R. to K. R. square," which might have afforded them a chance of drawing the game.

¹² Thus the advance of the K. B. P. is put a stop to for ever, and all the efforts of Black are at once frustrated.

¹³ "R. to Q. R. fifth" would have been of no use, as White threatened first of all to check with the Pawn on K. R. sixth.

[If Black then plays "K. to B. third," White wins the Bishop by playing "R. to K. R. eighth;" if "K. to Kt. third," White plays also "R. to K. R. eighth," followed eventually, by "K. takes K. P." —*Trans.*]

NOTES.

A.

The American *Chess Monthly* of July, 1858, gives the following description of his voyage:—

"Mr. Morphy reached New York on the morning of June 8th, and left the next day in the *Arabia* for Liverpool, to be present at the Birmingham festival. After the close of the meeting of the British Association he will proceed to London, where he will remain several weeks, for the purpose, if it be agreeable to Mr. Staunton, of contesting a grand match with the distinguished English player, in accord-

ance with the terms of the challenge of the New Orleans Club. As the chief obstacle to the acceptance of the challenge was the great distance of New Orleans from England, it is hoped that every impediment will be removed by Mr. Morphy's presence in London. From London, Mr. Morphy goes to Paris, where he will probably meet Mr. Harrwitz, Mr. de Rivière, and other players of the *Régence*. It is possible that, after a sojourn of a month or two in the French capital, the American player will find time to pass a week or more in Berlin, in order to encounter Lange, Meyet and Anderssen. Mr. Morphy expects to reach New York, on his way home, sometime in November. It is hardly necessary to say that the heartiest hopes and warmest wishes of the entire American Chess community, accompany our young knight-errant. Nor is the desire for his success confined alone to Chess-players; it is felt by all those Americans who delight in a generous rivalry with our mother country or the Old World in the race of mind—in the arts and sciences of peace."

With it may be compared the following notice in *Frank Leslie's Illustrated News*, July 19th:—

"Paul Morphy arrived here on Tuesday the 8th instant, and left for Europe on the following day. He goes to meet the Chess-players in the Old World at the Birmingham Chess meeting, to convene about the 22nd instant. During his brief stay here, he played two games, one with Mr. Jullien, at the Knight odds, and one with Mr. Smith, of the Athenæum Club, Philadelphia, both of which he won easily. Mr. Morphy intends being abroad some four months, during which time he will visit England, France, and possibly Germany. Every Chess-player throughout Europe and America, will watch with interest, the result of Mr. Morphy's play."

B.

The Boston weekly paper, the *American Union*, also speaks of Morphy's departure to Europe in an article of June the 19th, saying, that the Chess champion of America, and co-editor of the *Chess Monthly*, had departed for Europe, and that no doubt, at the Chess Association in Birmingham, he will find masters enough of high repute to prove his talent and to gather new laurels, wishing him, at the same time, a good passage, a happy return, health and success.

Frank Leslie's New York Illustrated News, October 2, 1858, gives evidence of the enthusiastic feeling and confident strain in which the American Chess-press speaks. They compare Morphy with Paulo Boi, Leonardo da Cutri, and Labourdonnais, putting, however, the former above these three heroes, and, in fact, far above all other players that ever existed, stating that the Chess superiority of America will be clearly proved, once and for ever, by the victories of Paul Morphy.

On the whole, however, there is no doubt that sometimes very exaggerated opinions were pronounced by one or the other of our Transatlantic friends, which would scarcely have been endorsed by the young master himself.

Thus, to quote only one instance, the *American Courier*, immediately after Morphy's departure, predicted with the utmost confidence, approaching to certainty, Staunton's, Anderssen's, and all the great masters' complete defeat by their youthful countryman's prowess, a prophecy which, although not warranted by Morphy's previous achievements, became almost verified by after events.

C.

Staunton announces in the *Illustrated London News*, the arrival of Morphy in the following words:—

"The communication addressed to this gentleman announcing the postponement of the Chess Association Meeting from June 21st to August 24th having miscarried, he unexpectedly made his appearance in Birmingham on Monday, prepared to do battle *à l'outrance* for the honor of the stars and stripes. Fortunately his intention was to make some considerable stay in Europe; he has therefore consented to take part in the gathering of August, which will probably be one of the most brilliant Chess assemblages known."

The *Era* contains the following:—

"We have great pleasure in announcing that Mr. Morphy has arrived in London, and has met with a most enthusiastic reception from the members of the St. George's Chess Club, where he paid a visit last Wednesday, and played several excellent games. The prompt visit of this great player to England, betokens his great anxiety to give the players of Europe an opportunity of encountering him. Mr. Morphy has also visited the Divan, Strand, and played some games with Mr. Boden. We understand that he will regularly visit the St. Georges' in the afternoon, and play there with the members. His powers as a Chess player have not, in any degree been exaggerated. The quickness with which he forms, and carries out his combinations is truly surprising. He possesses, also, another important quality—that of perfect coolness and self-possession. We shall shortly be able to lay before our readers some of his games."

In a similar sense, Herr Löwenthal expressed himself in a letter addressed to the editor of the *American Chess Monthly*, saying:—

"We were all surprised and gratified at Mr. Morphy's sudden appearance among us, and trust that the reception he has received will induce him to make a long stay with us. He has already visited the St. George's Club, and broken a lance with some of its members, and from the skilful style in which he plays, bids fair to add to the laurels he has so deservedly won in his native land."

The *Schachzeitung* of July, 1858, p. 288, says, "The rumour that Mr. Morphy would visit the meeting at Birmingham has been realized. Ignoring the postponement, the young Transatlantic master has undertaken the voyage too soon, and already, in the middle of June, he presented himself in London. It is said that he will remain several months in Europe, and that probably he will also visit Germany."

Thus, sooner than we expected our wishes have been fulfilled, and rejoicing in the name of all his friends, at the news, we repeat, that the worthy guest will always be welcome on German soil, whenever he may choose to come."

These words were received in a kindly spirit by the editor of the *American Chess Monthly*, and answered with the following paragraph:—

"The last Berlin *Schachzeitung* chronicles the arrival of our distinguished countryman in Great Britain, and expresses the earnest hope that he will meet with a hearty welcome. Nothing would be more gratifying to the Chess-world at large, than to see Mr. Morphy, after contesting with the players of England, doing battle with the great Prussian masters, Lange, Anderssen, and Mayet."

D.

The anecdote in question, is one of the many fabrications about Morphy's sojourn in the Old World, published by several American papers; and, owing to the so-called "correspondents" having no connection whatever with Chess circles, being reduced to invention. We shall several times meet with these *niaiseries de la presse*, especially as regards Germany. The above, which appeared at first in the *New York Times*, as a direct communication from a London correspondent, and afterwards circulated through a great many of the American papers, runs as follows:—

"Mr. Morphy, it is said, soon after his arrival went to the Cigar Divan, and played a game of Chess with the veteran Löwe, which he soon won easily. Thereupon he turned round to Staunton, who had just advanced to the table, and asked that Richard Cœur de Lion of the noble game, to play. Staunton directly accepted the invitation, and having in about twenty minutes nearly cleared the board of his adversary's pieces, seemed disposed contemptuously to leave the table, when the call of 'check' kept him to his seat; and, after having undergone several checks, he was finally mated. It is difficult to imagine the astonishment of the English hero and the spectators. 'May I ask your name, sir?' said Staunton. 'Why not,' answered his youthful opponent, 'my name is Morphy.' 'Ah! then you come from America?' 'Indeed, I do.' 'O, I am very sorry that I do not feel better disposed for play, at present; at least, I could not play a second game to night.' With these words, Mr. Staunton departed. This event has created no small sensation in the Chess world, and the interest taken in it was as great as that produced in seafaring circles, by the triumph of the *Victoria*. Mr. Morphy has now arranged a match with Anderssen, the Hungarian (! probably Herr Löwenthal), and the whole Chess-playing population of England will soon be found engaged in heavy betting."*

* [It is well-known that Mr. Staunton has not been for years in the Cigar Divan.—*Trans.*]

E.

As to the Chess places in London, see the following report from the pen of Herr Falkbeer, in the *Schachzeitung* of August, 1858, p. 335 :—

“In proportion with the advancement of the game, is also the increase in the number of places devoted to the service of our noble game. In the first line, are the London Chess Club, City, Cornhill; and the St. George’s Club, King Street, St. James’. Several smaller Clubs in Hackney, City Road, &c., ought to be mentioned. The greatest attraction, however, for foreigners, is in Ries’s Cigar Divan, Strand; a splendid establishment, which is regularly visited by some of the greatest Chess celebrities. Recently, in a very favourable position at the West End, in Rathbone Place, Oxford Street, another establishment has been opened, Mr. Starie’s Chess Rooms, which soon became a favourite resort of many of the best players. These rooms have filled a gap which was sensibly felt after the closing of Kling’s Chess Rooms. A sort of tournament is at present played there, in which Messrs. Brien, Campbell, Falkbeer, Zytogorski, Healey, Kenny, and others participate. As to the rest, Morphy’s presence in London is the all-absorbing topic of the Chess world, and detracts even from the interest of the meeting at Birmingham. Mr. Morphy is a very interesting person; young, talented, modest, amiable, at the Chess-board full of confidence, with a reputation, such as at his age but few Chess players could boast of.”

CHAPTER VIII.

VICTORIES IN ENGLAND.

It was only for a short time that an illusion prevailed, that the transatlantic master would succumb to the leading players of the mother-country. He soon regained his usual powers and proved his real strength by the most splendid victories.(A)

Though Mr. BARNES, one of the strongest members of the St. George's Chess Club, kept his ground against him in the beginning, each having won four games, yet when MORPHY recovered the consciousness of his superiority, his confidence returned with it. "I can beat that man, and I shall beat him," he exclaimed, and finally he won nineteen games to his opponent's seven.

Similar results he obtained with other strong players, to some of whom he even gave odds, and though the English press had indulged in sweet dreams of anticipated success of native players, it was now obliged to report from day to day more astonishing feats of the young hero.*

His personal merits and noble views elevated him still higher in public estimation, so that words seemed to be wanting to express the general enthusiasm. That amiable and courteous way of behaving, always friendly, polite, and not giving the preference to any exclusive circle; that chivalrous sentiment which bravely accepts all conditions which his opponent chooses to put, and with generous pride refuses to

* [The author's enthusiasm has carried him a little too far in this respect, for as far as we know, the majority of the English press has always done Mr. Morphy full justice, and although as a matter of course, they would not allow the leading English players to be condemned without a trial, yet they never made any positive assertion, nor did they anticipate the American's defeat. So much for the press. As for rumours or private speculations in Chess circles, the case is different. There, sanguine hopes may have been expressed, and large wagers offered; but whether or not such has been the case, we cannot tell from personal knowledge.—*Trans.*]

accept a sum offered as indemnification in favour of the general interest ; all these points tended to elicit a general sympathy in a capital which is divided into so many coteries.(B)

Thus he not only visited the St. George's, but also the London Club ; he was to be seen in the Cigar Divan, and at the Philidorian Chess Rooms ; when some party observation was made in his presence, he never expressed an opinion, and eluded all questions offensive to national or party spirit. To express it in a few words, he possessed all the qualities of a champion of the noble game, and exercised an influence upon the masses, the more powerful, the more the victories over the, till then, acknowledged Chess celebrities elevated him.

It is true he could not, as yet, realise his ardent desire of meeting STAUNTON in the arena, as the latter, although he had accepted his challenge had asked for a delay, but the progressing victory over LÖWENTHAL, who in the last tournament at Manchester had gained the English championship,* and other victories, over acknowledged Chess masters, made the general belief in his invincibility from day to day, stronger.

Neither the combinations, replete with genius, of a BIRD, who lost ten games out of eleven, nor the highly theoretic skill of a BODEN, who only won one game out of six, nor the solid play of an "ALTER" or a LÖWE, of which the former only won one game in five, the latter not one game in six, could stand against the invincible champion of the New world. HAMPTON, KIPPING, MEDLEY, and MONGREDIEN, strong players of considerable reputation could only enumerate defeats, and all his opponents, who took odds, could not, in spite of them, score a single game.

* [The German book says, "The English Chess sceptre." However, we must leave it to the English Chess public to decide, whether the little one-game tournament at Manchester of 1857, in which comparatively but few of the strong English Chess players took part, can be considered a fair test of superiority.—*Trans.*]

GAMES PLAYED WITH MR. BARNES.

GAME XLIV.

*(Ruy Lopez.)**White.* (MR. BARNES.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
4. P. to Q. fourth
5. P. to K. fifth¹
6. Castles
7. B. to Q. R. fourth
8. B. takes Kt.
9. Kt. takes P.
10. Q. Kt. to B. third²
11. B. to K. third
12. P. takes P.
13. Q. to K. second
14. K. to R. square
15. Q. R. to Q. square
16. P. to K. B. fourth
17. K. Kt. to K. B. third
18. B. takes Kt.
19. Q. Kt. to K. fourth
20. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth
21. Q. to Q. B. fourth (ch.)
22. Kt. to K. B. seventh (ch.)
23. Q. Kt. to K. fifth
24. Kt. takes B.
25. Kt. to K. fifth
26. Q. to K. fourth (check)
27. Q. takes Q.
28. P. to K. Kt. fourth⁴
29. P. to K. B. fifth
30. Kt. to Kt. sixth
31. R. to Q. eighth
32. P. takes R. (check)
33. R. to Q. seventh
34. K. R. to B. seventh

Black. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. Kt. to K. B. third
4. P. takes P.
5. K. Kt. to K. fifth
6. P. to Q. R. third
7. K. Kt. to Q. B. fourth
8. Q. P. takes B.
9. B. to K. second
10. Castles
11. P. to K. B. third³
12. R. takes P.
13. R. to K. Kt. third
14. K. B. to Q. third
15. Q. to K. R. fifth
16. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
17. Q. to K. R. fourth
18. B. takes B.
19. B. to Q. Kt. third
20. P. to K. R. third
21. K. to R. square
22. K. to R. second
23. R. to K. B. third
24. Q. takes Kt.
25. Q. to K. third
26. Q. to K. B. fourth
27. R. takes Q.
28. R. to K. B. third
29. Q. R. to K. square⁵
30. R. to K. seventh
31. R. takes Kt.
32. K. takes P.
33. R. takes B. P.
34. B. to Q. fifth⁶

35. R. takes Q. B. P. ⁷	35. R. takes Kt. P.
36. R. takes Q. Kt. P.	36. R. takes Q. R. P.
37. P. to K. R. fourth	37. P. to Q. R. fourth
38. P. to R. fifth (check)	38. K. to Kt. fourth
39. R. takes Kt. P. (check)	39. K. to R. fifth
40. Q. R. to K. seventh	40. P. to Q. R. fifth

And wins.

¹ Castling at once is stronger. Black cannot then take K. P. with Kt., on account of White's reply "R. to K. square." See the author's *Lehrbuch*, § 289, and his *Schachpartien*, No. 20.

² Again we should have preferred "P. to K. B. fourth."

³ With this move, Black turns the attack in his favour.

⁴ The advance of this Pawn, and that of the Bishop's Pawn on the following move, is premature, as it weakens White's position, laying open the King's side.

⁵ The following end game, in which Rook and Bishop on one side, are contending against both Rooks on the other, will prove interesting and instructive. The American player, who is exceedingly well versed in these terminations, does not shrink from giving up the Rook for Knight and Pawn, on account of White's endangered position, which we pointed out, and commented upon, in our preceding Note. Black's moves at this stage of the game, are all preparatory to the ensuing sacrifice.

⁶ A spirited and apparently premeditated move.

⁷ White here underrates the strength of Black's following manoeuvres.

GAME XLV.

Between the same Opponents.

(Irregular Opening.)

White. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to Q. fourth
3. B. to Q. third
4. Q. B. to K. third ²
5. Kt. to Q. B. third
6. Kt. takes P.³
7. Kt. to K. R. third
8. Q. to K. R. fifth (ch.) ⁴

Black. (MR. BARNES.)

1. P. to K. B. third ¹
2. P. to K. third
3. K. Kt. to K. second
4. P. to Q. fourth
5. P. takes P.
6. Kt. to Q. fourth
7. K. B. to K. second
8. P. to K. Kt. third

9. Q. to R. sixth	9. B. to B. square
10. Q. to R. fourth	10. B. to K. Kt. second
11. Castles	11. Castles
12. P. to Q. B. fourth ⁵	12. Kt. takes B.
13. P. takes Kt.	13. P. to K. B. fourth
14. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth ⁶	14. P. to K. R. third
15. Q. Kt. to K. B. third	15. P. to K. fourth *
16. Q. takes Q.	16. R. takes Q.
17. B. to Q. B. second ⁷	17. P. takes P.
18. P. takes P.	18. B. takes P. (check)
19. Kt. takes B.	19. R. takes Kt.
20. K. R. to K. square	20. K. to B. second
21. P. to Q. B. fifth	21. B. to K. third
22. Q. R. to Q. square	22. Kt. to Q. B. third
23. R. takes R.	23. Kt. takes R.
24. B. to Q. R. fourth	24. P. to K. Kt. fourth
25. R. to Q. square	25. R. to Q. square
26. P. to Q. R. third	26. P. to K. B. fifth
27. Kt. to B. second	27. Kt. to K. seventh (check)
28. K. to B. square	28. R. takes R. (check)
29. B. takes R.	29. Kt. to Q. fifth
30. K. to K. square	30. K. to B. third
31. K. to Q. second	31. Kt. to Q. Kt. sixth (ch.)
32. B. takes Kt.	32. B. takes B. ⁸
33. Kt. to Kt. fourth (check)	33. K. to Kt. third
34. P. to K. Kt. third	34. P. to K. R. fourth
35. Kt. to B. second	35. K. to B. fifth ⁹
36. K. to Q. B. third	36. B. to Q. fourth
37. K. to Q. fourth	37. P. to Q. B. third
38. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	38. B. to K. Kt. seventh
39. P. takes P.	39. K. takes P.
40. P. to Q. R. fourth	40. B. to K. B. eighth ¹⁰
41. Kt. to K. fourth	41. P. to K. R. fifth
42. Kt. to Q. second	42. B. to K. seventh
43. Kt. to K. fourth	43. P. to K. Kt. fifth
44. Kt. to K. B. second	44. K. to B. sixth
45. Kt. to K. fourth ¹¹	45. B. to K. B. eighth
46. K. to K. fifth	46. B. to Q. sixth
47. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth (check)	47. K. to Kt. seventh
48. K. to Q. sixth	48. K. takes P.

49. K. to Q. B. seventh

49. K. to Kt. sixth

50. K. takes P.

50. P. to K. R. sixth

And wins.

¹ The irregular move, which the second player here chose, may be attributed to his consciousness of his opponent's superior knowledge of the openings. Thrown, therefore, upon his own resources, the youthful master shows, in the present game, not only the high qualities, but also the petty deficiencies of his style of play. We must not forget, however, that this game was one of the earliest he played after his arrival in England, still under the pressure of his first indisposition, and that many an error, which otherwise might have been avoided, can be explained by that. Nor is it unfair to insinuate, that in subsequent games, the young American would soon have discovered the correct mode of play, had he had an opportunity of doing so, thus forcing his adversary to forbear an irregular opening, of which, in fact, no other specimen is extant. On the other side, however, we must admit, that this game has been played throughout with remarkable skill on the part of Mr. Barnes, who vigorously kept up the advantage of position, which he obtained in the middle of the game.

² This mode of play is peculiar to Morphy, who, in close games, systematically places the Bishop behind the centre Pawn. It strikes us, however, that in this extraordinary opening, close though it may be, Morphy ought to have deviated from his sound and usual practice. We shall see, at a later part of the game, that the Queen's Bishop is not well placed on King's third; for, being compelled on the twelfth move, to submit to the exchange of that piece for the Knight, the Pawn, which is brought in its stead, becomes weak and indefensible. For this reason we think, that either "Kt. to K. B. third," or "P. to Q. B. fourth," on the fourth move, would have been more advisable. We have here, moreover, one of those few cases, where the preference which is given to the attack with the Pieces instead of the pawns, proves detrimental, the more so, as it occurs in a game where an equal and judicious partition of both ways of attack is the thing which is most required. On the whole, however, it is pretty safe to place the Bishop behind the centre Pawns in close games; nay, it requires a good deal of theoretical knowledge, and we may venture to remark, that in the case of Morphy, it is founded on deep study bestowed on modern Chess works, amongst which, perhaps, are Major Jaenisch's *Analyse nouvelle du jeu des Echecs*, and the author's (Herr Lange's) *Kritik der Eroeffnungen*, Chapter IV. We may apply this observation to other openings of Morphy's, and we believe it is but just to remark, that these profound studies have contributed, in no small degree, to his recent victories over his antagonists, none of whom, we should think, can boast of an equal knowledge of modern discoveries.

³ "B. takes P." would have been stronger. It is true, that Black could have replied to it with "P. to K. B. fourth;" but then White could have retreated the Bishop to B. third, and obtained a good game by playing, afterwards, either "Kt. to K. second," or "Q. to Q. second."

⁴ Premature. We should have preferred either castling, or "B. to Q. second," followed by "P. to Q. B. fourth."

⁵ White, it seems, here underrates the disadvantage arising from the Pawn on King's third being isolated; and, perhaps, does not give his opponent credit for the energy with which he brings his pieces to bear on that weak point. The move 12, "P. to Q. B. fourth," not only leaves the King's Bishop unprotected, but, still more, renders the Queen's Pawn weak, which, as we have seen, is but precariously supported by the King's Pawn, and might otherwise have been protected by "P. to Q. B. third." For all that, however, the game could have been saved, had not the Champion (in accordance with his usual style) insisted upon maintaining the attack on the 14th move. There he ought to have changed the Queens and then retreated the Q. Kt. to K. B. second.

⁶ See our last Note.

* [This, we believe, is the turning point of the game. White, it seems, here expected "P. to K. Kt. fourth," in which case he could have given up the Knight for two Pawns, with a good attack. —*Trans.*]

⁷ Now the loss of a Pawn is unavoidable. Black, from this moment, has got the attack, and keeps it up with remarkable spirit.

⁸ We may here lay it down as a rule, founded on practice, that in end games, with several Pawns on both sides of the board, a Bishop generally proves more useful than a Knight. (See our Note 4 to Game VIII). Black, it seems, is fully aware of this fact, and very properly hastens to avail himself of the opportunity thus afforded him of changing the pieces.

⁹ Masterly played throughout.

¹⁰ This move clearly shows the advantage of a Bishop in end games, commanding, from any square of the board, two diverging diagonals.

¹¹ Seeing these repeated moves of the Knight, one should almost miss the usual energy of our hero; we therefore refer our readers to Note 1 of this Game.

GAME XLVI.

Between the same Opponents.

(Philidorian Defence.)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. BARNES.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. P. to Q. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. takes P.
4. B. to Q. B. fourth	4. B. to K. second ¹
5. P. to Q. B. third	5. P. to Q. sixth ²
6. Q. to Q. Kt. third	6. B. to K. third
7. B. takes B.	7. P. takes B.
8. Q. takes Q. Kt. P.	8. Q. Kt. to Q. second
9. Q. to Q. Kt. fifth	9. Kt. to K. B. third
10. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth	10. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square
11. Q. to Q. R. fourth	11. Castles
12. Kt. takes K. P.	12. Q. Kt. to Q. B. fourth
13. Kt. takes Kt.	13. P. takes Kt.
14. Q. to Q. B. fourth (ch.)	14. K. to R. square
15. Castles	15. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth
16. P. to K. B. fourth	16. P. to Q. seventh
17. B. takes P.	17. Q. R. takes P.
18. P. to K. R. third	18. R. takes B.
19. Kt. takes R.	19. Kt. to K. sixth
20. Q. to K. second	20. Kt. takes R.
21. R. takes Kt.	21. Q. to Q. second ³
22. Kt. to Q. B. fourth	22. Q. to Q. Kt. fourth
23. P. to K. fifth	23. B. to K. R. fifth
24. P. to K. B. fifth	24. B. to K. second
25. Q. to K. Kt. fourth	25. Q. to Q. second
26. R. to Q. square ⁴	26. Q. takes P.
27. Q. takes Q.	27. R. takes Q.
28. R. to Q. seventh	28. B. to B. square
29. P. to K. sixth	

And wins.

¹ "Kt. to K. B. third" would be the correct move.² Had he taken the Pawn, White could have advantageously played either "Q. to Q. fifth," or to "Q. Kt. third."³ Black has now so far retrieved his game, that he is only one

Pawn behind, but still the first player has obtained a decided advantage, having established his Pawns in the middle of the board.

⁴ A well-considered move, by which White frees the onward march of the passed King's Pawn.

GAME XLVII.

Between the same Opponents.

(*Philidorian Defence.*)

<i>White.</i> (MR. BARNES.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. P. to Q. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. to K. B. fourth
4. P. takes K. P.	4. B. P. takes K. P.
5. Kt. to Kt. fifth	5. P. to Q. fourth
6. P. to K. sixth	6. B. to Q. B. fourth ¹
7. Kt. to K. B. seventh ²	7. Q. to K. B. third
8. Q. B. to K. third	8. P. to Q. fifth
9. B. to K. Kt. fifth	9. Q. to K. B. fourth
10. Kt. takes R.	10. Q. takes B.
11. B. to Q. B. fourth	11. Q. Kt. to B. third
12. Kt. to K. B. seventh ³	12. Q. takes Kt. P.
13. R. to B. square	13. Kt. to K. B. third
14. P. to K. B. third ⁴	14. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth
15. Kt. to Q. R. third	15. Q. B. takes P. ⁵
16. B. takes B.	16. Kt. to Q. sixth (check)
17. Q. takes Kt. ⁶	17. P. takes Q.
18. Castles	18. B. takes Kt.
19. B. to Q. Kt. third	19. P. to Q. seventh (check)
20. K. to Kt. square	20. B. to Q. B. fourth
21. Kt. to K. fifth	21. K. to B. square ⁷
22. Kt. to Q. third	22. R. to K. square
23. Kt. takes B.	23. Q. takes R.

And wins.

¹ "K. Kt. to R. third" is the usual and better move at this point.
 "B. to Q. B. fourth" is premature, for White can now take K. P. with Kt., and if Black retakes, check with Q. on K. R. fifth; if,

however, Black retreats the Bishop to Q. Kt. third, White can play first of all "Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth."

² See our preceding Note.

³ We are at a loss to understand why he does not protect the Kt.'s P. at this point, by castling or otherwise.

⁴ The decisive error which weakens the left wing and lays it open to the attacks of the Black Queen.

⁵ A very brilliant manoeuvre.

⁶ If "P. takes Kt.," Black mates in two moves. See Note 4.

⁷ Black now hastens to strike the mortal blow.

GAME XLVIII.

Between the same Opponents.

(*K. B. Opening.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (MR. BARNES.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. B. to Q. B. fourth	2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. Kt. to K. B. third	3. Kt. takes P.
4. Kt. to Q. B. third	4. Kt. takes Kt. ¹
5. Q. P. takes Kt.	5. P. to K. B. third
6. Castles	6. Kt. to Q. B. third
7. Kt. to K. R. fourth ²	7. Q. to K. second
8. Kt. to K. B. fifth	8. Q. to Q. B. fourth
9. B. to Q. Kt. third	9. P. to Q. fourth
10. B. to K. third	10. Q. to Q. R. fourth
11. Kt. to K. R. fourth	11. Q. B. to K. third
12. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)	12. P. to K. third
13. Kt. takes P.	13. B. to K. B. second
14. Q. to K. R. fourth ³	14. B. takes Kt.
15. Q. takes B. P.	15. K. R. to Kt. square
16. Q. R. to Q. square	16. B. to K. second
17. Q. to K. sixth	17. Q. B. to K. B. second
18. Q. to K. R. third	18. Kt. to Q. square ⁴
19. P. to K. B. fourth	19. P. to K. fifth
20. R. takes P.	20. B. takes R.
21. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)	21. K. to B. square
22. B. takes B.	22. R. to K. Kt. second
23. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	23. Q. to Q. R. third

24. P. to K. B. fifth ⁵	24. Kt. to K. B. second
25. P. to K. B. sixth	25. B. takes P.
26. P. to Q. Kt. fifth	26. Q. to Q. third
27. B. takes Kt. ⁶	27. P. to Q. Kt. third
28. Q. B. to K. R. sixth	28. K. to K. second
29. B. takes R.	29. B. takes B.
30. B. to Q. Kt. third	30. R. to K. B. square
31. R. to B. seventh (check)	31. R. takes R.
32. Q. takes R. (check)	32. K. to Q. square
33. Q. takes B.	33. Q. to Q. eighth (check)
34. K. to B. second *	34. Q. to Q. seventh (check)
35. K. to Kt. third	35. P. to K. sixth
36. Q. to B. sixth (check)	36. K. to Q. B. square
37. B. to K. sixth (check)	37. K. to Kt. second
38. Q. to K. B. third (check)	

And wins.

¹ See Note 2 to Game IX.

² A masterly move.

³ This attack, though seemingly premature, appears to be a very deep combination. White gives up the Knight for two Pawns, in order to prevent his adversary from freeing his pieces by castling on Queen's side. Therefore, had Black in answer to "Q. to R. fifth (check)," interposed the Bishop, White for the same reason, would have played "Q. to K. Kt. fourth."

⁴ Instead of this move, the object of which seems to be to make room for the Q. B. P., in order to protect once more the Q. P., the second player ought to have played "Q. R. to Q. square." True, he would have lost the privilege of castling by it; but still his game would not have been so cramped. White by the following manœuvres, defeats his opponent's efforts, giving at the same time a brilliant example of the accomplished skill in preparing, by the gradual advance of the Pawns, an overwhelming attack with the pieces.

⁵ White's attack now becomes irresistible, and shows the soundness of both sacrifices on the thirteenth and twentieth moves. The combined force of the two Bishops proves a fearful weapon in the hands of the youthful master, whilst the adverse pieces are either kept on their places, or reduced to inactivity. Thus Black's material advantage is but of little avail to him. Take the Queen's Rook for instance, which stands helpless in the corner, and does nothing, wherein the Queen assists him.

⁶ Now we see the real object of White's preceding moves. By giving up the Pawns on both flanks, and driving the Queen to her third, he opened the Q. Bishop's file and won a piece.

* [This seems the best move under the circumstances, for there was no chance of drawing the game by perpetual check. Thus:—

White.

Black.

36. K. to Kt. fourth

35. Q. to K. sixth, or K. eighth (check) (best)

37. K. to R. third

36. Q. to K. seventh (check)

38. K. to Kt. third, and wins.—*Trans.*]

37. Q. to K. R. fourth (ch.)

GAME XLIX.

Played with Mr. BODEN.

(*Ruy Lopez Opening.*)

White. (MORPHY.)

Black. (MR. BODEN.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. Kt. to B. third
3. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
4. P. to Q. B. third
5. Castles
6. P. to Q. fourth
7. Q. Kt. to Q. R. third²
8. Q. Kt. to Q. B. fourth
9. Q. Kt. to K. third
10. Q. Kt. to K. B. fifth
11. B. to Q. R. fourth
12. Q. Kt. to K. third
13. P. to Q. fifth
14. P. takes P.
15. Q. Kt. to Q. B. fourth
16. P. to Q. Kt. third
17. Q. to Q. third
18. Q. B. to Q. R. third
19. Q. takes B.
20. Q. R. to Q. square
21. Q. R. to Q. third
22. K. to R. square
23. Q. B. to Q. B. square
24. P. to K. Kt. fourth³
25. P. to K. R. third

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Q. Kt. to B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. Q. to K. second
5. P. to K. B. third¹
6. B. to Q. Kt. third
7. Kt. to Q. square
8. Q. Kt. to K. B. second
9. P. to Q. B. third
10. Q. to K. B. square
11. P. to K. Kt. third
12. P. to Q. third
13. Q. B. to Q. second
14. P. takes P.
15. R. to Q. B. square
16. Q. B. to K. third
17. Q. to K. second
18. B. takes Kt.
19. K. to B. square
20. P. to Q. B. fourth
21. K. Kt. to K. R. third
22. K. to Kt. second
23. K. R. to K. B. square
24. Kt. takes P.
25. K. Kt. to K. R. third

26. R. to K. Kt. square	26. K. to R. square
27. Kt. to K. R. fourth	27. R. to K. Kt. square
28. Q. R. to K. Kt. third	28. P. to K. Kt. fourth
29. Kt. to K. B. fifth	29. Kt. takes Kt.
30. P. takes Kt.	30. Q. to Q. Kt. second (ch.)
31. K. R. to Kt. second	31. P. to Q. fourth
32. Q. to K. Kt. fourth	32. Kt. to K. R. third
33. Q. to K. R. fifth	33. Kt. takes P.
34. Q. R. to K. B. third	34. Kt. to Kt. second ⁴
35. Q. to R. sixth	35. B. to Q. square
36. Q. R. takes K. B. P.	36. B. takes R.
37. Q. takes B.	37. Q. R. to K. B. square
38. Q. takes K. P.	38. R. to K. B. fourth
39. Q. to K. third	39. P. to Q. fourth
40. P. takes P.	40. R. to K. B. sixth
41. Q. to K. second	41. P. takes P.
42. Q. B. takes P.	42. P. to Q. sixth
43. Q. to Q. second	43. Q. to Q. fourth
44. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	44. K. R. to K. B. square
45. Q. B. to K. R. sixth	45. R. takes R. P. (check)
46. K. to Kt. square	46. K. R. to K. Kt. square
47. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth *	47. Q. to Q. fifth
48. Q. to K. B. fourth	48. Q. to Q. R. eighth (ch.)
49. Q. to Q. B. square	49. Q. to K. fourth
50. Q. B. to K. R. sixth	50. Kt. to K. square
51. R. takes R. (check)	51. K. takes R.
52. K. B. to Q. Kt. third (check)	52. K. to R. square
53. Q. B. to K. B. fourth	53. Q. to K. Kt. second (ch.)
54. B. to K. Kt. third	54. R. to K. R. fourth
55. Q. to Q. square	55. R. to K. fourth †
56. Q. takes P.	56. R. to R. eighth (check)
57. Kt. to K. second	

And after a few more moves the game was given up as drawn.

¹ We do not approve of this defence, which leads to a very cramped position.

² "P. to Q. fifth," instead, followed by "Kt. to K. R. fourth," on the next move, would have been better play. It would have still more confined Black's game, and matured White's attack.

³ A sacrifice which merely tends to bring both Rooks to an active co-operation.

⁴ Had he played "Kt. to K. R. fifth," White would have answered with "R. takes B. P.," threatening to play "R. to K. B. seventh" on the next move. This evidently would have secured the King's Rook.

* [To prevent "Q. to K. R. fourth."—*Trans.*]

† [This is decidedly stronger than "Q. to K. Kt. third," which could have been answered with "Q. to K. B. third."—*Trans.*]

GAME L.

Between the same Opponents.

(*Gambit declined.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. BODEN.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. B. to Q. B. fourth
3. Kt. to K. B. third	3. P. to Q. third
4. P. to Q. B. third ¹	4. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
5. B. to K. second	5. Q. Kt. to B. third ²
6. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	6. B. to Q. Kt. third
7. P. to Q. Kt. fifth	7. Kt. to Q. R. fourth ³
8. P. to Q. fourth	8. B. takes Kt.
9. B. takes B.	9. P. takes Q. P.
10. P. takes P.	10. Q. to K. B. third
11. Q. B. to K. third	11. Q. Kt. to Q. B. fifth
12. Q. B. to K. B. second	12. Q. takes B. P. ⁴
13. Castles	13. Kt. to K. B. third
14. Q. to Q. third	14. Kt. to Q. R. fourth
15. Kt. to Q. B. third	15. Castles (K. R.)
16. P. to K. Kt. third	16. Q. to K. R. third
17. K. to Kt. second	17. Q. R. to K. square
18. Q. R. to K. square	18. K. to R. square
19. Q. B. to K. third	19. Q. to K. Kt. third
20. Kt. to K. second	20. P. to K. R. third
21. Q. B. to Q. second	21. P. to Q. fourth
22. Kt. to K. B. fourth	22. Q. to K. R. second
23. P. to K. fifth	23. Q. takes Q.
24. Kt. takes Q.	24. Q. Kt. to Q. B. fifth

25. B. to Q. Kt. fourth	25. K. Kt. to K. fifth
26. B. takes R.	26. R. takes B.
27. Kt. to K. B. fourth	27. K. Kt. to Q. seventh
28. B. takes P.	28. Kt. takes R.
29. B. takes Q. Kt.	29. Kt. to Q. seventh
30. B. to Q. fifth	30. B. takes P.
31. P. to K. sixth ⁵	31. P. to K. Kt. fourth
32. P. to K. seventh	32. R. to K. square
33. B. takes K. B. P.	33. P. takes Kt.
34. P. takes P.*	34. R. takes P.
35. R. takes R.	

And wins.

¹ "B. to Q. B. fourth" instead, would be equally strong. The move in the text, however, is recommended by the books, and patronised by Morphy.

² "Kt. takes B.," followed by "Q. to K. B. third" seems preferable.

³ Again we should have preferred "Q. Kt. to K. second."

⁴ Thus Black gained a Pawn, but exposed himself to a strong attack.

⁵ A true Morphyan move.

* [If "B. takes R.," White wins equally.—*Ex. gr.* :—

White.

Black.

34. B. takes R.	34. P. to B. sixth (check)
35. K. to R. third (best)	35. P. to B. seventh
36. R. to Q. square	36. B. to Q. B. fourth
37. B. to K. R. fifth, etc.— <i>Trans.</i>]	

GAME LI.

Between the same Opponents.

(*Philidorian Defence.*)

White. (MR. BODEN.)

Black. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. P. to Q. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. takes P.
4. Q. takes P.	4. Q. B. to Q. second ¹
5. Q. B. to K. third ²	5. Kt. to Q. B. third
6. Q. to Q. second	6. Kt. to K. B. third
7. K. B. to Q. third	7. K. B. to K. second

8. Kt. to Q. B. third	8. Castles
9. Castles (K. R.) ³	9. P. to K. R. third
10. P. to K. R. third	10. Kt. to K. R. second
11. P. to K. Kt. fourth	11. P. to K. R. fourth
12. Kt. to K. R. second	12. P. takes P.
13. P. takes P.	13. Q. Kt. to K. fourth
14. P. to K. B. third	14. P. to K. Kt. fourth
15. K. to Kt. second	15. P. to Q. B. fourth
16. K. R. to R. square	16. K. to Kt. second ⁴
17. Kt. to B. square	17. K. R. to R. square
18. Kt. to Kt. third	18. P. to K. B. third
19. Q. Kt. to Q. fifth	19. K. Kt. to B. square
20. K. Kt. to R. fifth (check)	20. K. to B. second
21. Q. R. to Q. square ⁵	21. K. Kt. to K. Kt. third
22. K. B. to K. second	22. K. Kt. to K. R. fifth (ch.)
23. K. to B. second ⁶	23. Q. B. to Q. B. third
24. Kt. takes B.	24. Q. takes Kt.*
25. Q. takes P.	25. P. to Q. Kt. third
26. Q. takes Q. (check) ⁷	26. K. takes Q.
27. Kt. to K. Kt. third	27. K. to B. second
28. R. to Q. sixth	28. K. to K. second
29. R. to Q. second	29. K. to B. second
30. P. to K. B. fourth	30. P. takes P.
31. B. takes P.	31. K. Kt. to K. Kt. third
32. Q. B. to R. sixth	32. R. to R. second
33. K. to K. third	33. Q. R. to K. R. square
34. Kt. to B. fifth	34. Kt. to K. second
35. Kt. takes Kt.	35. K. takes Kt.
36. P. to K. Kt. fifth ⁸	36. K. to K. third
37. K. R. to Q. square	37. P. takes P.
38. R. to Q. sixth (check)	38. K. to B. second
39. K. B. to K. R. fifth (ch.)	39. K. to K. second
40. Q. B. takes P. (check)	40. K. to B. square
41. K. R. to K. B. sq. (ch.)	

And Black resigned.

¹ "Q. Kt. to B. third" seems stronger, as it would compel the first player to play "B. to Q. Kt. fifth."

² White is now enabled to bring his Queen to Q. second, which otherwise he could not have done with propriety. We may as well

here state, that the whole game is played with accomplished skill on the part of Morphy's opponent.

² The rapid development of White's forces reminds us of Morphy's style of play, who now—so to say—gets beaten by his own weapons.

⁴ Both parties are aiming at the command of the open file.

⁵ White after this concentrates his attacks with much vigour upon Black's vulnerable points in the middle of the board.

⁶ The positions on King's side are now identical, but in the centre White has evidently more freedom of action. It is clear that the Black Pawn on Q. third is not well supported. This shows the intrinsic weakness of the Philidorian defence; and the strong attack, which the first player obtained, is but the due reward for the great skill with which he brought the defects of this opening to light.

* [Had he taken it with the King, White could have captured the K. B. P.—*Trans.*]

⁷ "R. takes Kt.," followed by "P. to K. B. fourth" might have been still stronger.

⁸ A capital move. The termination of this game is also masterly conducted by Mr. Boden.

GAME LII.

Between the same Opponents.

(*Scotch Gambit.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (MR. BODEN.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. takes P.
4. B. to Q. B. fourth	4. B. to Q. B. fourth
5. Castles	5. P. to Q. third
6. P. to Q. B. third	6. Kt. to K. B. third ¹
7. P. takes P.	7. B. to Q. Kt. third
8. Kt. to Q. B. third	8. Castles ²
9. P. to Q. fifth ³	9. Kt. to Q. R. fourth
10. B. to Q. third	10. P. to Q. B. fourth
11. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	11. P. to K. R. third
12. Q. B. to K. R. fourth	12. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
13. P. to K. R. third	13. Q. B. to K. R. fourth
14. P. to K. Kt. fourth	14. B. to Kt. third
15. Q. to Q. second	15. K. R. to K. square
16. Q. R. to K. square ⁴	16. K. B. to Q. B. seventh

17. Q. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth	17. K. to R. second
18. B. takes K. Kt.	18. P. takes B.
19. Kt. takes B.	19. Q. takes Kt.
20. Q. to Q. B. third	20. Q. to Q. square *
21. Kt. to K. R. fourth	21. P. to Q. Kt. third
22. P. to K. B. fourth ⁵	22. K. to Kt. second
23. Kt. takes B.	23. P. takes Kt.
24. P. to K. fifth	24. Q. R. to Q. B. square
25. B. to Q. Kt. square	25. K. to B. second
26. P. to K. sixth (check)	26. K. to Kt. second
27. Q. to Q. third	27. P. to K. B. fourth
28. P. takes P.	28. Q. to K. B. third
29. P. takes P.	29. Q. takes Q. Kt. P.
30. P. to K. B. fifth	30. Q. to K. B. third
31. P. to K. seventh	31. P. to Q. B. fifth
32. Q. to K. Kt. third	32. P. to Q. B. sixth
33. R. to K. sixth	33. Q. to Q. fifth (check)
34. Q. to K. B. second	34. Q. takes Q. P.
35. P. to K. B. sixth	

And wins. ⁶

¹ Thus White is enabled to occupy the centre. For this reason "P. takes P." is here generally preferred, though White in this case, obtains a strong attack by 7. "Q. to Q. Kt. third." The move in the text reduces the game to the following variation in the *Giuoco Piano*:—

White.

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. Castles
5. P. to Q. B. third
6. P. to Q. fourth

Black.

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. third
5. Kt. to K. B. third
6. P. takes P.

² The usual and stronger move at this stage of the game is 8. "Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth."

³ The advance of the Q. P. at this point is correct and perfectly safe. It has been recommended by the author in the *Berlin Schachzeitung* of 1857, p. 15.

⁴ Having now brought all his pieces into play, White has obtained the full command of the board.

* ["K. to Kt. second" instead, would have lost a piece through White's answer, "P. to Q. Kt. fourth."—*Trans.*]

⁵ The decisive move.

⁶ A capital game, and one of those few which were won by the transatlantic master through a brilliant and combined attack with the Pawns! Black could now play "K. to R. square," when White would check with P. on K. Kt. seventh, followed by "P. to K. B. seventh (check)," and the position would then be quite the same as that which occurred in a game played by Labourdonnais, where also the successive advance of three united Pawns to their seventh squares, carried the day.

GAME LIII.

Played with Mr. BIRD.

(*Gambit refused.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. BIRD)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. B. to Q. B. fourth
3. Kt. to K. B. third	3. P. to Q. third
4. P. to Q. B. third	4. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
5. B. to Q. B. fourth	5. Kt. to Q. B. third
6. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	6. K. B. to Q. Kt. third
7. P. to Q. R. fourth	7. P. to Q. R. third
8. P. to K. R. third	8. B. takes Kt.
9. Q. takes B.	9. Kt. to K. B. third
10. P. to Q. third	10. Q. to K. second
11. P. to K. B. fifth	11. Q. R. to Q. square ¹
12. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	12. Q. Kt. to Kt. square
13. Q. Kt. to Q. second	13. P. to Q. B. third
14. Q. Kt. to K. B. square	14. P. to Q. fourth
15. B. to Q. Kt. third	15. Q. to Q. third
16. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. third ²	16. Castles
17. Q. Kt. to K. R. fifth	17. P. takes P. ³
18. P. takes P.	18. Kt. takes Kt.
19. Q. R. to Q. square ⁴	19. Q. to Q. B. second
20. B. takes R.	20. R. takes B.
21. R. takes R. (check)	21. Q. takes R.
22. Q. takes Kt.	22. B. to K. sixth
23. Q. to Q. square	23. Q. to R. fifth (check)
24. K. to K. second	24. B. to Q. Kt. third

25. K. to Q. third	25. Kt. to Q. second
26. Q. to K. Kt fourth	26. Q. to K. B. seventh
27. P. to K. B. sixth	

And wins. ⁵

¹ "P. to K. R. third," might have been stronger.

² These peculiar moves of the Q. Kt., remind us of Anderssen's similar style of play.

³ "Q. Kt. to Q. second" would have been unavailing, for White could have changed the pieces, and taken afterwards the Q. P.

⁴ At this point the Pawn on K. B. fifth, begins to tell.

⁵ *This lively little game displays two remarkable incidents. In the first place we observe, that Morphy had not castled, which, for aught we know, but rarely occurred in his previous contests. In the second place, the result is mainly owing to the successive introduction of the Queen's Knight into play, to bear on the attack, and thus to decide the struggle.*

GAME LIV.

Between the same Opponents.

(*Philidorian defence.*)

<i>White.</i> (MR. BIRD.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. Kt. to B. third	2. P. to Q. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. to K. B. fourth
4. Kt. to Q. B. third ¹	4. P. takes K. P.
5. Q. Kt. takes P.	5. P. to Q. fourth
6. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. third ²	6. P. to K. fifth
7. Kt. to K. fifth	7. Kt. to K. B. third
8. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	8. K. B. to Q. third
9. Q. Kt. to K. R. fifth	9. Castles
10. Q. to Q. second ³	10. Q. to K. square
11. P. to K. Kt. fourth	11. Kt. takes P.
12. Kt. takes Kt.	12. Q. takes Q. Kt.
13. Kt. to K. fifth	13. Q. Kt. to B. third
14. B. to K. second	14. Q. to K. R. sixth
15. Kt. takes Kt.	15. P. takes Kt.

16. Q. B. to K. third	16. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square ⁴
17. Castles	17. K. R. takes P.
18. B. takes R.	18. Q. to Q. R. sixth
19. P. to Q. B. third ⁵	19. Q. takes R. P.
20. P. to Q. Kt. fourth ⁶	20. Q. to R. eighth (check)
21. K. to B. second	21. Q. to R. fifth (check)
22. K. to Kt. second	22. B. takes Q. Kt. P.
23. P. takes B.	23. R. takes P. (check)
24. Q. takes R.	24. Q. takes Q. (check)
25. K. to B. second	25. P. to K. sixth
26. B. takes P.	26. B. to K. B. fourth (ch.)
27. R. to Q. third	27. Q. to Q. B. fifth (ch.) ⁷
28. K. to Q. second	28. Q. to Q. R. seventh (ch.)
29. K. to Q. square	29. Q. to Kt. eighth (check)

And wins.

¹ An innovation of doubtful merit; either "P. takes K. P.," or "B. to Q. B. fourth," seems stronger.

² The following variation deserves attention:—

White.

Black.

6. K. Kt. takes K. P.	6. P. takes Kt.
7. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)	7. P. to K. Kt. third
8. Kt. takes P.	8. P. takes Kt.
9. Q. takes R.	9. K. Kt. to B. third

And Black, we should think, will ultimately have the better game.

* [We doubt that, as White can now play "Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth," and after "Q. Kt. to Q. second" (Black's only plausible reply), maintain a vigorous attack by castling with Q. R., keeping a Rook and two Pawns for two minor pieces. For this reason we believe that 8. "Q. B. to K. third," on the part of Black, would have been more to the purpose. The first player, besides, could at least have drawn the game, by capturing the Kt. P. with Q. on the 9th move, checking, instead of taking the Rook.—*Trans.*]

³ Had he taken Kt. with either Kt. or B., Black would have obtained a good game by retaking with P.

⁴ This quiet move is but the prelude to a master stroke of strategy.

⁵ Our readers may try other variations, but they will only tend to prove the soundness and depth of Morphy's play.

[It is certain, that neither "Q. to K. third," nor "Q. to Q. B. third," could have saved the game; for, in the first case, Black would have checkmated in four moves, in the second case he would have either taken R. P. with Q., or checked with B. on K. B. fifth. If then Rook interposes (best), Black takes Q. with Q., and plays, afterwards, "P. to K. sixth," winning.—*Trans.*]

* Had he played "Q. to Q. B. second," Black could have answered with "B. takes P."

⁷ He could have made the same move, had White interposed the Bishop.

GAME LV.

Between the same Opponents.

(*Evans's Gambit.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (MR. BIRD.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	4. B. takes P.
5. P. to Q. B. third	5. B. to B. fourth
6. P. to Q. fourth	6. P. takes P.
7. P. takes P.	7. B. to Kt. third
8. Castles	8. P. to Q. third
9. P. to Q. fifth ¹	9. Kt. to Q. R. fourth
10. P. to K. fifth	10. Kt. takes B.
11. Q. to Q. R. fourth (ch.)	11. B. to Q. second
12. Q. takes Kt.	12. P. takes P.
13. Kt. takes P.	13. Q. to K. B. third ²
14. Kt. takes B.	14. K. takes Kt.
15. Q. to K. Kt. fourth (ch.)	15. K. to K. square
16. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	16. Q. to K. Kt. third ³
17. Q. Kt. to B. third	17. Kt. to K. B. third
18. Q. R. to K. R. square (ch.)	18. K. to K. B. square
19. Q. to Q. Kt. fourth (ch.)	19. K. to Kt. square
20. B. takes Kt.	20. Q. takes B.
21. Kt. to K. fourth	21. Q. to K. Kt. third
22. K. to R. square	22. P. to K. R. fourth
23. P. to K. B. fourth	23. P. to K. R. fifth
24. P. to K. B. fifth ⁴	24. Q. to K. R. fourth
25. K. R. to K. B. fourth	25. P. to K. B. third
26. Kt. takes P. (check)	26. P. takes Kt.
27. R. to Kt. fourth (check)	27. Q. takes R.
28. Q. takes Q. (check)	28. K. to B. square

29. R. to K. sixth	29. R. to R. third
30. Q. to K. B. fourth	30. K. to Kt. second
31. R. to K. seventh (check)	

And wins.

¹ The advance of the Queen's Pawn at this stage of the *Evans's Gambit*, was a favourite move of Labourdonnais. It has been also patronised by Anderssen, and is now strongly supported by the American champion. Founded on the principle of a rapid development of the pieces, it gives the first player a good attack, whilst, at the same time, it confines Black's game, and restricts his choice of moves. The principal agent of this attack (which, as we have stated in a previous note, occurs likewise in the *Ruy Lopez* game, and the *Sicilian Opening*) is the continual pressure upon Black's centre, and especially upon his Pawn on Queen's third. We must here mention, that the seasonable advance of the Queen's Pawn in the three openings we have just named, has been first suggested and adopted, by Herr Müller, of Torgau, a very strong player, and former member of the Berlin Chess Club. He was also a constant opponent of Hanstein, and known for his theoretical knowledge of the game. (See *Berlin Schachzeitung* of 1849.)

² "Kt. to K. B. third," is preferable.

[The move suggested by the author could be answered with "B. to Q. R. third," followed by "R. to K. square." Black's game is very cramped already. We believe he ought to have played "B. to Q. B. fourth" on the preceding move, instead of taking the K. P. —*Trans.*]

³ If Q. takes R., White mates in about eight moves.

⁴ Again the usual attack with the K. B. P.!

GAME LVI.

Played with a strong Amateur, known as "ALTER."

(*Fianchetto di Donna.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> ("ALTER.")
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to Q. Kt. third ¹
2. P. to Q. fourth	2. B. to Q. Kt. second
3. K. B. to Q. third	3. P. to K. third
4. Kt. to K. R. third	4. P. to Q. B. fourth
5. P. to Q. B. third	5. Q. Kt. to B. third
6. Q. B. to K. third ²	6. Kt. to K. B. third

7. Q. Kt. to Q. second	7. P. takes P.
8. P. takes P.	8. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
9. Castles	9. B. takes Kt.
10. Q. takes B.	10. Q. Kt. to K. second
11. P. to K. B. third	11. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. third
12. Q. R. to Q. B. square	12. Castles
13. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth ³	13. P. to K. R. third
14. B. takes Kt.	14. Q. takes B.
15. P. to K. fifth	15. Q. to K. R. fifth
16. B. to Q. Kt. fifth	16. K. R. to Q. square
17. R. to Q. B. seventh ⁴	17. B. to Q. B. third
18. B. to K. second ⁵	18. Kt. to K. second
19. Kt. to K. B. fourth	19. Q. to K. Kt. fourth
20. K. R. to Q. square	20. R. to K. B. square
21. Q. to Q. B. square	21. Kt. to K. B. fourth
22. P. to K. Kt. fourth	22. Kt. to K. R. fifth ⁶
23. K. to B. second	23. Q. to Q. square
24. R. takes B.	24. P. takes R.
25. Q. takes P.	25. Q. R. to Q. B. square
26. Q. to K. fourth	26. Q. to K. Kt. fourth
27. B. to Q. third	27. P. to K. Kt. third
28. R. to K. Kt. square	28. Q. R. to Q. B. second
29. Kt. to K. second	29. P. to K. B. fourth ⁷
30. Kt. P. takes P.	30. Q. takes P.
31. Q. takes Q.	31. K. P. takes Q.
32. Kt. to K. B. fourth	32. Q. R. to Q. B. third
33. P. to Q. fifth	33. R. to Q. B. fourth
34. Kt. takes P.	34. Kt. takes Kt.
35. R. takes Kt. (check)	

And wins.

¹ As to the denomination of this opening, see the Author's "*Schachpartien*," p. 198.

² In this position the above move is more correct than it was in Game XLV., the Q. P. being now protected.

³ We have stated in a previous Note, that this mode of play, viz., the pinning of the adverse Knight, followed by the retreat of the Bishop to R. fourth, if Black advances the R. P., is a favourite manœuvre of Morphy's. This time, however, it is of no material consequence.

⁴ A mistake, which ought to have lost the game, had Black not failed afterwards to make the most of it.

⁵ Had he taken the Bishop, the Pawn on Q. fourth would have become untenable.

⁶ We believe he could have advantageously taken the Q. P. Thus:—

White.

- 23. R. takes Kt.
- 24. K. R. takes Q. P. (best)
- 25. R. takes B.

[The following moves may now occur:—

- 26. Kt. to K. R. fifth
- 27. Kt. to K. B. sixth (ch.)
- 28. Q. to Q. B. third

Black.

- 22. Kt. takes Q. P.
- 23. Q. takes K. P.
- 24. B. takes R.
- 25. P. to K. Kt. fourth, &c.

- 26. Q. takes B.
- 27. K. to Kt. second
- 28. P. to K. fourth

Or

- 28. Kt. to K. R. fifth (ch)
- 28. K. to R. square

and Black will undoubtedly maintain his material advantage.—*Trans.*]

⁷ A fatal error. This was the turning point of the game.

GAME LVII.

Played with Mr. HAMPTON.

(*Evans's Gambit.*)

White. (MORPHY.)

- 1. P. to K. fourth
- 2. Kt. to K. B. third
- 3. B. to Q. B. fourth
- 4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
- 5. P. to Q. B. third
- 6. Castles
- 7. P. to Q. fourth
- 8. P. takes P.
- 9. Q. Kt. to B. third
- 10. P. to K. fifth
- 11. Q. B. to Q. R. third
- 12. Q. to Q. Kt. third
- 13. P. takes P.
- 14. Q. R. to Q. square
- 15. P. to K. sixth
- 16. Q. to Q. Kt. fifth
- 17. K. B. to Q. fifth

Black. (Mr. HAMPTON.)

- 1. P. to K. fourth
- 2. Kt. to Q. B. third
- 3. B. to Q. B. fourth
- 4. B. takes P.
- 5. B. to B. fourth
- 6. P. to Q. third
- 7. P. takes P.
- 8. B. to Q. Kt. third
- 9. K. Kt. to B. third¹
- 10. P. takes P.
- 11. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth²
- 12. Q. B. to K. R. fourth
- 13. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth
- 14. Q. to Q. B. square
- 15. P. to K. B. third
- 16. Q. B. to K. Kt. third

And wins.

¹ The correct move is "Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth." If White then plays "B. to Q. Kt. fifth," or "Q. to Q. R. fourth," Black can properly retreat the Bishop to Q. second.

² Too late now. The Bishop, which Black will be compelled on the next move to retreat to K. R. fourth, in order to parry the attack on King's side, is rendered powerless and unable to rescue the endangered Q. Kt. after White's seventeenth move.

GAME LVIII.

Played with Mr. MEDLEY.

(*Kieseritzky Gambit.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. MEDLEY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. P. takes P.
3. Kt. to K. B. third	3. P. to K. Kt. fourth
4. P. to K. R. fourth	4. P. to K. Kt. fifth
5. Kt. to K. fifth	5. Kt. to K. B. third
6. B. to Q. B. fourth	6. P. to Q. fourth
7. P. takes P.	7. B. to Q. third
8. P. to Q. fourth	8. Kt. to K. R. fourth
9. Q. Kt. to B. third ¹	9. Q. B. to K. B. fourth
10. Q. Kt. to K. second	10. Q. to K. B. third
11. Q. Kt. takes P.	11. Kt. to Kt. sixth
12. Q. Kt. to K. R. fifth	12. Kt. takes Kt.
13. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	13. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (ch.) ²
14. P. to Q. B. third	14. Q. to Q. third
15. Castles	15. Kt. to K. Kt. second
16. R. takes B.	16. Kt. takes R.
17. Q. takes Kt. P.	17. Kt. to K. second
18. R. to K. square	18. P. to K. R. fourth ³
19. Q. to K. B. third	19. R. to R. second
20. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)	20. P. to Q. B. third
21. P. takes P.	21. P. takes P.
22. Kt. takes Q. B. P.	22. Q. Kt. takes Kt.
23. B. takes Kt. (check)	23. K. to B. square
24. B. takes Kt. (check)	24. Q. takes B.
25. R. takes Q.	25. B. takes R.
26. B. takes R.	

And wins.

¹ "B. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)" appears still stronger. In answer to the move in the text, Black might have played "P. to K. B. third."

² "Q. to K. Kt. second" would have been safer.

³ With this move, Black only promotes his adversary's designs.

GAME LIX.*

Played with Mr. J. S. KIPPING.

(*Evans's Gambit.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. KIPPING.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	4. B. takes Kt. P.
5. P. to Q. B. third	5. B. to Q. R. fourth
6. P. to Q. fourth	6. P. takes P.
7. Castles	7. P. to Q. third ¹
8. Q. to Q. Kt. third	8. Q. to K. B. third ²
9. P. to K. fifth	9. P. takes P.
10. R. to K. square	10. B. to Q. Kt. third ³
11. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	11. Q. to K. B. fourth
12. Kt. takes P.	12. Kt. takes Kt.
13. P. to K. B. fourth	13. P. takes P. (dis. check)
14. K. to R. square	14. B. to Q. fifth
15. Kt. takes P.	15. K. to B. square
16. Q. B. to Q. square	16. Kt. takes B.
17. Q. takes Kt.	17. Q. B. to K. third
18. Q. takes K. B.	18. P. to K. B. third
19. Kt. to K. fourth	19. P. to Q. Kt. third
20. Kt. to Kt. third	20. Q. to Q. B. fourth
21. Q. takes Q.	21. P. takes Q.
22. R. takes B.	22. P. takes B.
23. P. takes P.	23. P. to K. Kt. third
24. P. to K. R. fourth	24. K. to B. second
25. R. to K. fifth	25. P. to K. R. third
26. Kt. to K. fourth	26. P. takes P.
27. Kt. takes P. (check)	27. K. to B. third

* [This and the following game were played in Birmingham during the meeting.—*Trans.*]

16. K. B. takes P.	16. Q. B. to K. B. fourth
17. B. takes B.	17. Kt. takes B.
18. R. to K. fourth	18. Q. to Q. second
19. B. to Q. B. third	19. B. to Q. B. fourth
20. Kt. to Q. B. second	20. P. to Q. Kt. third
21. Q. to K. Kt. fifth	21. Q. R. to K. square
22. Q. R. to K. square	22. R. takes R.
23. R. takes R.	23. P. to K. R. third
24. Q. to K. Kt. fourth	24. R. to K. B. second
25. R. to K. sixth	25. P. to Q. B. third ³
26. Q. Kt. to Q. fourth	26. P. takes P.
27. Q. to K. Kt. sixth	27. Kt. to K. second
28. Q. to K. Kt. third	28. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third
29. Kt. takes Kt.	29. Q. takes R.
30. Kt. to Q. eighth	30. Q. to K. Kt. third

And wins.

¹ This move is premature when made before castling. It will be seen from our Game LV., that Morphy prefers to castle on the eighth move, and then (in reply to "P. to Q. third") to advance the Queen's Pawn, followed by "P. to K. fifth" on the next move, if Black plays "Kt. to Q. R. fourth." The present game, moreover, shows clearly, that White has not the power to maintain the attack in the brilliant and vigorous style of his opponent, who is enabled, on the twelfth move, already to turn it in his favour.

² A favourite move of Morphy's, preparatory to the advance of the K. B. P.

³ The following termination again exemplifies the American's consummate skill in conducting the pieces.

NOTES.

A.

As to the first performances of Morphy in England, Walker said in *Bell's Life*:—

"Mr. Morphy has played some Chess games in London, but probably has not recovered the fatigues of his voyage from America, or has taken his opponents too lightly, the result of his play hitherto being hardly up to what was expected from him."

The American *Chess Monthly* said:—

"Mr. Morphy's long voyage by sea, a thing to which he was totally unaccustomed, caused him to meet the strong players of the

clubs and divans of London at a disadvantage. A slight illness, probably induced by the same cause, compelled him, too, to defer his match with Herr Löwenthal for a few days. But as soon as the effects of travel passed away, he was himself again, as his score proves."

The *Schachzeitung*, by inherent reasoning, that is, by proper and skilful appreciation of the performances of that master in America, and by a comparison of them with his first performances in Europe, at once hit upon the proper causes, and gave them vent at a time when Morphy's name was but little known in Europe; after having, in the March Number of 1858, explained the characteristics and superior qualities of Morphy's play, in the following words:—

"It seemed at first, when the result of the combat with Mr. Barnes was an even number of games, that the renowned visitor scarcely surpassed the level of every day mastership; but after having overcome the fatigues of a long sea voyage, and the uncomfortable feeling of first impressions in a strange country, he quickly regained his admirable powers, and we already see him in advance of the Englishman, at the rate of thirteen games to six."

Soon also, Mr. Walker found himself so far impressed as to say what we have already quoted on p. 8, Note D.

Falkbeer's remark on his subject, we have quoted in the same Note.

[As the author did us the honour of twice repeating the opinion we gave on Morphy's play, we subjoin the paragraph in full from the *Sunday Times* of Aug. 29, 1858:—

"Young America seems to have for its destiny, to take the lead in every branch. We shall not touch upon the events of the present time, however momentous they may be, but shall retrench us in our own domain, and there we find something unprecedented in the Chess performances of our young friend beyond the sea. A young man of twenty appears amongst us, modest, without ostentation or assumption, and performs the most astonishing feats with a coolness as if it were all quite natural. Still there is a self-confidence and reliance on his own powers which determine him to travel all through Europe in search of a worthy antagonist, should he not find a conqueror here. This is, at least, a real Chess player, from head to foot; few like him have yet appeared. Since the days of Philidor and Labourdonnais, we do not remember a similar phenomenon." —*Trans.*]

In the *Birmingham Press* he is depicted as "a young American who has suddenly risen into fame as one of the most *astounding* players of this or any other age."

Many of the English periodicals wrote short biographies in a spirited style, and gave a faithful portrait of the young hero. Of the more remarkable articles, we give the one by Mr. Boden in *The Field*.*

"Let us do Mr. Morphy full justice; he is beyond question, one of the very finest players living; and we may fairly question

whether he will meet with his superior. He possesses singular coolness along with great concentrative power, is deliberate, but not by any means slow, and to a great depth of insight he unites a rapidity and faculty in combination which we have not seen surpassed. His memory is remarkably tenacious, and the unerring truth and force with which he pursues an advantage once obtained, have excited the admiration of the best players in London. His style of play is attacking and brilliant, occasionally rather over hazardous, but he possesses a steadiness which, when we consider his youth, is marvellous. We heartily congratulate our Chess brethren in America upon the skill and chivalry of their young champion."

* [The author throughout the book says, "Mr. Boden of the *Family Herald*," evidently in mistake for *The Field*.—*Trans.*]

Löwenthal says in the *Era*:—

"Mr. Morphy's rapid rise to the high position he occupies, is unexampled; his age is but twenty-one, yet in all parts of the game his skill equals that of the most experienced players. In eighty-five games, contested on even terms against the foremost players of America, he lost but three; and when giving odds and playing blindfold, his success has been in the same extraordinary proportion. In his last blindfold play, he won six games out of seven that he played simultaneously. Our report of last week shows that after recovering from the fatigue of a voyage across the Atlantic, and the excitement natural on finding himself among strangers, his play has been similar to that exhibited in America. We have had opportunities of hearing the expression of his opinion on the openings with which he seems himself thoroughly acquainted, and have seen him conduct most difficult endings with the skill of a finished tactician. The advent among us of a player so distinguished is calculated materially to benefit the cause of Chess. The various labourers on behalf of the Chess public, will, in consequence, doubtless be supplied with much valuable and original matter, and specimens of first-rate play be placed in the hands of every reader of Chess literature. Mr. Löwenthal has every reason to admire the straightforward manner in which he has been met by his opponent, and must be gratified also, at the hearty support accorded him by his friends."

The Critic, speaking equally in the highest terms of Morphy's youthful talent, mentions even at that time, that there was a likelihood of his returning to America, without having been enabled to meet the national hero (Mr. Staunton) in open combat. One of the reasons given, was the growing score of games won by him in the match with Herr Löwenthal.

As one of the special qualities of the young champion, the same paper extolls his propensity for daringly sacrificing his pieces, and gives its opinion, supported by one of the English veterans, that Morphy is never more dangerous than when his game seems to be hopeless, and that it is next to impossible to guess half of his combinations.

The English periodical, the *Press*, gives in a long article, a well defined description of the general opinion, of which we extract the following passages:—

"The Chess world (for a Chess world there is, although it is seldom brought into contact with any other of the fifty worlds into which society is so curiously cross-divided), has received an impulse sufficient to arouse it from its usual meditative tranquillity. A general Chess conflagration seems to be kindling just when the political and the fashionable world begin to 'pale their ineffectual fires' in the approaching dawn of the recess. The matches which have produced this startling effect are not of the Lucifer order, but will burn longer and more steady than the patent night-lights, or Palmer's best stearine. To convey our views in a more familiar metaphor, Mr. Morphy, the champion of the American Chess, is in the field, and prepared to joust with all comers. And putting aside a match with Mr. Löwenthal (now pending), and another with Mr. Staunton, also on the *tapis*—the event of neither of which can we assume to pre-judge—thus far he has kept his ground triumphantly. Though occasionally beaten, he has scored a considerable majority of games against every player whom he has encountered, including several of our first English celebrities. And this with a 'gallery' of strangers, and at the age of twenty-one. When a few months since we read of the appearance of an American phenomenon (our present visitor), who was to 'whip all creation' in the chequered field, we confess we felt somewhat sceptical. The language of the West is singularly tinged with Oriental hyperbole; and puffing, under the auspices of Mr. Barnum has attained the dignity of a science. We thought of the Feejee mermaid, and the woolly horse—of the hunter who could whip his weight in wild cats, and of the mare whose rapid transit past successive milestones, gave the country the appearance of a continuous churchyard. Even the report of the New York 'Chess Congress,' where the young amateur from New Orleans won, unless our memory fails us, eighty-one games out of eighty-four, did not completely dispel our prejudices. The games were brilliant, but they were played chiefly against third-rates, with whom it might be safe to take liberties. So dashing a style would perhaps prove fatal when tried against wary veterans, trained in defence, and tenacious of the smallest advantage once gained. Such were our previous impressions and those of many abler judges—impressions not destitute of some *à priori* probability. But we were mistaken—we confess it frankly and deliberately—utterly and absolutely mistaken. Mr. Morphy needs no aid either of 'yarn' or 'whole cloth' (we adopt the latest American metaphors) to establish his claims as an extraordinary genius in his own line. This is no place for discussing the value of Chess, either as a recreation or as a test of intellectual power. Enough to say, that its living votaries are legion, including many men (like Messrs. Staunton and Buckle, now the first names of English Chess) of high literary or professional distinction; and that it is historically

associated with recollections of Charles XII., Napoleon, and other

Dead, but sceptred monarchs, who still rule
Our spirits from their urns.

Our present purpose is to claim for our distinguished visitor, as a gifted and accomplished Chess player, the praise to which he is entitled in that character even from the non-chess playing world."

Thereupon follows an essay in a popular style of a psycho-logical analysis of the play of our young master, of which we shall speak in another chapter.

B.

The American Monthly says in the September number:—

"In his intercourse with Chess society, Morphy has not allowed himself to exhibit a preference for any of the cliques into which the Chess community of England is unfortunately divided. He has visited the St. George's Club, the London Club, the Divan in the Strand, and the Philidorian Rooms in Rathbone Place. He has called upon Mr. Staunton at Richmond, Mr. Walker, and Herr Löwenthal. And in all places and by all persons he has been received with a genuine politeness and hearty welcome, which we hope our countrymen will reciprocate whenever occasion offers. He is staying at Löwe's hotel, the proprietor of which is the famous German player with whose games our readers are all familiar."

In a letter of a correspondent (Herr E. Falkbeer), the *Schachzeitung* of August, 1858, says:—

"Not so well known, perhaps, may be two pieces of news which relate to the tournament in Birmingham. The first that Mr. Morphy has generously refused to be reimbursed his travelling expenses, amounting to £70, offered to him by the Birmingham Committee, and thus enabled them to transfer that sum to the prizes destined for the victors in the tournament; the second, that both Morphy and Staunton seem inclined to take part in the tournament, and thus make it one that will be celebrated in the history of the game."

As to his health, the *American Chess periodical* makes the following remarks:—

"Mr. Morphy is in glorious health and spirits, and in spite of his constant Chess playing which would exhaust anybody else, has been constantly growing stouter, since he began to feed upon the roast beef of old England."

The same periodical says, as to the challenge of Staunton by Morphy:—

"Mr. Staunton has formally accepted Mr. Morphy's challenge for five hundred pounds. The combat is expected to commence the first week in November."

C.

The most remarkable match at odds, was that against "Alter," in which Morphy gave Pawn and Move without losing a single game;

he won, after drawing two games, five games running. Thereupon another match was to take place in which Morphy was to give Pawn and Two Moves. The stakes of the first were a set of Staunton Ivory Chess men.*

As to the more distinguished opponents of the youthful champion, we shall mention the following:—

Mr. Barnes is a first-rate of the St. George's Club, and has greatly increased in strength within the last three years. Mr. Bird has testified his great powers in several closely contested matches with Mr. Falkbeer and others, and was one of the players in the London Tournament; he holds an appointment in the office of Messrs. Coleman, the eminent London Accountants. Mr. Boden ranks as one of the great masters of Europe, and won the first prize in the Provincial Tournament in 1851; he is attached to the South Western Railway in England. Mr. Hampton is the successor to Herr Löwenthal in the Honorary Secretaryship of the St. George's Club. Mr. Kipping is the Secretary of the Manchester Club, and perhaps the strongest of England's provincial players. He contended on even terms with Anderssen last year, and is especially known for his thorough acquaintance with the Evans Gambit; he is engaged in the Branch Bank of England at Manchester. Mr. Löwe is an eminent German player, now settled in England, and is the proprietor of a Hotel in London; he participated in the great London Tournament. Mr. Medley is the Secretary of the London Chess Club of which he is the most promising member, and, as Walker believes, is "destined to go very far on the road to fame." Mr. Mongredien has long been known to the readers of Chess books and is the president of the London Club. "Alter," as he now styles himself, is a prominent member of the St. George's Club, and has, if rumour does not lie, made a good stand against Mr. Staunton at Pawn and Move; he is attached to one of the churches of the British metropolis.

* [The second match never came off.—*Trans.*]

CHAPTER IX.

THE MATCH WITH HERR LÖWENTHAL.

THE wish expressed by PAUL MORPHY soon after his arrival in England to play against a renowned master a match of some consequence, was to be soon realised. STAUNTON had, it is true, accepted the challenge which was personally addressed to him, but asked for an indefinite delay.(A) The meantime, however, was favourable for another match, and a player of high repute was soon found, a Matadore of the noble game whose fame dates many years back, who had gained laurels in the Old as well as the New World, whose merits in the literary department of the game were acknowledged in England, and who in the last tournament had won the first prize.(B)

HERR J. LÖWENTHAL lifted the gauntlet thrown down with chivalrous spirit, and tried for the second time his strength against the young hero, whom he previously had occasion to admire when yet a boy. The young master himself could scarcely have chosen a better opponent to witness his prowess, and the victory over him might console him for that over the English champion, should the wished-for match with the latter not take place. This opinion seems to us to be that of the entire European Chess world, of the whole of the knightly array of Chess masters. The Match began on July 19, and terminated August 21, in favour of the transatlantic champion. They played four times a week, twice in the London Club, and twice in the St. George's. The winner of the first nine games was to bear off the stake of £100.

The seconds to MORPHY were LORD ARTHUR HAY and "ALTER;" the seconds of HERR LÖWENTHAL were Messrs. BARNES and OLDHAM. The umpire was Mr. STAUNTON, and the stakeholder, the veteran Mr. W. LEWIS.(C) Fifteen games were played in all,* of which three were drawn, and three won

* [This is a mistake, only fourteen games were played in the match; Morphy won nine, lost three, and two were drawn.—*Trans.*]

by HERR LÖWENTHAL. So great a disproportion evidently proves the practical superiority of the victor, but nothing else.(D) The just chronicler must not omit to mention, that as to intrinsic worth, the performances of the vanquished are at least equal to those of the victor, and draw from this the very inference of the superior practical powers of the latter. Though the vanquished often let slip from his hand, after a successful opening, a ready victory, through mere oversight, it is not to be denied, that on the other side, to be free from such a defect, is, in estimating Chess ability, an essential virtue.(E) Nobody who carefully analyses the games of MORPHY will fail to observe that he possesses in the highest degree the qualities of coolness, collectedness, presence of mind, and ability for brilliant combinations.

Thus the analytical result of the match points out the European player as remarkable for his theoretical knowledge, as it proves the American the superior practical player; the first a scientific professor * of the game, the second its ever ready champion.

Both these qualities merit due acknowledgment. Could it be possible that their union in one person may yet one day oppose a barrier to the progress of the hitherto irresistible conqueror, as every German would wish it should happen on German soil, the young hero would then have perhaps to bow to maturer age and experience, but still never find his superior in chivalrous feeling and spirit.

* [The German word is "gelehrter." We could not find a more suitable term.—*Trans.*]

GAME LXI.—FIRST GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Philidor's defence.*)

White. (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. Kt. to B. third
3. P. to Q. fourth
4. K. Kt. takes P.¹
5. Q. Kt. to B. third

Black. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to Q. third
3. P. takes P.
4. K. Kt. to B. third
5. K. B. to K. second

6. K. B. to K. second ³	6. Castles
7. Castles	7. P. to Q. B. fourth ⁸
8. Kt. to K. B. third	8. Q. Kt. to B. third
9. Q. B. to K. B. fourth ⁴	9. Q. B. to K. third
10. Q. to Q. second	10. P. to Q. fourth
11. P. takes P.	11. K. Kt. takes P.
12. Q. R. to Q. square	12. K. Kt. takes Q. B.
13. Q. takes Kt.	13. Q. to Q. R. fourth
14. B. to Q. third	14. Q. R. to Q. square
15. K. Kt. to Kt. fifth	15. K. B. takes Kt.
16. Q. takes B.	16. P. to K. R. third
17. Q. to K. R. fourth	17. Kt. to Q. fifth ⁵
18. P. to Q. R. third ⁶	18. K. B. to K. square
19. K. R. to K. square	19. Q. to Kt. third
20. Kt. to Q. B. fourth	20. Q. to Q. R. fourth
21. Kt. to Q. B. third	21. P. to K. B. fourth
22. K. R. to K. fifth	22. B. to K. B. second
23. Q. R. to K. square	23. Q. to Kt. third ⁷
24. K. R. takes R. (check)	24. R. takes R.
25. R. takes R. (check)	25. B. takes R.
26. Q. to K. seventh	26. B. to B. second
27. Kt. to Q. R. fourth	27. Q. to Q. R. fourth
28. Kt. takes P.	28. Q. to Q. seventh ⁸
29. P. to K. B. third ⁹	29. Kt. to Q. B. third
30. Q. to K. second	30. Q. to B. eighth (check)
31. K. to B. second	31. Q. takes Kt. P.
32. B. takes B. P.	32. Q. takes R. P.
33. Q. to Q. Kt. fifth	33. Q. to Q. B. sixth ¹⁰
34. Kt. to Q. Kt. third	34. Q. to K. B. third
35. Q. takes Q. Kt. P.	35. P. to K. Kt. third
36. Q. to Q. B. eighth (check)	36. K. to R. second
37. B. to Q. third	37. Kt. to K. fourth
38. Kt. to Q. second	38. Q. to R. fifth (check)
39. K. to B. square	39. Q. takes R. P.
40. Kt. to K. fourth	40. Q. to R. eighth (check)
41. K. to B. second	41. Q. to Q. B. eighth
42. Q. to Q. B. third	42. Q. to K. B. fifth
43. K. to K. second	43. P. to K. R. fourth
44. Kt. to K. B. second	44. P. to K. R. fifth
45. Q. to Q. second	45. Q. to K. Kt. sixth

46. Q. to K. third	46. P. to Q. R. fourth
47. Q. to K. fourth	47. B. to K. third
48. P. to K. B. fourth	48. Kt. takes B.
49. P. takes Kt.	49. B. to Kt. fifth (check)
50. K. to B. square	50. B. to K. B. fourth
51. Q. to K. seventh (check)	51. K. to R. third

And the game was drawn.¹¹

¹ "Q. takes P." is stronger. See Game LI. It was Herr Löwenthal's previous opinion, that "Kt. takes P." should turn in White's favour, on account of the following continuation:—

4. Kt. takes P.	4. P. to Q. fourth (the usual move)
5. P. to K. fifth	5. P. to Q. B. fourth
6. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)	6. B. to Q. second
7. P. to K. sixth	7. B. takes B.
8. P. takes P. (check)	8. K. takes P.
9. K. Kt. takes B.	9. Q. to Q. R. fourth (check)
10. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third	10. P. to Q. fifth
11. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)	11. P. to K. Kt. third
12. Q. to Q. fifth (check)	12. K. to K. square
13. K. Kt. takes P., and wins.	

Afterwards, however, he allowed that not only could Black have improved his game by checking with Q. on K. second (instead of "Q. R. fourth") on the ninth move, but that with still greater advantage he could have played "B. to Q. B. fourth," instead of "P. to Q. B. fourth," on the fifth move. The second player, therefore, gets a free and easy game through his reply: "P. to Q. fourth" (in answer to "Kt. takes P.") on the fourth move; nay, this move is even preferable to 4. "Kt. to K. B. third," as above, which could have most effectually been replied to, in the following manner:—

White.

4. Kt. takes P.
5. Q. Kt. to B. third
6. Q. B. to K. third

Black.

4. K. Kt. to B. third
5. B. to K. second

(This, we think, is stronger than the move made by Herr Löwenthal, viz., 6. "K. B. to K. second").

7. Kt. takes B.	6. Q. B. to K. third
8. K. B. to Q. B. fourth, with a very good game	7. P. takes Kt.

It is true, however, that in the above variation, viz.:—

4. Kt. takes P.	4. P. to Q. fourth

White, instead of advancing the K. P. on the fifth move, could also take P. with P., a move which equally deserves mature consideration.

² See our preceding Note.

³ This move weakens the Pawns on Queen's side, and ought to give the first player the better game, if he takes the proper advantage of it. Still it can scarcely be avoided in the present opening.

⁴ "Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth" would have been stronger. Thus:—

White.

- 9. B. to K. Kt. fifth
- 10. B. takes Kt.
- 11. Q. to Q. second
- 12. Q. R. to Q. square

Black.

- 9. P. to K. R. third
- 10. B. takes B.
- 11. Q. B. to K. third

In this position White ought to concentrate his attack upon the weak Pawn on Queen's third. We shall see afterwards how vigorously Black frees his game by advancing the Queen's Pawn at the right moment.

⁵ Black has now, at least, an even game. The positions of the minor pieces are analogous; both Queens are out of play on the opposite wings, and the game, at this early point already, has assumed the character of a drawn battle. The following attacks on both sides only tend to an exchange of the pieces.

⁶ A necessary precaution to secure the Queen's side.

⁷ This move occasions the loss of a Pawn, which, however, can easily be recovered afterwards, neither party having a decided advantage of position. It is very likely, moreover, that Black has offered the Pawn in order to dislodge the hostile Queen, and to obtain the attack.

⁸ See our last Note.

⁹ "P. to K. Kt. third" would have been a bad move, and "P. to K. R. third" would have led to a perpetual check.

[The *Chess Player's Chronicle*, 1859, page 201, here makes the following remark:—"At this point, Herr Löwenthal had probably a won game; he is a Pawn ahead, and has by far the best position; we only wonder how he could not see that by playing any of the three Pawns on King's side, the game was necessarily drawn. The move to win the game was "B. to K. B. square." Here Herr Löwenthal missed his first victory.—*Trans.*]

¹⁰ "Kt. to Q. fifth" could have been answered with "Q. takes P." If then "Kt. takes B.," White checks on Q. B. eighth; if, however, "Q. takes Kt.," White checks on Q. Kt. eighth, and wins the Queen on the next move.

¹¹ White draws the game by perpetual check, as Black evidently cannot play "K. to K. fourth." This game lasted eight hours.

GAME LXII.—SECOND GAME IN THE MATCH.

(King's Gambit Refused.)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. K. B. to Q. B. fourth
3. K. Kt. to B. third	3. P. to Q. third
4. P. to Q. B. third	4. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
5. K. B. to Q. B. fourth ¹	5. B. takes Kt.
6. Q. takes B.	6. K. Kt. to B. third
7. P. to Q. Kt. fourth ²	7. B. to Q. Kt. third
8. P. to Q. third	8. Q. Kt. to Q. second
9. P. to K. B. fifth	9. Q. to K. second
10. P. to K. Kt. fourth	10. P. to K. R. third
11. K. to K. second	11. P. to Q. B. third
12. P. to K. Kt. fifth	12. P. takes P.
13. Q. B. takes P.	13. P. to Q. fourth
14. K. B. to Kt. third ³	14. Q. to Q. third
15. Kt. to Q. second	15. P. to Q. R. fourth
16. P. takes R. P.	16. Q. R. takes P. ⁴
17. P. to K. R. fourth	17. K. Kt. to K. R. fourth
18. Kt. to K. B. square	18. Q. Kt. to Q. B. fourth
19. K. B. to B. second	19. Q. R. to Kt. fourth ⁵
20. Q. B. to B. square	20. Q. P. takes P. ⁶
21. Q. P. takes P.	21. Q. R. to Kt. seventh ⁷
22. Q. B. takes Q. R.	22. K. Kt. to B. fifth (check)
23. K. to K. square	23. Q. Kt. to Q. sixth (ch.)
24. K. B. takes Kt.	24. Kt. takes B. (check)
25. K. to Q. second	25. Kt. takes B. (check)
26. K. to Q. B. second	26. Q. to Q. R. sixth
27. Kt. to Q. second	27. B. to Q. B. second ⁸
28. Kt. to Kt. square	

And Black resigned.⁹¹ "B. to K. second" seems preferable. See Game LXIV.² The Books disapprove of this line of play. By advancing the Pawns on both sides, Black jeopardises his game, as will be seen on the sixteenth move.

It is clear that White could not take the Q. P., on account of Black advancing the K. P.

⁴ Black has now decidedly the best of the game; and the conscious-

ness of this fact has perhaps induced Herr Löwenthal to give up a Rook prematurely on the twenty-first move.

⁵ "Q. R. to Q. R. sixth" would have been stronger.

⁶ Again "Kt. to K. B. fifth (check)" would have been better play, for if "B. takes Kt.," Black can answer with "Q. R. to Q. Kt. seventh."

⁷ A false combination, as will be seen on the twenty-fifth move.

⁸ A gross mistake, which decides the game at once.

⁹ This game lasted four hours and a half.

GAME LXIII.—THIRD GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Petroff's Defence.*)

<i>White.</i> (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. Kt. to B. third	2. K. Kt. to B. third
3. K. Kt. takes K. P.	3. P. to Q. third
4. K. Kt. to B. third	4. K. Kt. takes P.
5. P. to Q. fourth	5. P. to Q. fourth
6. K. B. to Q. third	6. K. B. to K. second ¹
7. Castles	7. Q. Kt. to B. third ²
8. K. R. to K. square ³	8. P. to K. B. fourth
9. P. to Q. B. fourth	9. Q. B. to K. third
10. P. takes P. ⁴	10. Q. B. takes P.
11. Q. Kt. to B. third	11. Kt. takes Kt.
12. P. takes Kt.	12. Castles
13. Q. B. to K. B. fourth	13. K. B. to Q. third
14. B. takes B.	14. Q. takes B.
15. Kt. to K. fifth	15. Q. R. to K. square
16. P. to Q. B. fourth ⁵	16. B. to K. third
17. Kt. takes Kt.	17. P. takes Kt.
18. B. to K. B. square*	18. B. to B. second
19. Q. to Q. second	19. R. takes R.
20. R. takes R.	20. R. to Q. square
21. Q. to Q. R. fifth ⁶	21. Q. takes Q. P.
22. Q. takes B. P.	22. Q. to Q. Kt. third
23. Q. to K. B. fourth	23. P. to K. Kt. third
24. P. to K. R. third	24. Q. to Kt. seventh
25. Q. to Q. B. seventh	25. Q. to Q. Kt. third

26. R. to K. seventh	26. R. to Q. eighth
27. Q. to B. eighth (check)†	27. R. to Q. square
28. Q. to B. seventh	28. R. to Q. eighth ⁷
29. Q. to K. fifth	29. Q. to Kt. eighth
30. Q. to K. second	30. K. to B. square
31. R. to K. fifth	31. P. to K. B. fifth
32. P. to K. B. third	32. Q. to Q. B. eighth
33. P. to K. R. fourth	33. P. to K. R. third
34. P. to Q. B. fifth	34. K. to Kt. second
35. R. to K. fourth	35. Q. takes Q. B. P. (check)
36. K. to R. second	36. Q. to Q. B. eighth
37. K. to Kt. square	37. R. to Q. seventh
38. Q. to Q. R. sixth	38. R. takes R. P.
39. Q. to Q. third	39. R. to Q. seventh
40. Q. to Q. R. sixth	40. R. to Q. eighth
41. P. to K. Kt. third	41. P. takes Kt. P.
42. K. to K. Kt. second	42. Q. to Q. B. fourth
43. K. takes Kt. P.	43. Q. to K. Kt. eighth (ch.)
44. B. to Kt. second	44. R. to Q. seventh
45. Q. to K. B. square	45. Q. takes Q.
46. B. takes Q.	46. K. to B. third
47. B. to Q. B. fourth	47. B. takes B.
48. R. takes B.	48. R. to Q. third
49. K. to B. fourth	49. R. to K. third
50. R. to Q. fourth	50. K. to K. second
51. R. to R. fourth	51. K. to Q. third
52. R. takes R. P.	52. P. to Q. B. fourth
53. R. to R. square	53. P. to Q. B. fifth
54. P. to K. R. fifth	54. P. takes P.
55. K. to B. fifth	55. R. to K. sixth ⁸
56. K. to B. fourth	56. R. to K. square
57. R. to R. sixth (check)	57. K. to Q. fourth
58. R. takes R. P.	58. P. to B. sixth
59. R. takes R. P. (check)	59. K. to Q. fifth
60. R. to K. R. seventh	60. R. to Q. B. square
61. R. to Q. seventh (check)	61. K. to B. fifth
62. K. to K. third	62. R. to K. square (check)
63. K. to B. second ⁹	63. P. to B. seventh
64. R. to Q. B. seventh (ch.)	64. K. to Q. sixth
65. R. to Q. seventh (check)	65. K. to Q. B. sixth

66. R. to Q. B. seventh (ch.)	66. K. to Q. seventh
67. R. to Q. seventh (check)	67. K. to Q. B. eighth
68. R. to Q. Kt. seventh	68. R. to K. fourth
69. P. to B. fourth	69. R. to K. fifth
70. K. to B. third	70. R. to Q. B. fifth
71. R. to K. R. seventh	71. K. to Q. seventh
72. R. to K. R. square	72. P. to B. eighth (Queen)
73. R. takes Q.	73. R. takes R.
74. K. to K. fourth	74. R. to K. eighth (check)
75. K. to Q. fourth	75. K. to K. seventh
76. P. to B. fifth	76. K. to B. sixth
77. K. to Q. fifth	77. K. to B. fifth
78. P. to B. sixth	78. K. to Kt. fourth
79. P. to B. seventh	79. R. to K. B. eighth
80. K. to K. sixth	80. K. to Kt. third

And wins.

¹ This deviation from the usual move, "B. to Q. third," has been first introduced by the author in his *Schachpartieen* (No. 14, p. 37). With the best play, however, the first player should obtain, even now, a slight advantage of position.

² This, and the ninth move of Black, have been recommended by the author in the following opening:—

White.

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to Q. fourth
3. P. takes P.
4. P. to Q. B. fourth
5. Q. to Q. Kt. third

Black.

1. P. to K. third
2. P. to Q. fourth
3. P. takes P.
4. Q. B. to K. third
5. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third

It is clear that Black, by playing now "Q. Kt. to Q. B. third," anticipated the threatened advance of the adverse Q. B. P. At this stage of the *Petroff Defence*, however, the move "Q. Kt. to B. third" is far less efficacious than in the above given variation of the *French Opening*; for the King's Knight, being already established on K. fifth, cannot support the Q. Kt. from King's second. White, therefore, could have played with great propriety, "P. to Q. B. fourth" (instead of "R. to K. square,") on the next move. If then Black plays "Q. B. to K. third," White answers with "Q. to Q. Kt. third."

³ The correct move is given in our last Note.

⁴ He ought to have played now "Q. to Q. Kt. third," which is the most attacking move in this position. Black's answer "Kt. to Q. B. fourth," would have been unavailing, for White could then have checked with Q. on Q. R. fourth.

⁵ "P. to K. B. fourth" is doubtless a better move, but Black has already a decided advantage of position.

* [How White managed to lose this game, observes the *Chess Player's Chronicle* at this point, is truly astonishing; it took him, however, more than two moves to perform this feat, and this was the first; why not play "R. to K. fifth," which is the obvious and probably the best move? The following moves are instructive only, because they show how a game can be lost, without any great blunder being committed, simply by making a number of useless moves.—*Trans.*]

⁶ "R. to Q. square" would have been stronger. Herr Löwenthal it appears, was afraid of the advance of the adverse Q. B. P., which, if White then plays "P. to Q. fifth," might have been followed up by "P. to Q. B. third," on the part of the second player. A careful examination, however, will show that this variation would not have turned in Black's favour. Suppose:—

<i>White.</i>	<i>Black.</i>
21. R. to Q. square	21. P. to Q. B. fourth
22. P. to Q. fifth	22. P. to Q. B. third
23. Q. to Q. B. second	23. P. to K. Kt. third
24. P. to K. B. third, or (A.)	24. P. takes P.
25. P. takes P.	25. B. takes P.
26. B. to Q. B. fourth, with a good game.	
(A.)	
24. B. to K. second	24. P. takes P.
25. P. takes P.	25. B. takes P.
26. B. to Q. B. fourth, &c.	

† [If White takes B. with R., Black takes also the B. (ch.), and wins the Rook back, or draws the game by perpetual check.—*Trans.*]

⁷ Black obviously intended to draw the game, which his opponent ought to have been satisfied with.

⁸ The end game is not without interest. It might have been drawn after all, had White played correctly.

⁹ It seems that "K. to B. fourth," would have ensured the drawn.

GAME LXIV.—FOURTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Gambit declined.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. B. to Q. B. fourth
3. K. Kt. to K. B. third	3. P. to Q. third
4. P. to Q. B. third	4. B. to K. Kt. fifth
5. K. B. to K. second	5. B. takes Kt.
6. B. takes B.	6. Kt. to Q. B. third

7. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	7. B. to Q. Kt. third
8. P. to Q. Kt. fifth	8. Q. Kt. to K. second
9. P. to Q. fourth	9. P. takes B. P.
10. Q. B. takes P. ¹	10. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. third
11. Q. B. to K. third	11. K. Kt. to B. third
12. Q. Kt. to Q. second	12. Castles
13. Castles	13. P. to K. R. third ²
14. P. to Q. R. fourth	14. P. to Q. B. fourth
15. Q. to K. second	15. K. R. to K. square
16. Q. to Q. third	16. P. to Q. fourth
17. P. to K. fifth	17. K. Kt. to Q. second
18. K. B. to K. R. fifth	18. R. to K. third ³
19. P. to Q. R. fifth	19. B. to Q. B. second
20. R. takes K. B. P.	20. K. takes R. ⁴
21. Q. to K. B. fifth (check)	21. K. to K. second
22. B. takes Kt.	22. Q. to K. Kt. square
23. Q. B. to K. B. second	23. Kt. takes K. P. ⁵
24. Q. P. takes Kt.	24. Q. R. to K. B. square
25. B. to Q. B. fifth (check)	25. K. to Q. square
26. B. takes Q. R.	26. R. takes P.
27. Q. to K. B. second	27. Q. to K. third
28. P. to Q. Kt. sixth	28. P. takes P.
29. P. takes P.	29. Q. takes K. B.
30. P. takes B. (check)	30. K. takes P.
31. R. to Q. Kt. square	

Resigns.

¹ At this point White has a very good attack, supported by the co-operation of the two Bishops.

² A useless move, which leaves the Q. Kt. not sufficiently protected. "K. Kt. to Q. second," would have been stronger.

³ A palpable error. "Q. to K. B. fifth" was the correct move.

⁴ "Kt. to R. square" would have been better play.

⁵ "Kt. to K. B. square" might have given Black a chance of drawing.

[The *Chess Player's Chronicle* coincides with the author's opinion, and continues the game as follows:—

White.

24. B. to K. B. fourth (ch.)
 25. B. to K. B. seventh
 26. B. takes Q. (best)
 27. B. takes R.

Black.

23. Kt. to K. B. square
 24. K. to Q. second
 25. P. to K. Kt. third
 26. P. takes Q.
 27. K. takes B.

Leaving White only a Pawn ahead.—*Trans.*]

GAME LXV.—FIFTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

*(Petroff Defence.)**White.* (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to R. B. third
3. Kt. takes P.
4. Kt. to K. B. third
5. P. to Q. fourth
6. B. to Q. third
7. Castles
8. P. to Q. B. fourth ¹
9. P. takes P. ²
10. Q. B. to K. third
11. Kt. to Q. B. third
12. Kt. takes B.
13. B. to Q. B. second
14. B. to Q. Kt. third
15. P. to Q. fifth
16. Q. B. to Q. fourth
17. K. R. to K. square ³
18. B. takes B.
19. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth
20. P. to K. Kt. third
21. Q. to K. second
22. P. takes Kt.
23. Q. to K. B. third
24. Q. to K. R. fifth
25. Q. R. to Q. square ⁴
26. Kt. to K. sixth
27. K. R. to K. B. square
28. Kt. takes R.
29. P. to K. R. third
30. Q. takes K. B. P.
31. P. to Q. sixth
32. R. takes P.
33. Q. R. to Q. second
34. K. R. to K. square
35. Q. to Q. B. fifth

Black. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. P. to Q. third
4. Kt. takes P.
5. P. to Q. fourth
6. B. to K. second
7. Kt. to Q. B. third
8. Q. B. to K. third
9. B. takes P.
10. Castles
11. P. to K. B. fourth
12. Q. takes Kt.
13. K. to R. square
14. Q. to Q. third
15. Kt. to Q. R. fourth
16. B. to K. B. third
17. Q. R. to Q. square
18. Kt. takes B.
19. K. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth
20. Q. to Q. B. fourth
21. Q. Kt. takes B.
22. Q. R. to K. square
23. Kt. to K. fourth
24. P. to K. R. third
25. Q. to Q. B. seventh
26. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth
27. Q. takes P. on Q. Kt. second
28. R. takes Kt.
29. Kt. to K. B. third
30. Q. takes Q. Kt. P.
31. P. takes P.
32. Q. to K. B. second
33. P. to Q. R. third
34. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
35. R. to K. square

36. Q. R. to K. second	36. R. takes R.
37. R. takes R.	37. Q. to Q. Kt. sixth
38. Q. to K. B. eighth (ch.)	38. Kt. to K. Kt. square
39. R. to K. seventh	39. Q. to Q. eighth (check)
40. K. to R. second	40. Q. to Q. fifth
41. R. to K. eighth	41. Q. to Q. B. fifth
42. R. to Q. R. eighth	42. P. to Q. Kt. fifth
43. R. to Q. R. seventh	43. Q. to Q. fifth
44. R. takes Q. R. P.	44. P. to Q. Kt. sixth
45. R. to Q. R. eighth	45. Q. to Q. fourth
46. R. to Q. R. seventh	46. Q. to Q. fifth
47. R. to Q. Kt. seventh	47. Q. to Q. B. sixth
48. Q. to Q. B. seventh	48. K. to Kt. second ⁵
49. R. takes Q. Kt. P.	49. Q. to K. fourth
50. R. to Q. Kt. seventh	50. P. to K. R. fourth
51. R. to Q. seventh	51. Kt. to K. R. third
52. Q. to Q. fifth	52. Q. to K. B. third
53. Q. to Q. third (check)	53. K. to R. square
54. R. to Q. eighth (check)	54. Kt. to Kt. square
55. Q. to Q. fourth	55. Q. to K. B. sixth
56. K. to Kt. square	56. K. to R. second
57. Q. to Q. fifth	57. Q. takes Q.
58. R. takes Q.	58. Kt. to K. B. third
59. R. to K. fifth	59. K. to Kt. third
60. P. to K. B. fourth	60. K. to B. second
61. K. to Kt. second	61. K. to Kt. second
62. K. to B. third	62. K. to B. second
63. R. to Q. R. fifth	63. K. to Kt. third
64. R. to Q. R. sixth	64. K. to B. second
65. P. to K. B. fifth	65. Kt. to Q. fourth
66. P. to K. Kt. fourth	66. P. takes P.
67. P. takes P.	67. Kt. to K. second
68. K. to B. fourth	68. Kt. to Q. fourth (check)
69. K. to K. fifth	69. Kt. to K. B. third
70. R. to Q. R. seventh (ch.)	

And Black resigned.⁶

¹ This time Herr Löwenthal made the correct move. In the third game of the match, however, he played "K. R. to K. square" at this point, a move which is far inferior.

² "Q. to Q. Kt. third" would have still more improved White's game.

³ It is a fact well worth noticing, that the attack in this game was kept up by Herr Löwenthal with greater spirit and vigour than in any other of the preceding or following contests.

⁴ A necessary precaution. Had he played "Kt. to K. sixth" instead (a move which at first sight looks tempting), Black would have very properly replied to it with "Q. takes Q. P.," threatening to check with "Kt. on B. sixth."

⁵ This is a forced move, as White threatened to play "R. to Q. Kt. eighth" on the next move.

⁶ We call the particular attention of our readers to this beautiful game, which has been masterly conducted by Herr Löwenthal. It is certainly the best of the whole match, and only the preceding one can claim a comparison with it.

GAME LXVI.—SIXTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Sicilian Opening.*)

White. (MORPHY.)

Black. (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)

1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to Q. B. fourth ¹
2. P. to Q. fourth	2. P. takes P.
3. Kt. to K. B. third	3. Kt. to Q. B. third
4. Kt. takes P.	4. P. to K. fourth
5. Kt. takes Kt.	5. Kt. P. takes P.
6. B. to Q. B. fourth	6. Kt. to K. B. third
7. Castles ²	7. P. to Q. fourth [*]
8. P. takes P.	8. P. takes P.
9. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)	9. B. to Q. second
10. B. takes B. (check)	10. Q. takes B.
11. R. to K. square	11. B. to Q. third
12. Kt. to Q. B. third	12. P. to K. fifth ³
13. B. to K. Kt. fifth	13. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth
14. Q. takes P.	14. B. takes R. P. (check)
15. K. to R. square	15. Q. takes Q.
16. Kt. takes Q.	16. Castles
17. P. to K. B. third	17. P. takes P.
18. P. takes P.	18. Kt. to K. fourth
19. R. to K. third	19. P. to K. B. third
20. K. takes B.	20. Q. R. to Q. square

21. R. takes Kt.	21. P. takes B.
22. K. to Kt. third	22. P. to K. R.' third
23. P. to Q. B. fourth	23. R. to K. B. second
24. Q. R. to K. square	24. K. to B. square
25. P. to Q. B. fifth	25. P. to K. Kt. third
26. P. to Q. B. sixth	26. R. to Q. B. square
27. P. to Q. B. seventh	27. Q. R. takes P.
28. R. to K. R. eighth (check)	28. K. to Kt. second
29. Kt. takes R.	

And wins.

¹ We have given our opinion upon this opening in Game VIII., and will only observe, that in both games the American champion has taken the utmost advantage of the intrinsic weakness of the defence.

² White has already the best of the game, and vigorously frustrates his opponent's efforts on the next move, to free his pieces by advancing the Queen's Pawn.

* ["Kt. takes P.," instead—says the *Chess Player's Chronicle*—would have proved dangerous, for White could have replied to it with "R. to K. square;" and if Black then plays "P. to Q. fourth," the first player, by taking Kt. with R., gains a decided advantage. The proper move in this position would have been "B. to K. second."—*Trans.*]

³ "P. to Q. fifth" might have been stronger, but even then some material loss was unavoidable.

[White, if we mistake not, could have taken the Q. P. with impunity.—*Trans.*]

GAME LXVII.—SEVENTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Philidorian Defence.*)

<i>White.</i> (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. P. to Q. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. takes P.
4. Q. takes P. ¹	4. Q. B. to K. third
5. Kt. to Q. B. third	5. P. to Q. R. third
6. Q. B. to K. third	6. Kt. to Q. B. third
7. Q. to Q. second	7. Kt. to K. B. third
8. K. to Q. square	8. B. to K. second

9. B. to K. second	9. Castles
10. Castles	10. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
11. P. to Q. R. third	11. Q. Kt. to K. fourth
12. K. Kt. to Q. fourth	12. P. to Q. B. fourth
13. Kt. takes B.	13. P. takes Kt.
14. P. to K. B. fourth	14. Kt. to K. Kt. third
15. B. to K. B. third ²	15. R. to Q. Kt. square
16. Q. to K. second	16. Q. to Q. B. second
17. P. to K. R. fourth ³	17. Kt. takes K. R. P.
18. B. to K. Kt. fourth	18. Kt. takes B.
19. Q. takes Kt.	19. Q. to Q. B. square
20. P. to K. Kt. third	20. Kt. to K. Kt. third
21. R. to K. B. second	21. R. to K. B. third
22. Q. R. to K. B. square	22. P. to Q. Kt. fifth
23. P. takes P.	23. P. takes P.
24. Kt. to Q. R. fourth ⁴	24. Q. to Q. B. third
25. P. to Q. Kt. third	25. Q. takes K. P.
26. B. to Q. R. seventh	26. Q. R. to K. B. square
27. R. to K. second	27. Q. to Q. Kt. second
28. B. to K. B. second *	28. Kt. takes K. B. P.

And wins.⁵

¹ This is stronger than taking with the Knight.—(See our Game LXI.) It is questionable, however, whether, if "Kt. takes P.," the second player can safely play "P. to Q. fourth" on the 4th move, on account of White's answer—5. "P. takes P."

² "P. to K. B. fifth," instead, deserves attention.

³ A premature attack.

[We have made the same remark in the *Sunday Times* of August 8, 1858, and there subjoined the following:—

"P. to K. Kt. fourth," instead, might have been stronger: but still, if we may venture here to express our opinion, would not have decided the game in White's favour, there being still much resource left for the second player, as, for instance:—

17. Kt. to Q. second, or P. to Q. Kt. fifth.

Amongst the lookers-on, however, the impression seems to have prevailed, that, up to this point, White had decidedly the better game, which, after close examination, will prove erroneous.—*Trans.*]

⁴ After this move, the loss of a second Pawn was unavoidable.

* ["B. to K. third" might have been answered with "Kt. to K. fourth." White's game is hopeless.—*Trans.*]

⁵ Duration of this game—three hours.

GAME LXVIII.—EIGHTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(Philidorian defence.)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. P. to Q. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. takes P.
4. Q. takes P.	4. Q. B. to Q. second
5. Q. B. to K. third	5. Kt. to K. B. third
6. Q. Kt. to B. third	6. B. to K. second
7. B. to Q. B. fourth ¹	7. Q. Kt. to B. third
8. Q. to Q. second	8. Q. Kt. to K. fourth
9. Kt. takes Kt.	9. P. takes Kt.
10. Castles (K. R.)	10. Castles
11. P. to K. B. fourth	11. K. B. to Q. third
12. P. to K. B. fifth	12. Q. B. to Q. B. third
13. Q. to K. second	13. P. to K. R. third
14. Q. R. to Q. square	14. Q. to K. second
15. K. B. to Q. fifth	15. B. takes B.
16. Kt. takes B.	16. Kt. takes Kt.
17. R. takes Kt.	17. P. to K. B. third
18. Q. to K. Kt. fourth	18. P. to Q. B. third
19. R. to Q. third	19. B. to Q. B. fourth
20. Q. to K. Kt. third	20. Q. R. to Q. square
21. K. R. to Q. square	21. R. takes R.
22. R. takes R.	22. R. to Q. square
23. B. takes B. ²	23. Q. takes B. (check)
24. Q. to K. B. second	24. Q. takes Q. (check)
25. K. takes Q.	25. R. takes R.
26. P. takes R.	26. P. to Q. B. fourth ³
27. P. to K. Kt. fourth	27. K. to B. square
28. P. to Q. R. fourth ⁴	28. P. to Q. Kt. third
29. K. to K. Kt. third	29. K. to B. second
30. K. to R. fourth	30. K. to B. square
31. K. to R. fifth	31. K. to B. second
32. P. to Q. Kt. third	32. K. to B. square
33. K. to Kt. sixth	33. K. to Kt. square
34. P. to K. R. third	34. K. to B. square
35. P. to K. R. fourth	35. K. to Kt. square
36. P. to K. Kt. fourth	36. R. P. takes P.

37. P. takes P.	37. P. takes P.
38. K. takes P.	38. K. to B. second
39. K. to R. fourth	39. K. to K. second
40. K. to Kt. fourth	40. K. to B. third
41. K. to R. fifth	41. P. to Q. R. third
42. K. to R. fourth	42. P. to K. Kt. third
43. P. to Q. R. fifth	43. P. takes Q. R. P.
44. P. takes K. Kt. P.	44. K. takes P.
45. K. to Kt. fourth	45. P. to Q. R. fifth ⁵
46. P. takes P.	46. P. to Q. R. fourth
47. K. to B. third	47. K. to B. third
48. K. to B. second	48. K. to B. second
49. K. to Kt. third	49. K. to Kt. second ⁶
50. K. to B. second	50. K. to B. third
51. K. to Kt. square ⁷	51. K. to Kt. fourth
52. K. to Kt. second	52. K. to B. fifth
53. K. to B. second	53. P. to Q. B. fifth
54. P. takes P.	54. K. takes P.
55. K. to K. second	55. K. to Q. fifth
56. K. to K. B. third	56. K. takes P.
57. K. to K. fourth	57. K. to Kt. fifth
58. K. takes P.	58. K. takes P.
59. K. to Q. fourth	59. K. to Kt. fifth

And wins.

¹ The Bishop is not well placed on Q. B. fourth, for Black, after his next move, will be enabled to exchange the pieces, and thus to free his game, by playing "Q. Kt. to K. fourth."

² If "R. takes B. (check)," Q. retakes; and if then "B. takes B." Q. checks on Q. eighth, and White will have the better game by taking afterwards the Q. B. P., checking.

[The *Chess Player's Chronicle* is of a different opinion, and gives the following variation:—

White.

23. R. takes B. (check)

24. B. takes B.

25. K. to B. second

26. K. to B. square

27. Q. to Q. Kt. third (check)

28. Q. takes Q. Kt. P., and the game is drawn by its nature.—
Trans.]

Black.

23. Q. takes B.

24. Q. to Q. eighth (check)

25. Q. takes Q. B. P. (check)

26. Q. takes B.

27. K. to B. square

³ This, and the following move of Black, which tends to gain the opposition, are perfectly correct. The remaining part of this game is masterly played by Herr Löwenthal.

⁴ White, perhaps, would have improved his game by moving the King, step by step, to Queen's side.

⁵ Thus Black will be able to keep the opposition.

⁶ The game has become very difficult; Black's mode of play shows a deep knowledge of positions.

⁷ The decisive error.

GAME LXIX.—NINTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Ruy Lopez.*)

<i>White.</i> (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. Kt. fifth	3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. B. third	4. Q. to K. second
5. Castles	5. P. to K. B. third ¹
6. P. to Q. fourth	6. B. to Q. Kt. third
7. Kt. to Q. R. third ²	7. Kt. to Q. square
8. Kt. to Q. B. fourth	8. Kt. to K. B. second
9. Kt. to K. third	9. P. to Q. B. third
10. Kt. to K. B. fifth	10. Q. to K. B. square
11. B. to Q. third	11. P. to K. Kt. third
12. Kt. to K. Kt. third	12. P. to Q. third
13. P. to Q. R. fourth	13. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
14. P. to Q. R. fifth	14. B. to Q. B. second
15. P. to K. R. third	15. B. to Q. second
16. Q. to Q. Kt. third	16. Kt. to Q. square
17. K. R. to K. square ³	17. B. to K. third
18. Q. to Q. B. second	18. Kt. to K. second
19. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	19. Q. to K. Kt. second
20. P. to Q. B. fourth	20. Castles
21. B. to K. third ⁴	21. Kt. to K. B. second
22. P. to Q. fifth	22. B. to Q. second
23. Q. R. to Q. square	23. K. to R. square
24. K. to R. square	24. P. takes P.
25. K. P. takes P.	25. P. to K. B. fourth
26. Q. B. to Q. B. square	26. Q. R. to K. square
27. B. to Q. Kt. second	27. Kt. to K. Kt. square
28. Q. to Q. B. third	28. Kt. to K. B. third

29. K. B. to Q. Kt. square	29. R. to K. Kt. square
30. R. to Q. second	30. Q. to K. R. third
31. Kt. to K. R. second	31. P. to K. B. fifth
32. Kt. to K. fourth	32. Kt. takes Kt.
33. B. takes Kt.	32. P. to K. Kt. fourth
34. P. to K. B. third	34. Q. to K. R. fifth
35. R. to K. B. square	35. Kt. to K. R. third
36. R. to K. second ⁵	36. Kt. to K. B. fourth
37. B. takes Kt.	37. B. takes B.
38. P. to Q. B. fifth ⁶	38. Q. to K. R. third
39. K. R. to K. square *	39. K. R. to K. B. square
40. P. to Q. Kt. fifth	40. R. to Q. B. square
41. Q. to Q. R. third ⁷	41. K. to Kt. square
42. P. to Q. Kt. sixth	42. P. takes Kt. P.
43. B. P. takes P.	43. B. to Q. square
44. R. to Q. B. square	44. R. takes R. (check)
45. B. takes R.	45. Q. to K. Kt. third
46. Q. to Q. Kt. fourth	46. B. to Q. sixth
47. R. to K. square	47. B. to K. second
48. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth	48. R. to K. square
49. B. to Q. Kt. second	49. P. to K. R. fourth
50. Kt. to K. B. second	50. P. to K. Kt. fifth
51. Q. to Q. B. third	51. B. to K. B. fourth
52. B. P. takes P.	52. P. takes P.
53. P. takes P.	53. B. takes P.
54. Kt. takes B.	54. Q. takes Kt.
55. R. to Q. B. square	55. K. to B. second
56. Q. to K. R. third ⁸	56. Q. takes Q.
57. P. takes Q.	57. P. to K. B. sixth
58. R. to K. B. square	58. P. to K. fifth ⁹
59. B. to Q. fourth	59. B. to K. B. third
60. B. to K. third	60. R. to Q. R. square
61. B. to Q. second	61. B. to Q. fifth
62. P. to K. R. fourth	62. K. to K. Kt. third
63. K. to K. R. second	63. R. to K. B. square
64. K. to K. Kt. third	64. P. to K. B. seventh
65. K. to K. Kt. second	65. P. to K. sixth
66. B. to K. square	66. K. to K. R. fourth
67. K. to Kt. third	67. P. takes B. (Q. checking)

And White surrendered.¹⁰

¹ This move was first introduced into practice by Mr. Boden.—(See Game XLIX.)

² "P. to Q. fifth" would be stronger.—(See again, Game XLIX.)

³ "B. to Q. B. fourth," followed by "P. takes P.," eventually, might have been stronger play.

⁴ Again we should have preferred "B. to Q. Kt. second."

⁵ At this point, the game was adjourned, having already lasted ten hours.

⁶ This important move ought to have been made some moves before. The game now abounds in interesting points.

* [Threatening to take P. with P., and to sacrifice the Rook on the next move.—*Trans.*]

⁷ "P. to Q. B. sixth," instead, would have given White the better game.

[We expressed the same opinion in the *Sunday Times* of August 15, 1858, and there gave an elaborate analysis of this position. The following is the Note referred to, and our subsequent examination:—

Instead of this move, "P. to Q. B. sixth" seems, to us, to win the game, and, unless a careful examination of this intricate position had deceived us, the following variations may have led to a successful result. Our opinion, we are given to understand, has been supported by that of several of the most distinguished Chess players, who analysed this position of the game at the termination of it; and although their researches did not lead to a decisive result, still their opinion appears to agree with ours. In the first place:—

White.

41. P. to Q. B. sixth

42. Q. P. takes P.

The only feasible moves in this position, which admit of a sound defence, seem to be either "Q. to K. third," or "Q. to K. B. third," or "R. to Q. Kt. square."

43. P. to Q. Kt. sixth

44. P. takes P.

45. R. takes P.

46. R. takes P.

47. R. takes B.

48. B. takes Q. (check)

49. R. takes P. (check)

50. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth, and must win.

In the second place:—

41. P. to Q. B. sixth

42. Q. P. takes P.

43. B. to Q. R. third

44. R. to Q. Kt. second

45. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth

46. B. P. takes P.

Black.

41. P. takes P. (best)

42. Q. to K. third

43. P. takes P.

44. B. takes P.

45. P. takes R.

46. Q. to K. B. third (the only move)

47. Q. takes Q.

48. K. to Kt. square

49. K. to B. second

41. P. takes P.

42. Q. to K. B. third

43. R. to Q. Kt. square (best)

44. K. R. to Q. square (There seems no better move.)

45. B. takes Kt. (or A.)

46. Q. to K. third

47. R. from K. sq. to Q. Kt. sq.	47. P. to K. fourth
48. P. to Q. Kt. sixth	48. P. takes P.
49. P. takes P.	49. P. to K. fifth
50. P. takes B., and wins.	

A.

46. P. to Q. Kt. sixth	45. Q. to K. third
47. P. takes P.	46. P. takes P.
48. R. takes R.	47. R. takes P. (or a)
49. P. to Q. B. seventh	48. B. takes R.
50. Kt. takes P.	49. R. to Q. B. square
51. R. takes P.	50. P. takes Kt. (best)
(If "Q. to K. B. third," instead, White plays "B. to Q. Kt. second," and wins.)	51. R. takes P. (best)
52. Q. to Q. R. square	52. Q. to K. B. third
53. B. to Q. Kt. second, and wins.	

a

48 P. to Q. B. seventh, and wins easily.	47. B. takes P.
In the third place:—	
41. P. to Q. B. sixth	41. P. takes P.
42. Q. P. takes P.	42. R. to Q. Kt. square
43. Q. to Q. Kt. fourth	43. Q. to K. third (best)
44. R. to Q. sq. (compulsory)	44. K. R. to Q. square

(If "P. to K. R. fourth," then White plays "B. to Q. B. third," threatening to advance the Pawns on the left wing at the right moment; if, however, "P. to Q. fourth," White takes the K. P. with the Rook (checking), and pinning the Bishop with the other Rook, wins easily).

45. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth	45. B. takes Kt. (or A.)
46. B. P. takes B.	46. K. to K. Kt. square
47. B. to Q. B. third	

The Pawns on the Queen's side, we think, ought to win. When- ever, in this variation, Black advances his Queen's Pawn, White, by replying with "B. takes K. P.," followed, eventually, by "P. to Q. B. seventh," will soon gain the victory.

A.

46. Kt. takes K. P.	45. P. to K. R. fourth
47. R. takes R. (check)	46. P. takes Kt.
48. P. to Q. Kt. sixth, and wins by force.— <i>Trans.</i>]	47. R. takes R.
- ⁸ "Q. to K. B. third" would have been stronger, giving White still a chance of drawing the game.

⁹ The game was here again adjourned, having lasted eight hours.

¹⁰ This game lasted about twenty hours.

GAME LXX.—TENTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(French Opening.)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. third
2. P. to Q. fourth	2. P. to Q. fourth
3. P. takes P.	3. P. takes P.
4. K. Kt. to B. third	4. K. Kt. to B. third
5. K. B. to Q. third	5. K. B. to Q. third
6. Castles	6. Castles
7. Q. Kt. to B. third	7. P. to Q. B. third
8. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	8. P. to K. R. third
9. Q. B. to K. R. fourth	9. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
10. P. to K. R. third	10. B. takes Kt.
11. Q. takes B.	11. Q. Kt. to Q. second
12. K. B. to K. B. fifth	12. Q. to Q. B. second
13. Q. R. to K. square	13. Q. R. to K. square
14. Q. R. to K. third	14. K. B. to K. B. fifth
15. Q. R. to K. second	15. R. takes R.
16. Kt. takes R.	16. B. to Q. third
17. K. B. takes Q. Kt.	17. Kt. takes B.
18. Kt. to K. Kt. third	18. R. to K. square ¹
19. Kt. to K. B. fifth	19. Kt. to K. B. square
20. B. to K. Kt. third	20. B. takes B.
21. P. takes B.	21. R. to K. fifth
22. P. to Q. B. third	22. Kt. to K. R. second [*]
23. P. to K. R. fourth	23. P. to K. R. fourth
24. P. to Q. B. fourth	24. Kt. to K. B. third ²
25. Kt. takes K. Kt. P.	25. Kt. to Kt. fifth
26. Kt. takes R. P.	26. R. takes Q. P. ³
27. Kt. to B. sixth (check)	27. Kt. takes Kt.
28. Q. takes Kt.	28. R. takes B. P.
29. R. to K. B. fifth	29. R. to K. Kt. fifth
30. R. to K. fifth	30. Q. to Q. B. square
31. K. to K. seventh	31. Q. to K. B. square
32. Q. to K. fifth	32. Q. to K. Kt. second ⁴
33. R. to K. eighth (check)	33. K. to R. second
34. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)	

Black surrendered.⁵

¹ "P. to K. Kt. fourth" would be answered with "Kt. to K. B. fifth."

* ["Black," says the *Chess Player's Chronicle*, "evidently here overlooked that he could not bring his Knight to Bishop's third without the loss of a Pawn or two, for White's obvious answer, "Kt. takes K. Kt. P." The proper move, therefore, would have been "Kt. to K. third."—*Trans.*]

² An erroneous move, by which Black forfeits the game, which has been hitherto even.

³ "R. to K. Kt. fifth" would, perhaps, have been stronger, but still would scarcely have saved the game.

⁴ "R. to K. fifth," instead, is of no avail, on account of Black's strong Pawns on Queen's side.

⁵ After this game, which was exceedingly well played on the part of the victor, the match was postponed for a few days.

GAME LXXI.—ELEVENTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Sicilian Opening.*)

White. (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to Q. fourth
3. Kt. to K. B. third
4. Kt. takes P.
5. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth
6. Kt. to Q. sixth (check)
7. Q. takes B.
8. Q. to K. Kt. third²
9. Kt. to Q. B. third
10. P. to K. fifth
11. Q. to K. B. third
12. P. to K. Kt. fourth
13. Q. to K. second
14. Q. takes Kt.
15. Q. to Q. R. fourth (ch.)
16. Q. to Q. Kt. third
17. Q. takes Q. Kt. P.
18. Kt. to Q. fifth
19. B. to K. Kt. second
20. P. to Q. B. fourth⁴
21. Q. to Q. Kt. fourth

Black. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to Q. B. fourth
2. P. takes P.
3. P. to K. third
4. Kt. to Q. B. third
5. P. to Q. R. third¹
6. B. takes Kt.
7. Q. to K. second
8. Kt. to K. B. third
9. P. to Q. fourth
10. Kt. to K. R. fourth
11. P. to K. Kt. third
12. Q. Kt. takes K. P.³
13. Q. Kt. takes P.
14. P. to K. fourth
15. B. to Q. second
16. P. to Q. fifth
17. Castles
18. Q. to Q. third
19. P. to K. fifth
20. P. to K. B. fourth
21. Q. to K. fourth

22. Q. to K. seventh	22. B. to K. third
23. Q. to Q. B. seventh	23. Q. to K. Kt. second
24. Q. takes Q.	24. Kt. takes Q.
25. Kt. to Q. Kt. sixth ⁵	25. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square
26. P. to Q. B. fifth	26. Kt. to K. B. fourth
27. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	27. K. to B. second
28. Castles	28. P. to K. Kt. fourth
29. B. to Q. square	29. K. R. to Q. square ⁶
30. B. takes K. Kt. P.	30. K. R. to K. Kt. square
31. P. to K. R. fourth	31. R. to K. Kt. third
32. R. takes P.	32. Q. R. to K. Kt. square
33. Kt. to Q. seventh	33. R. takes B.
34. P. takes R.	34. R. takes P.
35. K. to R. second	35. Kt. to K. B. fifth
36. B. to K. B. square	36. R. to R. fourth (check)
37. K. to Kt. third	37. Kt. to Q. fourth
38. P. to K. B. fourth	38. P. takes P. (<i>en passant</i>)
39. Kt. to K. fifth (check)	39. K. to B. third
40. Kt. takes P.	40. R. to R. third
41. Q. R. to K. square	41. R. to Kt. third (check)
42. K. to B. second	42. Kt. to Q. B. sixth
43. B. to Q. third	43. B. to Q. fourth
44. B. takes Q. R. P.	44. R. to Kt. second
45. K. R. to K. B. fourth	45. B. takes Kt.
46. R. takes B.	

And wins.⁷

¹ If "P. to Q. fourth," White answers with "P. takes P.," and if then "K. P. takes P.," White retakes with Q., winning a Pawn.

² White could have also played "P. to K. fifth." Black's game is very confined already, in consequence of the defence he chose, and his following move does not serve to improve it.

[Mr. Staunton, in the *Illustrated London News*, of September 18, 1858, here makes the following striking remark:—"If Mr. Löwenthal's original talent for Chess were equal to his acquired, he might, perhaps, aspire to occupy a place in the first rank of living players, but—with all the advantage of incessant practice, a life, in fact, devoted to the game, and more knowledge of what can be learned by books of the openings and end-games than one player in ten thousand possesses—he will never, we fear, in any sustained struggle with a powerful and practised player, do more than snatch a stray game. He has not a particle of self-reliance. If, through his great practical and theoretical familiarity with every *début*, he can at the

outset acquire a superiority, as in the present instance, he will sometimes through that advantage, score the game; but, if his spring fail, he rarely or never recovers himself."—*Trans.*]

³ Black thus gives up a piece—a venturesome sacrifice, which can only be explained by his cramped position, there being no other means to free his pieces.

⁴ This game is played with great care and consummate skill by Herr Löwenthal. We deeply regret, therefore, the inconsistency of his play on the whole.

⁵ This is stronger than "Kt. to Q. B. seventh."

⁶ "Q. R. to Q. square" might be preferable.

⁷ This game began on August 12, and was finished on the following day.

GAME LXXII.—TWELFTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*French Opening.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. third
2. P. to Q. fourth	2. P. to Q. fourth
3. P. takes P.	3. P. takes P.
4. Kt. to K. B. third	4. Kt. to K. B. third
5. B. to Q. third	5. Q. B. to K. third
6. Castles	6. B. to Q. third
7. Kt. to Q. B. third	7. P. to Q. B. third
8. Kt. to K. fifth	8. Q. to Q. Kt. third
9. Q. B. to K. third	9. Q. Kt. to Q. second ¹
10. P. to K. B. fourth	10. B. takes Kt.
11. B. P. takes B.	11. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth
12. Q. to Q. second	12. Kt. takes B.
13. Q. takes Kt.	13. Q. takes Q. Kt. P. *
14. Kt. to K. second	14. Q. to Q. R. sixth
15. Kt. to K. B. fourth	15. Q. to K. second †
16. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square	16. Castles on Q's side ²
17. B. to K. second	17. Kt. to Q. Kt. third
18. Q. to Q. Kt. third	18. R. to Q. second
19. Kt. to Q. third	19. Kt. to Q. B. fifth
20. Kt. to Q. B. fifth	20. R. to Q. B. second
21. Q. to Q. R. fourth	21. P. to Q. Kt. third
22. B. takes Kt.	22. P. takes Kt.

23. B. to Q. R. sixth (check) 23. K. to Q. second
 24. B. to Q. Kt. seventh 24. R. to Q. square
 25. B. takes P. (check)

And Black resigns.³

¹ It was not advisable to take the Q. Kt. P. at this moment. White's best answer, we think, would have been, 10. "Q. Kt. to K. second," and if Black then plays "Q. to Q. Kt. third," 11. "P. to Q. B. fourth."

* [Again, either castling on King's side, or "P. to Q. R. fourth" would have been safer play.—*Trans.*]

† [This move was forced, as White threatened to take B. with Kt., and if "P. takes B." to win the Queen on the next move, by checking with B. on K. Kt. sixth.—*Trans.*]

² Why not "Kt. to Q. Kt. third?"

[The author makes some further remarks with regard to Black's last move, which literally coincide with our opinion, expressed in the *Sunday Times* of August 29, 1858, as follows:—"Black's last move was probably made with the intention of securing the Q. Kt. P., as we can imagine no other reason for this suicidal step. Castling on the Queen's side at this critical point, and thus giving a most welcome opportunity for the display of Morphy's characteristic brilliancy of style, and eminently attacking power, is something far beyond our comprehension. There were several other means to protect the Pawn, far safer than the one adopted, as for instance, "Kt. to Q. Kt. third," which, we believe, is the best; for if White then takes B. with Kt., Black retakes with P., having a safe defence with a Pawn ahead.—*Trans.*]

³ This game was played on August 10, and lasted nearly three hours.

NOTICE TO THE READER.

[*With the preceding game the author concludes the match, stating that the remaining two games have not come to his hands. We therefore subjoin those games with notes of our own, in the Appendix, in order to complete the work.—Trans.*]

NOTES.

A.

The *Era* has the following about the much-talked of contest between Staunton and Morphy:—

"It is of course well known that Mr. Morphy's visit to this country was undertaken with the purpose of having an opportunity of measuring his strength against that of our most noted players; and we are glad to state that arrangements are pending which, it is hoped, will soon lead to a match between Mr. Morphy and Mr. Staunton."

As to the formal acceptance of Morphy's challenge by Staunton, we refer our readers to Note B. in Chapter VIII.

B.

Herr J. Löwenthal, one of the most eminent Chess players, occupies at present a prominent position in the English Chess world. He was a member of the famous triumvirate in Pesth, which, sixteen years ago, so gloriously conquered the Parisian Chess celebrities, in two games by correspondence. His two partners in the contest, both of great renown, were Szen and Grimm, whose decease we have already to lament. In the year 1849, shortly after the termination of the Hungarian insurrectional war, Löwenthal left his native land and went to America, which country he represented, but not successfully, in 1851, at the great tournament in London. He afterwards resided in the English metropolis, and obtained the appointment of Secretary to the St. George's Chess Club. By editing, at the same time, the Chess articles of *The Era*, he rendered great services to the theoretical and literary part of the game, and exhibited considerable activity in promoting the interests of Chess. In the year 1857 he obtained the first prize in the tournament at Manchester. With equal success he played at the Birmingham tourney in 1858, where he proved his decided superiority over all his opponents, and amongst others over Staunton.*

Herr Löwenthal may be, therefore, considered the Chess Champion of England, and his match with Morphy as a proof of the relative strength between England and America. Lately Herr Löwenthal has undertaken the editing of another Chess column in the recently established *Illustrated News of the World*, a distinct publication from the *Illustrated London News*, the Chess articles of which are edited by Mr. Staunton. By that newly established paper we are informed that, owing to the high position in which Herr Löwenthal stands, and which has been still farther augmented by his late success in Birmingham, a third Chess club of some pretension (the St. James's) has been established in London, which, under his direction, it is hoped, will soon be in a most prosperous condition.

C.

The general interest which, owing to Herr Löwenthal's high reputation, was taken in his match with Morphy, produced soon, a rise

* [When Herr Löwenthal met Mr. Staunton in the second round of the Birmingham tourney, the winning of the first two games out of three decided the struggle. Surely but a doubtful proof of "decided superiority," when we consider the total want of practice on the part of the English player! In the first and third round Herr Löwenthal beat Messrs. Kipping and "Alter"; in the last round he had to contend with the Translator for the first prize, and came off the conqueror in a very long and protracted struggle, having drawn four games and scored three to his opponent's one.—*Trans.*]

in the stakes, which were at first settled at £50, to be awarded to the winner of the first seven games. It was finally arranged to extend the number of games to be won to nine, and to double the stakes. Thus the increasing interest taken in the match was duly expressed, and the final conditions were as follows:—

1. The winner of the first *nine* games shall be entitled to the stakes.

2. The first move shall be decided by lot, in the first game, and shall subsequently belong to each player alternately, drawn games notwithstanding.

3. One half of the games shall be played at the St. George's Chess Club, the other half at the London Chess Club.

4. The play shall take place on the following days in each week: Mondays, Tuesdays, Thursdays, and Fridays. On Mondays and Tuesdays at the London Chess Club, at two P.M. Thursday and Friday at noon, at St. George's Chess Club, unless otherwise agreed.

5. Either party failing to appear within half an hour of the appointed time shall incur a penalty of £1. 1s; within an hour, £2. 2s; within an hour and a half, £5. 5s; the fines in each case being payable to the opposite party.

6. No game shall be protracted beyond one sitting, unless adjourned by mutual consent.

7. After five hours' play, either party shall be at liberty to demand an adjournment for an hour.

8. The games shall be the joint property of the players.

There have been different opinions as to the intrinsic worth of the games. The high genius of a M'Donnell or a Labourdonnais, has, no doubt, been wanting in these encounters, as in many other modern matches. It is, however, not to be denied, that many difficult positions and profound combinations were gone through, and carried out, which prove no mean degree of strength and power. This may be seen in our Notes that accompany the games. We here quote the following passage from the Boston paper, the *American Union*, but must observe with regard to it, that, in our opinion, it is not the brilliant style alone which constitutes a claim to mastership.

"The games in this gallant contest, have not been so interesting as anticipated; they lack that brilliancy so strikingly apparent in the contests between the never to be forgotten M'Donnell and Labourdonnais. If the gambits had been accepted, we should have seen some dazzling Muzio's and Evans's, which would have eclipsed previous battles of a like character."

D.

The American paper, the *Winona Republican*, comforts Löwenthal in a very humorous way, about the loss of his match, saying that if the worthy old champion Philidor could come out of his grave and look at the performances of a Morphy and a Paulsen, he would be rather astonished, and would console Herr Löwenthal by saying:

"My dear Herr Löwenthal, your play is very good, and worthy of a great master, but as to beating Morphy, don't dream of it, for myself, I verily believe I could not do it." We may add here, that although fortune did not favour Herr Löwenthal with regard to the practical result, yet the consciousness of his play having in no way given the impression of a decided inferiority of strength to that of his renowned antagonist, must have afforded him far more satisfaction.

E.

A capital and impartial opinion is given in *Bell's Life* after the first seven games had been played:—

"Curious enough, by far the finest exhibition of real Chess play has been in the Game (No. V.) won by the Hungarian (Löwenthal); indeed he appears here to be quite another man, takes up a grand position through Morphy's carelessness, plays a long series of difficult moves without error, and wins the game in a way that would have done credit to M'Donnell. Alas! for the other games! Can it be the same Löwenthal? We confess our belief that such is Chess, and that little can ever be told from the first half dozen games. Herr Löwenthal has, hitherto, underplayed himself, and need not resign the thoughts of ultimate victory from past defeats. Let him think of the English at Inkerman, holding their own even in the gripe of the bear, and 'never despair' be his motto and his sustaining thought. Our good and gentlemanly friend Morphy must not, however, think we mean to liken him personally to a bear, for he is the very pink of courtesy and chivalry, and we know would rather be glad than otherwise, to see his opponent score a game or two, to restore the match to its pristine condition of universal interest and expectation. We despair of seeing an Englishman take up Morphy's challenge. The Chess players have not the leisure; while our ten thousand of the heavy pocket and broad acres, have the leisure, but not the Chess."

CHAPTER X.

THE CHESS CONGRESS AT BIRMINGHAM.

THE members of the great British Chess Association commenced their meeting for 1858, on the 24th of August, and on that day many of the Chess notabilities had arrived in Birmingham. (A)

PAUL MORPHY who had already gathered so many laurels on British soil was hourly expected. However, motives which only future time can reveal, retarded his appearance to the third day. We must here express our hope as well as our private convictions, that those reasons are in full accordance with the chivalrous feelings of the young hero, and that whenever they may be published, the expectations which are entertained on account of his noble sentiments, may not be disappointed. (B)

The Tournament had in the mean time been continued, but was interrupted on the 27th by a great exhibition of blindfold play. (C) The young champion entered the lists against eight strong players at the same time. With the exception of one, the others were obliged to strike their flags. (D) A compact array of lookers on followed with intense interest the complicated progress of the combat. At the successful termination of the unequal fight, there was but one feeling which pervaded the gratified spectators---that of admiration and willing acknowledgment of his merits. (E)

The contest began at two o'clock in the afternoon, and terminated at half-past six. Then a splendid *soirée* took place under the presidency of LORD LYTTETON, which concluded the meeting of the Association.

The President in his speech made emphatic allusion to the merits of the transatlantic guest, and bade him welcome in the name of the Association. He trusted that the young hero would come off victorious in all his encounters but one, while

absent from his native land, and in that one he hoped the veteran English player, STAUNTON, (F) would be the conqueror.

The match with STAUNTON, however, was not to take place. For the English champion, it appears, had not fully made up his mind to enter upon the contest; consequently the young hero departed on the next day for Paris, and left London and the English soil on the last day of August. (G)

THE EIGHT GAMES SIMULTANEOUSLY PLAYED BY PAUL MORPHY AT THE MEETING IN BIRMINGHAM, WITHOUT SEEING THE BOARD.*

GAME LXXIII.

FIRST BOARD.—LORD LYTTTELTON.

(*Allgaier Gambit.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (LORD LYTTTELTON.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. P. takes P.
3. K. Kt. to K. B. third	3. P. to K. Kt. fourth
4. P. to K. R. fourth	4. P. to K. Kt. fifth
5. Kt. to K. fifth	5. P. to Q. third
6. Kt. takes K. Kt. P.	6. K. B. to K. second
7. P. to Q. fourth	7. B. takes K. R. P. (check)
8. K. Kt. to K. B. second	8. B. takes Kt. (check) ¹
9. K. takes B.	9. K. Kt. to K. B. third
10. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third	10. Q. to K. second
11. Q. B. takes P.	11. Kt. takes P. (check)
12. Kt. takes Kt.	12. Q. takes Kt.
13. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (ch.)	13. K. to B. square ²
14. Q. B. to K. R. sixth (ch.)	14. K. to Kt. square

* [The author only gives four games played on the first, fourth, fifth, and sixth table against Lord Lyttelton, and Messrs. Kipping, Rhodes, and Dr. Freeman. To complete the work, we have extracted the remaining ones from the *Illustrated London News*, Sept. 18, 1858, with notes by Mr. Staunton.—*Trans.*]

15. K. R. to K. R. fifth ³	15. B. to K. B. fourth
16. Q. to Q. second	16. B. to K. Kt. third
17. Q. R. to K. square	

And Black resigns.

¹ "Q. to K. Kt. fourth," is the correct move.

² To avoid the threatened loss of his Queen by "K. R. to K. square," &c.

³ Very prettily played.

GAME LXXIV.

SECOND BOARD.—THE REV. GEORGE SALMON.

(*Evans's Gambit declined.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Rev. G. SALMON.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. K. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. K. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	4. P. to Q. fourth
5. P. takes Q. P.	5. Kt. takes Q. Kt. P.
6. Castles	6. K. Kt. to K. second
7. Kt. takes K. P.	7. Castles
8. P. to Q. fourth	8. K. B. to Q. third
9. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third	9. Q. B. to K. B. fourth
10. K. B. to Q. Kt. third ¹	10. P. to Q. R. fourth
11. P. to Q. R. third	11. P. to Q. R. fifth
12. Q. Kt. takes Q. R. P.	12. Q. Kt. takes Q. P.
13. P. to Q. B. fourth	13. Q. R. takes Kt.
14. P. takes Kt. ²	14. Q. R. to Q. R. fourth
15. Q. to K. B. third	15. Q. B. to K. Kt. third
16. K. R. to K. square	16. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
17. K. R. to K. second	17. Kt. to K. B. fourth
18. Q. B. to Q. Kt. second	18. Q. to Q. R. square
19. P. to K. Kt. third	19. Q. to Q. R. second
20. Kt. takes B.	20. K. R. P. takes Kt.
21. K. R. to K. fifth	21. B. takes Q. R. P. ³
22. P. to Q. sixth	22. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
23. K. R. takes R.	23. B. takes R.
24. Q. to Q. fifth	24. P. to Q. Kt. third ⁴

¹ In these games Mr. Morphy overlooks nothing; the moment an enemy makes an attack, the correct defence follows, as if everything had been foreseen and provided for.

² He plainly saw, that by taking the Rook he would be subjected to loss by—14. "Kt. to Q. B. sixth": 15. "Kt. to K. seventh (check)": and, 16. "Kt. takes Q. P." &c.

³ Better to have taken the Q.'s Pawn with Kt.

⁴ From this point, owing to an error on the part of the transcriber, the record of the game is no longer intelligible, which is to be regretted, as, upon the whole, it was perhaps the best-contested *partie* of the series, and excited more interest than any other. It was carried on after this for above twenty moves on each side, and was finally won, amidst general applause, by Mr Morphy.

GAME LXXV.

THIRD BOARD.—MR. AVERY.

(*Sicilian Opening.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (MR. AVERY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to Q. B. fourth
2. P. to Q. fourth	2. P. takes P.
3. K. Kt. to K. B. third	3. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third
4. Kt. takes P.	4. P. to K. third
5. Q. B. to K. third	5. K. Kt. to K. B. third
6. K. B. to Q. third	6. P. to Q. fourth
7. Kt. takes Q. Kt.	7. P. takes Kt.
8. P. to K. fifth	8. Kt. to Q. second
9. P. to K. B. fourth	9. Q. B. to Q. R. third
10. Castles ¹	10. B. takes B.
11. Q. takes B.	11. B. to Q. B. fourth
12. Kt. to Q. second	12. B. takes B. (check)
13. Q. takes B.	13. Q. to Q. Kt. third ²
14. Q. R. to K. square	14. Castles on K.'s side
15. P. to Q. Kt. third	15. P. to K. B. third
16. P. takes P.	16. K. R. takes P.
17. P. to K. Kt. third	17. Q. R. to K. B. square
18. K. to Kt. second	18. Q. takes Q.
19. Q. R. takes Q.	19. P. to K. Kt. third
20. K. B. to K. square	20. P. to K. fourth

21. K. R. to K. second ³	21. P. takes P.
22. Q. R. to K. seventh	22. Q. R. to K. B. second
23. P. takes P.	23. K. R. takes P.
24. Q. R. to K. eighth (ch.)	24. K. to Kt. second
25. Q. R. to Q. B. eighth	25. K. R. to K. B. third
26. Q. R. to Q. B. seventh	26. Kt. to K. B. square
27. K. R. to K. seventh	27. Q. R. takes R.
28. R. takes R. (check)	28. R. to K. B. second
29. R. to K. eighth	29. Kt. to Q. second
30. Kt. to K. B. third	30. R. to K. B. square
31. R. to K. seventh (check)	31. R. to B. second
32. R. to K. eighth	32. R. to K. B. square
33. R. to K. seventh (check)	33. R. to K. B. second

And the game was abandoned as a drawn battle.

¹ Much better than taking the Bishop, because that would have enabled Black, after he had checked with his Queen and regained the piece, to impede White's castling.

² This game of exchanging off all the pieces is rather favourable to the unseeing player.

³ Foreseeing that, by taking the proffered Pawn, he must have lost a piece.

GAME LXXVI.

FOURTH BOARD.—MR. KIPPING.

(*Scotch Gambit.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (MR. KIPPING.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. takes P.
4. K. B. to Q. B. fourth	4. K. B. to Q. B. fourth
5. Castles	5. P. to Q. third
6. P. to Q. B. third	6. Q. to K. B. third
7. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth ¹	7. Q. to K. Kt. third
8. P. takes P. ²	8. Q. Kt. takes P.
9. Kt. takes Kt.	9. Q. takes B.
10. P. to K. B. fourth	10. Q. to K. Kt. third
11. K. to R. square	11. Kt. to K. R. third

12. P. to K. R. third ³	12. Q. B. takes K. R. P.
13. P. takes B.	13. Q. takes K. P. (check)
14. Q. to K. B. third	14. Q. takes K. Kt.
15. K. R. to K. square (ch.)	15. K. to Q. second
16. Kt. to Q. R. third ⁴	16. B. takes Kt.
17. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)	17. P. to Q. B. third
18. P. takes B.	18. K. R. to K. square ⁵
19. Q. R. to Q. B. square	19. P. to Q. fourth
20. Q. to Q. Kt. third	20. K. to Q. B. second
21. B. to Q. third	21. K. R. to K. sixth
22. R. takes R.	22. Q. takes R.
23. R. to Q. Kt. square	23. Q. takes K. R. P. (ch.)
24. K. to K. Kt. square	24. P. to Q. Kt. third
25. R. to K. square	25. Q. to K. Kt. sixth (ch.)
26. K. to B. square	26. Q. takes P. (check)
27. K. to Kt. second	27. Q. to K. Kt. fourth (ch.)
28. K. to B. square	28. Kt. to Kt. fifth
29. R. to K. second	29. Kt. to K. sixth (check)

And White resigned.

¹ The proper move is "K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth." If Black answers with "Q. B. to Q. second," White, by taking Kt. with B., and P. with P. on the next move, will occupy the centre. If, however, Black takes P. with P., then the first player, by retaking P. with Q. Kt., will obtain a very strong attack. See the *German Handbook*, p. 112.

² We should again have preferred here "B. to Q. Kt. fifth."

³ The present move was the only instance in which Morphy was guilty of a miscalculation throughout the whole of this performance.

⁴ The commencement of a deep combination, which, however, could not save the game after the loss of Pawns and exposure of the King entailed by the slip on the 12th move. Besides, the strength of his opponent must be taken into consideration. Morphy very soon appears to have made up his mind to abandon this game, and direct his attention to the others.

⁵ "P. takes B." would have proved fatal, on account of White's answer "Q. takes Q. Kt. P. (check)."

GAME LXXVII.

FIFTH BOARD.—MR. RHODES.

(King's Gambit declined.)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (MR. RHODES.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. K. B. to Q. B. fourth
3. K. Kt. to K. B. third	3. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third
4. P. takes P.	4. P. to Q. fourth
5. P. takes P.	5. Q. takes P.
6. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third	6. Q. to Q. square
7. Q. Kt. to K. fourth	7. B. to Q. Kt. third
8. P. to Q. B. third	8. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
9. P. to Q. fourth	9. Q. to Q. fourth
10. Kt. to K. B. second	10. Q. Kt. takes K. P.*
11. Q. to K. second	11. Q. B. takes Kt.
12. P. takes B.	12. Q. takes K. B. P.
13. Q. takes Kt. (check)	13. K. to B. square
14. K. B. to K. second	14. Q. to Q. B. third
15. K. R. to K. Kt. square	15. P. to K. B. third
16. Q. to K. Kt. third	16. P. to K. Kt. third
17. Q. B. to K. third	17. Q. R. to K. square
18. K. to Q. second	18. K. Kt. to K. second
19. K. B. to Q. third	19. Q. to Q. second
20. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth	20. Kt. to Q. fourth
21. Q. R. to K. square	21. Kt. takes B.
22. B. takes Kt.	22. Q. to K. B. second
23. Kt. takes K. B. P.	23. R. takes R.
24. Q. takes R.	24. Q. takes Q. R. P.
25. Q. to K. eighth (check)	25. K. to Kt. second

And White gave mate in three moves.

* [Mr. Staunton here remarks, that this capture was made in the expectation, perhaps, that White would take with the Queen's Pawn, in which case Black, of course, must have gained a piece in return.—*Trans.*]

GAME LXXVIII.

SIXTH BOARD.—Dr. FREEMAN.

(King's Bishop's Game.)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Dr. FREEMAN.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. B. to Q. B. fourth	2. K. B. to Q. B. fourth
3. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	3. K. B. to Q. Kt. third
4. K. Kt. to K. B. third	4. P. to Q. third
5. P. to Q. fourth	5. P. takes P.
6. K. Kt. takes P.	6. K. Kt. to K. B. third
7. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third	7. Castles
8. Castles	8. Kt. takes K. P.
9. Kt. takes Kt.	9. P. to Q. fourth
10. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	10. Q. to K. square ¹
11. K. B. takes Q. P.	11. P. to Q. B. third
12. K. R. to K. square	12. Q. to Q. second
13. Kt. to K. B. sixth (ch.)	13. P. takes Kt.
14. Q. B. takes P.	14. Q. to Q. third ²
15. Kt. to K. sixth *	15. Q. B. takes Kt.
16. Q. to K. R. fifth	16. K. B. takes P. (check)
17. K. to R. square	17. Q. to K. B. fifth
18. R. takes Q. B.	18. Kt. to Q. second
19. Q. B. to Q. Kt. second	19. B. to Q. fifth
20. P. to K. Kt. third	20. Kt. to K. B. third
21. P. takes Q.	21. Kt. takes Q.
22. B. takes B.	22. Kt. takes K. B. P.
23. Q. R. to K. Kt. sq. (ch.)	23. Kt. to K. Kt. third
24. Q. R. takes Kt. (check)	24. K. R. P. takes R.
25. R. takes Kt. P. (check)	25. K. to K. R. second
26. R. to K. Kt. seventh (ch.)	26. K. to R. third
27. K. B. to K. fourth	27. P. to K. B. fourth
28. K. B. to Q. third	28. P. to Q. Kt. third
29. R. to K. Kt. third	29. K. R. to K. B. second
30. Q. B. to K. fifth	30. Q. R. to K. square
31. Q. B. to K. B. fourth (check)	31. K. to R. second
32. R. to K. Kt. fifth	32. Q. R. to K. eighth (ch.)
33. K. to Kt. second	33. K. R. to K. Kt. second
34. K. B. takes P. (check)	34. K. to R. square

35. P. to K. R. fourth	35. R. takes R. (check)
36. Q. B. takes R.	36. R. to K. square
37. K. to B. third	

And Black struck his colours.

¹ Black seems to be bewildered by his opponent's strength. We should think that "P. to K. B. third" was better play.

² If "P. takes B." White plays "Q. to K. R. fifth," and wins.

[We believe, that in this case, "R. to K. fifth" was the proper move; for, in answer to the move suggested by the author, Black could have played "Q. to K. Kt. fifth." If now, in reply to 15. "R. to K. fifth," Black plays "P. to K. R. third," White checks with R. on Kt. fifth, followed, if P. takes R., by "Q. to K. R. fifth," on the next move.—*Trans.*]

* [The German book finishes the game at this point, stating that it was ultimately won by White, as evidently Black could not have taken the Knight with K. B. P. on account of White's answer, "B. takes K. P. (check)"; nor could he have taken with Q. B., for White would have most effectually replied to it with "Q. to K. R. fifth." We give the game complete, and extract the following moves also from the above-named English paper.—*Trans.*]

GAME LXXIX.

SEVENTH BOARD.—MR. CARR.

(*Irregular Opening.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (MR. CARR.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. R. third ¹
2. P. to Q. fourth	2. P. to Q. R. fourth
3. K. B. to Q. third	3. P. to Q. Kt. third
4. K. Kt. to K. second	4. P. to K. third
5. Castles	5. Q. B. to Q. R. third
6. P. to Q. B. fourth	6. K. Kt. to K. B. third
7. P. to K. fifth	7. K. Kt. to K. R. second
8. P. to K. B. fourth	8. K. B. to K. second
9. K. Kt. to K. Kt. third	9. P. to Q. fourth
10. Q. to K. Kt. fourth	10. Castles
11. K. Kt. to K. R. fifth	11. P. to K. Kt. fourth ²
12. P. takes K. Kt. P.	12. K. R. P. takes P.
13. B. takes Kt. (check)	13. K. to R. square
14. Kt. to K. B. sixth	14. Q. P. takes P.

15. K. B. to Q. B. second	15. Q. takes P. (check)
16. Q. takes Q.	16. K. B. to Q. B. fourth
17. Q. takes B.	17. P. takes Q.
18. Q. B. takes K. Kt. P.	18. Kt. to Q. B. third
19. R. to K. B. third	19. K. to Kt. second
20. B. to K. R. sixth (check)	20. K. takes B.
21. R. to K. R. third (check)	21. K. to Kt. fourth
22. R. to K. R. fifth (check)	22. K. to K. B. fifth
23. K. to B. second	

And Black surrendered.

¹ This *bizarre* defence was adopted, we presume, with the notion, that it would embarrass the blindfold performer, but it only tended to facilitate his victory by enabling him to bring his forces more rapidly to the attack.

² What a deplorable game Black has now got by the vain attempt to perplex his adversary in the opening!

GAME LXXX.

EIGHTH BOARD.—Mr. WILLS.

(*Sicilian Opening.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Mr. WILLS.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to Q. B. fourth
2. K. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. takes P.
4. K. Kt. takes P.	4. P. to K. third
5. Q. B. to K. third	5. K. Kt. to K. B. third
6. K. B. to Q. third	6. P. to K. fourth
7. Kt. takes Q. Kt.	7. Q. Kt. P. takes Kt.
8. Castles	8. P. to Q. third
9. P. to K. B. fourth	9. P. takes P.
10. Q. B. takes K. B. P.	10. K. B. to K. second
11. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third	11. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square
12. P. to K. fifth	12. P. takes P.
13. Q. B. takes P.	13. Q. R. to Q. Kt. fifth
14. Q. to K. B. third	14. Q. to Q. Kt. third (ch.)
15. K. to R. square	15. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth

16. Q. to K. B. second	16. Q. takes Q.
17. K. R. takes Q.	17. K. B. to Q. B. fourth
18. K. R. to K. B. square	18. K. B. to K. second
19. P. to Q. R. third	19. Q. R. to Q. Kt. second
20. Q. Kt. to K. fourth	20. Q. B. to Q. second
21. Kt. takes Kt. (check)	21. P. takes Kt.
22. Q. B. takes P.	22. B. takes B.
23. R. takes B.	23. R. takes P.
24. Q. R. to K. square (ch.)	24. B. to K. third
25. B. to K. B. fifth	25. K. to K. second
26. K. R. to K. R. sixth	26. K. R. to Q. Kt. square
27. B. takes B.	27. Q. R. to Q. Kt. eighth
28. Q. R. to K. Kt. square	28. P. takes B.
29. R. takes K. R. P. (check)	29. K. to Q. third
30. R. takes Q. R. P.	30. R. takes R. (check)
31. K. takes R.	31. R. to Q. Kt. eighth (ch.)
32. K. to K. B. second	32. R. to Q. Kt. seventh
33. P. to K. R. fourth	33. B. takes Q. B. P. (check)
34. K. to K. B. third	34. K. to K. fourth
35. P. to K. R. fifth	35. K. to K. B. fourth
36. P. to K. R. sixth	36. R. to Q. seventh
37. P. to K. R. seventh	

And Black resigned.

NOTES.

A.

The assemblage of English Chess players, formerly known as the "Northern and Midlands Counties Chess Association," and now as the "British Chess Association," held their fifth annual meeting from the 24th to the 28th of August, 1858, in Queen's College, Birmingham, and was opened on the first-mentioned day for business transactions by the President of the Birmingham Chess club, Thomas Avery, Esq. Lord Lyttelton was re-elected President, and Viscount Cremorne and Sir John Blunden, Vice-Presidents of the Association. It was resolved that Worcester should be the place of meeting for the next year. The Tournament was then arranged, in which several players of great repute participated. Amongst them, and other visitors of renown we only mention Messrs. Staunton, Boden,

Löwenthal, Falkbeer, St. Amant, Bird, Hampton, Brien, Rev. G. Salmon, and Kipping.

B.

As to the refusal of Paul Morphy to take part in the Tournament of the Association, we will not inquire whether it was his intention to avoid meeting certain adversaries, or whether his position relative to Staunton influenced him, or what other motives may have determined him. We rest satisfied with the declaration in his Magazine, the *Chess Monthly*, which says that, there were certain motives which will be made public. The following are the words given by his co-editor, Mr. Fiske.

"Concerning Mr. Morphy's refusal to participate in the Tournament at Birmingham, we are authorised to say that his reasons were such as will satisfy his admirers everywhere, and that they will soon be made public."

This refusal proves at least strength of character, which may easily be reconciled with the chivalrous sentiment of the young master, and which is not an isolated example in his career.

C.

Eleven players of reputation had entered the lists of the Tournament and in order to complete the number of sixteen, five other players were added. The following were drawn against each other:—

1. Falkbeer	<i>versus</i>	Ingleby.
2. Staunton	"	Hughes.
3. Löwenthal	"	Kipping.
(4. Morphy	"	Smith.)
5. Brien	"	Bird.
6. Rev. G. Salmon	"	Szabo.
7. "Alter"	"	Hampton.
8. St. Amant	"	Beetlestone.

The players 4 and 5 did not meet, as Morphy did not appear, and Mr. Bird was called to London on pressing business.* As to the others, the first named won two games each, so that in the second tourney they were drawn as follows:—

1. Löwenthal	<i>versus</i>	Staunton.
2. Brien	"	Smith.
3. "Alter"	"	Rev. G. Salmon.
4. Falkbeer	"	St. Amant.

In this round, Messrs. Löwenthal, "Alter," Falkbeer, and Brien, came off the conquerors, the first two by winning two games, their opponents scoring none; Falkbeer by winning two games to

* [This statement is not quite correct, Messrs. Bird and Brien had actually played two games, each scoring one, when Mr. Bird was summoned to London by telegraphic message on important business, thus being compelled to resign in favour of his opponent.—*Trans.*]

his opponent's one, and Brien through the resignation of his antagonist. The third tourney was played out afterwards in London, in which Löwenthal and Falkbeer were the successful competitors over "Alter" and Brien. The decisive battle was fought between Löwenthal and Falkbeer, and terminated in favour of the former after an obstinate struggle, by three games to one, and four drawn games. The first prize consisted of sixty guineas, the second of twenty. It is to be remarked that the winner of the first prize (Herr Löwenthal) only lost one game out of fifteen which he played, and the winner of the second prize (Herr Falkbeer) only five out of nineteen games.

D.

The opponents of Morphy in his blindfold play were:—1. Lord Lyttelton, President of the Association.—2. Rev. G. Salmon, the best player in Ireland.—3. J. S. Kipping, Esq., Secretary of the Manchester Chess Club, and a very strong player.—4. Thomas Avery, Esq., President of the Birmingham Chess Club.—5. J. Carr, Esq., Secretary of the Leamington Club.—6. Dr. James Freeman, former President of the Birmingham Club.—7. Rhodes, Esq., a distinguished member of the Leeds Club.—8. W. R. Wills, Esq., Secretary of the Association. After four or five hours play, Morphy only lost one game against Kipping, drew one against Avery, and won six. He sat at one end of the room, and at eight tables at the other end were his opponents, with their Chess boards before them. The eyes of our hero were directed towards the window opposite to him, his arm carelessly thrown over a chair near him, and thus he gave move after move, following the numbers of the boards. The eight different games were all impressed on his memory, as can be clearly seen by a careful examination. We cannot attach any weight to the assertion made by some correspondents unacquainted with Chess, that the blindfold player corrected some false moves which were reported to him, in consequence of an accidental disarrangement of the pieces, as this would prove a great weakness on the part of his adversaries, a presumption which their names do not allow us to entertain. The quickness, however, of the blindfold player's answers, and the depth of his manœuvres, deserve the highest commendation.

E.

The general opinion of the congregated spectators, was, that in the course of a century, only one or two minds could be found capable of achieving such feats. Although we do not exactly coincide with this opinion, being convinced that, comparatively, many players could perform the same, if only possessing some imagination, and the necessary power of will, still we must do full justice to the merit of the young American's performance, taking into consideration the intrinsic value and correctness of his play as well as the strength of his opponents. An English paper, speaking of the performances of Morphy, says, "that as an evidence of a strong memory and intel-

lectual power, this production has, perhaps, never been surpassed." Morphy had not only the whole series of moves of the eight games in his head, but he also played them in a masterly style, which is but evident by his victories over strong players, such as the Rev. G. Salmon and Mr. Rhodes. Besides, his combinations, by their soundness and depth, produced general astonishment, and the performance, at its termination, made upon those present an impression of the miraculous and the incredible.

We willingly subscribe to the opinions of the English periodical, the *Press* :—

"Perhaps his most wonderful performances have been those in which memory and imagination seem to work together—we mean games played blindfold, or without sight of the board. Philidor played three such games at once successfully against skilful antagonists. Harrwitz has more recently done the same. Mr. Morphy has played seven simultaneously, losing only one, and winning the other six! This is indeed astonishing; but we trust our ingenious visitor will be content with having once done the feat. As Dr. Johnson said of a young lady's masterpiece of fingering on the pianoforte, 'It is very difficult; we wish it were impossible.' Sure we are that not even Mr. Morphy's brains can repeatedly endure such a strain without injury. A less degree of the same effort killed La Bourdonnais, and had nearly destroyed Harrwitz. And even could it be made with impunity, the spectacle is rather curious than pleasing. We feel sure we shall be pardoned for these remarks; they arise from a sincere wish that Mr. Morphy may long live to practice freely and without arbitrary fetters, the art of which he is so distinguished a professor."

F.

After some preliminary remarks upon the affairs of the association, the national codification of Chess laws, and the collection of good games, the following has been reported in an English paper :—

"Lord Lyttelton accorded a welcome to Birmingham, and a most hearty welcome too, to their young and distinguished visitor, Mr. Morphy. (Much applause.) His lordship then, in glowing terms, paid a tribute to the extraordinary merit of Mr. Morphy as a Chess player, and characterized his feat of playing eight antagonists at one time, as the most wonderful thing he had ever beheld. He trusted that Mr. Morphy would be successful in all his games but one, while absent from his native land; and that one his Lordship, amidst much laughter, trusted would be won by the veteran English player, Staunton. The noble President concluded by expressing his willingness to lend his aid on all occasions to the promotion of all matters connected with Chess." (Loud cheers.)

Mr. Morphy then expressed his deep sense of gratitude for the cordial wishes of the President, as well as for his reception by the Association. In conclusion, speeches were delivered by Messrs. Avery, Staunton, Salmon, and other gentlemen.

G.

We give, in conclusion, a list of the notable games played by the young master during his stay in England, in the months of July and August.

A. Even games against	<i>lost</i>	<i>won</i>	<i>drawn</i>
Barnes	7	— 19	—
Löwenthal	3	— 9	— 2
Bird	1	— 10	— 1
Boden	1	— 5	— 3
"Alter"	1	— 4	—
Löwe	—	6	—
Medley	—	3	—
Mongredien	—	2	—
Hampton	—	2	—
Kipping	—	2	—
At the odds of Pawn and move.			
"Alter"	—	5	— 2
C. Blindfold games played at the same time.			
Eight Opponents.	1	— 6	— 1
D. Consultation games.			
Löwenthal and Ally.	—	—	2
Staunton and Ally	—	2	—
E. Out of a good many games played at the odds of Knight or Rook, he lost none.			

CHAPTER XI.

PAUL MORPHY IN PARIS.

HIS RECEPTION IN THE CAFÉ DE LA RÉGENCE, AND
HIS BLINDFOLD PERFORMANCE.

IMMEDIATELY after his short visit to Birmingham, PAUL MORPHY left Great Britain for France, and arrived in Paris in the beginning of September, accompanied by Mr. FREDERIC EDGE. (A)

A similar reception to that which the young hero experienced in his native town, New Orleans, after his triumphs in New York, awaited him after his achievements on British soil on the part of the oldest and most honourable Chess society of Europe. In the Chess circle of the *Café de la Régence* he was to find a grateful arena for the exhibition of his astonishing genius, on the very scene which attracted the former champions of European Chess chivalry, and where in the newly restored saloons the spirits of a Philidor, Deschapelles, and Labourdonnais, still seemed to hover. (B) The shades of these departed heroes had probably never welcomed a more worthy successor in their noble art, one who not only made the most profound combinations with the board before him, but also without the sight of it, and thus richly idemnified the Parisian Chess circles, for a long intermission. More than all his single victories over French masters, however, his blindfold play attracted the attention of the Gallic Chess spirit, and produced a general enthusiasm. (C)

It was on Monday, the 27th of September at mid-day, that PAUL MORPHY began his blindfold fight single handed against eight adversaries at the same time. They were the following : Messrs. BAUCHER, BIERWIRTH, BORNEMANN, GUIBERT, LEQUESNE, POTIER, PRETI, and SÉGUIN. Messrs. BAUCHER, BIERWIRTH, and SÉGUIN enjoy the reputation of first-rate Chess players, whilst the others are considered only a degree less strong, that is about pawn and move.

The sitting lasted ten hours, and during the whole time the common adversary not only played correctly without making a single mistake, but surprised the very players who had the boards before them, by deep and brilliant combinations, which he carried out with the utmost assurance.

Messrs. PRETI and POTIER were the first to surrender; it was then about seven o'clock. The next two were Messrs. BAUCHER and BIERWIRTH. At nine o'clock Mr. LEQUESNE proposed a drawn game and rejoiced at its acceptance. M. BORNEMANN gave in next, and then Mr. GUIBERT made a drawn game. Thus but one opponent remained, viz., M. SÉGUIN, and the game then went on so rapidly, that the gentlemen who carried the moves from one room to the other could scarcely follow. When the clock struck ten, the last opponent surrendered. Thereupon followed a thunder of applause, which continued so long that the young transatlantic master was in the literal sense of the word stunned by it.

The games which if played over the board would do honour to a first-rate Chess player, were the following.

EIGHT GAMES, SIMULTANEOUSLY PLAYED BY PAUL MORPHY
IN PARIS, WITHOUT SEEING THE BOARD.

GAME LXXXI.

FIRST BOARD.—M. BAUCHER.

(*Philidor's Defence.*)

White. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. Kt. to K. B. third
3. P. to Q. fourth
4. Q. takes P.
5. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
6. B. takes Kt.
7. B. to K. Kt. fifth
8. B. to K. R. fourth

Black. (M. BAUCHER.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to Q. third
3. P. takes P.
4. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third
5. Q. B. to Q. second
6. B. takes B.
7. P. to K. B. third
8. Kt. to K. R. third

9. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third	9. K. B. to K. second
10. Castles on K.'s side	10. Castles
11. Q. to Q. B. fourth (ch.)	11. K. to R. square
12. K. Kt. to Q. fourth	12. Q. to Q. second
13. Q. R. to Q. square	13. K. R. to K. B. second
14. P. to K. B. fourth	14. P. to Q. R. fourth
15. P. to K. B. fifth	15. K. R. to K. B. square ¹
16. K. Kt. to K. sixth	16. K. R. to K. Kt. square
17. P. to Q. R. fourth	17. Kt. to Kt. fifth
18. Q. to K. second	18. Kt. to K. fourth
19. B. to K. Kt. third	19. Q. to Q. B. square
20. B. takes Kt.	20. Q. P. takes B.
21. K. R. to K. B. third	21. Q. B. to Q. second ²
22. K. R. to K. R. third	22. P. to K. R. third ³
23. Q. to Q. second	23. K. to R. second
24. Q. takes Q. B.	24. B. to Q. third
25. K. R. takes K. R. P. (ch.)	25. K. takes R.
26. R. to Q. third	26. K. to R. fourth
27. Q. to K. B. seventh (ch.)	

And wins; the battle having lasted about seven hours.

¹ Black has made some useless moves and thus enabled his opponent to gain a strong attack, which is now followed up with the usual brilliancy of the young champion.

² Black now in vain tries to exchange the pieces. This last move instead of which he ought to have played "B. to K. square," involves the loss of a piece.

³ The confined position of the Black King leads to a very neat termination. Had he now played "R. to K. square," White could have easily won by "Q. to K. R. fifth."

GAME LXXXII.

SECOND BOARD.—M. BIERWIRTH.

(*French Opening.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black</i> (M. BIERWIRTH.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. third
2. P. to Q. fourth	2. P. to Q. B. third
3. K. B. to Q. third	3. P. to Q. fourth

4. P. takes P.	4. K. P. takes P.
5. K. Kt. to K. B. third	5. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
6. Castles	6. K. B. to Q. third
7. P. to K. R. third	7. Q. B. to K. R. fourth
8. Q. B. to K. third	8. Q. Kt. to Q. second
9. K. R. to K. square	9. K. Kt. to K. second
10. Q. Kt. to Q. second	10. Q. B. takes Kt.
11. Kt. takes B.	11. P. to K. R. third
12. Q. to Q. second	12. Q. to Q. B. second
13. P. to Q. B. fourth	13. P. takes P.
14. K. B. takes P.	14. P. to K. B. fourth
15. Kt. to K. fifth	15. Castles on Q.'s side
16. K. B. to K. sixth	16. B. takes Kt.
17. P. takes B.	17. K. to Q. Kt. square
18. Q. to B. third	18. Q. Kt. to Q. Kt. third ¹
19. Q. to Q. R. third	19. Q. Kt. to Q. B. square
20. Q. R. to Q. B. square	20. P. to K. Kt. fourth
21. P. to K. B. fourth	21. P. takes P.
22. Q. B. takes P.	22. Q. R. to Q. fifth
23. Q. to K. third	23. Q. R. to K. fifth
24. Q. to K. B. third	24. Q. to Q. Kt. third (ch.)
25. K. to K. R. second	25. Q. R. takes R.
26. R. takes R.	26. Q. to Q. Kt. fifth
27. R. to K. second	27. K. Kt. to K. Kt. third
28. Q. B. to Q. second	28. Q. to Q. Kt. fourth
29. K. B. takes Kt.	29. R. takes B.
30. B. takes K. R. P.	30. R. to K. R. square
31. B. to K. Kt. seventh	31. R. to K. R. second
32. B. to K. B. sixth	32. R. to K. B. second
33. Q. to K. R. fifth	33. Kt. to K. B. fifth
34. Q. takes R.	

And Black surrenders, after a struggle of nearly nine hours.²

¹ If "Kt. takes K. P.," White answers with "Q. B. to K. B. fourth."

² It is obvious that Black cannot now take the Rook, on account of "Q. to K. eighth (check)," followed by checkmate on the next move.

GAME LXXXIII.

THIRD BOARD.—M. BORNEMANN.

*(King's Gambit declined.)**White.* (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth
3. K. Kt. to K. B. third
4. P. to Q. B. third
5. K. B. to Q. B. fourth
6. P. takes P.
7. Q. takes B.
8. P. to Q. third
9. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
10. Q. Kt. to Q. second
11. Castles on Q.'s side
12. Kt. to K. B. square
13. Kt. to K. third
14. Q. B. to K. R. fourth
15. Q. B. to K. Kt. third
16. Kt. to Q. fifth
17. P. to Q. fourth
18. P. takes P.
19. K. R. to K. B. square
20. K. B. to Q. Kt. third
21. Q. to K. third
22. P. takes P.
23. Kt. to Q. Kt. sixth (ch.)
24. K. B. to K. sixth
25. K. R. to K. B. seventh
26. K. to Q. Kt. square
27. Q. R. to Q. B. sq. (ch.)
28. K. B. takes Q. (check)
29. P. to Q. fifth
30. P. takes Kt.
31. P. takes Q. R. (check)

Black. (M. BORNEMANN.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. B. to Q. B. fourth
3. P. to Q. third
4. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
5. K. Kt. to K. B. third
6. B. takes Kt.
7. P. takes P.
8. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third
9. P. to Q. R. third
10. B. to K. second
11. Q. to Q. second
12. Castles on Q.'s side
13. P. to K. R. third
14. P. to K. Kt. fourth
15. Q. R. to K. B. square
16. K. Kt. to K. square
17. P. takes P.
18. B. to Q. square
19. K. Kt. to Q. third
20. K. Kt. to Q. Kt. fourth
21. P. to K. B. fourth¹
22. R. takes P.
23. P. takes Kt.
24. Q. R. to Q. fourth
25. Q. Kt. to K. second
26. K. R. to K. square
27. K. Kt. to Q. B. second
28. Q. R. takes B.
29. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third
30. K. R. takes Q.

And Black gives up the battle, after fighting for above nine hours.

¹ An error, which occasions the loss of the Queen. It is clear that White has anticipated his opponent's endeavours to advance the King's Bishop's Pawn.

GAME LXXXIV.

FOURTH BOARD.—M. GUIBERT.

*(Irregular Opening.)**White.* (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. takes P.
3. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third
4. P. to Q. fourth
5. K. Kt. to K. B. third
6. K. B. to Q. third
7. Castles
8. Q. B. to K. third
9. K. Kt. to K. fifth
10. P. to K. B. fourth
11. Q. Kt. to K. fourth
12. Q. B. to K. B. second
13. P. to Q. B. third
14. Q. to K. B. third
15. Q. R. to K. square¹
16. Q. P. takes B.
17. Q. B. to Q. B. fifth
18. Kt. to Q. sixth (check)
19. Q. B. takes Kt.
20. Q. to K. Kt. third²
21. Q. R. to Q. square
22. Q. R. to Q. second
23. Q. to K. Kt. fourth
24. K. B. takes Kt.
25. Q. to K. B. third
26. K. to R. square
27. P. to Q. B. fourth
28. P. to K. Kt. third
29. Q. to Q. B. third
30. K. R. to Q. square
31. K. to K. Kt. square
32. Q. to Q. R. third
33. B. takes Q. B. P.
34. B. to Q. sixth

Black. (M. GUIBERT.)

1. P. to Q. fourth
2. Q. takes P.
3. Q. to Q. square
4. P. to K. third
5. K. B. to Q. third
6. K. Kt. to K. second
7. P. to K. R. third
8. P. to Q. B. third
9. Q. Kt. to Q. second
10. Q. Kt. to K. B. third
11. K. Kt. to K. B. fourth
12. K. B. to Q. B. second
13. Q. Kt. to Q. fourth
14. Q. to K. second
15. K. B. takes Kt.
16. P. to K. R. fourth
17. Q. to Q. square
18. Kt. takes Kt.
19. P. to K. Kt. third
20. Kt. to K. second
21. B. to Q. second
22. P. to K. R. fifth
23. Kt. to K. B. fourth
24. K. P. takes Kt.
25. Q. to Q. Kt. third (ch.)
26. Castles on Q.'s side
27. P. to K. R. sixth
28. B. to K. third
29. Q. R. to Q. second
30. P. to Q. B. fourth
31. K. R. to Q. square
32. P. to Q. R. third
33. Q. to Q. B. third³
34. P. to K. B. third

35. Q. R. to Q. fifth ⁴	35. B. takes R.
36. R. takes B.	36. R. takes B.
37. P. takes R.	37. K. to Kt. square
38. Q. to Q. third	38. R. takes P.
39. Q. to Q. second	39. R. takes R.
40. P. takes R.	40. Q. to Q. B. fourth (ch.)
41. K. to B. square	41. Q. to Q. B. fifth (check)
42. K. to B. second	42. Q. to Q. B. fourth (ch.)

And the game was declared drawn, having lasted about nine hours.

¹ Observe the rapid development of White's forces.

² Threatening to take K. Kt. P. with B.

³ From this point Black played exceedingly well throughout the game.

⁴ A beautiful move indeed! Mr. Staunton here justly observes:—"Admirably played,—and this blindfold, and with the thousand shifting combinations of seven other games to keep in mind! Verily it make one's brain ache, only to think of the strain."

LXXXV.

FIFTH BOARD.—M. LEQUESNE.

(*Fianchetto di Donna.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (M. LEQUESNE.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to Q. Kt. third
2. P. to Q. fourth	2. Q. B. to Q. Kt. second
3. K. B. to Q. third	3. P. to K. third
4. K. Kt. to K. R. third	4. K. Kt. to K. second
5. Castles	5. P. to Q. fourth
6. P. to K. fifth	6. K. Kt. to Q. B. third
7. P. to Q. B. third	7. K. B. to K. second
8. P. to K. B. fourth	8. P. to K. Kt. third
9. P. to K. Kt. fourth	9. P. to K. R. fourth
10. P. takes P.	10. K. R. takes P.
11. Q. to K. Kt. fourth	11. K. R. to R. fifth
12. Q. to K. Kt. third	12. K. to Q. second
13. Q. Kt. to Q. second	13. Q. to K. R. square
14. K. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth	14. K. Kt. to Q. square

15. Q. Kt. to K. B. third	15. K. B. takes K. Kt.
16. P. takes B.	16. K. R. to K. R. sixth
17. Q. to K. Kt. second	17. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third
18. Q. B. to Q. second	18. Q. Kt. to K. second
19. Q. R. to Q. B. square	19. Q. R. to Q. B. square
20. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	20. P. to Q. R. third
21. P. to Q. R. fourth	21. Q. to K. R. fourth
22. Kt. to K. square	22. Kt. to K. B. fourth
23. K. R. to K. B. third	23. K. R. to R. fifth
24. K. R. to K. B. fourth	24. R. takes R.
25. Q. B. takes R.	25. P. to Q. B. fourth
26. Q. Kt. P. takes P.	26. P. takes P.
27. R. to Q. Kt. square	27. P. to Q. B. fifth
28. K. B. takes Kt.	28. K. Kt. P. takes B.
29. Kt. to Q. B. second	29. B. to Q. B. third
30. P. to K. R. fifth	30. Q. to K. R. fifth
31. Q. to K. Kt. third	31. Q. to K. R. fourth
32. Q. to K. Kt. second	32. Q. to K. R. fifth

At this point, neither party being disposed to vary his moves, the game was resigned as a DRAWN BATTLE.

GAME LXXXVI.

SIXTH BOARD.—M. POTIER.

(*Petroff Defence.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (M. POTIER.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. Kt. to K. B. third	2. K. Kt. to K. B. third
3. K. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. Kt. takes K. P.
4. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third	4. K. Kt. to K. B. third
5. Kt. takes K. P.	5. P. to Q. fourth
6. K. B. to Q. Kt. third	6. K. B. to K. second
7. P. to Q. fourth	7. P. to Q. B. third
8. Castles	8. Q. Kt. to Q. second
9. P. to K. B. fourth	9. Q. Kt. to Q. Kt. third
10. Q. to K. B. third	10. P. to K. R. fourth
11. P. to K. B. fifth	11. Q. to Q. B. second

12. Q. B. to K. B. fourth	12. K. B. to Q. third
13. Q. R. to K. square	13. K. to B. square
14. Q. to K. Kt. third	14. P. to Q. R. fifth
15. K. Kt. to Kt. sixth (ch.)	15. K. to Kt. square
16. Q. B. takes B.	16. P. takes Q.
17. Q. B. takes Q.	17. P. takes Kt.
18. K. B. P. takes P.	18. P. takes K. R. P. (check)
19. K. to R. square	19. B. to K. Kt. fifth
20. Q. B. to K. seventh	20. Q. Kt. to Q. second
21. Q. B. to K. fifth	21. K. to B. square
22. Q. R. to K. B. seventh (check)	22. K. to Kt. square
23. Kt. takes Q. P.	23. P. takes Kt.
24. K. B. takes P.	24. Q. Kt. to Q. Kt. third
25. K. B. to Q. Kt. third	
- And Black abandons the game.

GAME LXXXVII.

SEVENTH BOARD.—M. PRETI.

(*Sicilian Opening.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (M. PRETI.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to Q. B. fourth
2. P. to Q. fourth	2. P. takes P.
3. K. Kt. to K. B. third	3. P. to K. fourth
4. K. B. to Q. B. fourth	4. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)
5. P. to Q. B. third	5. P. takes P.
6. P. takes P.	6. K. B. to Q. B. fourth
7. Kt. takes P.	7. Q. to K. B. third
8. K. B. takes K. B. P. (ch.)	8. K. to B. square
9. K. Kt. to Q. third	9. K. B. to Q. Kt. third
10. K. B. to Q. Kt. third	10. P. to Q. third
11. Q. B. to Q. R. third	11. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third
12. Castles	12. K. Kt. to K. R. third
13. P. to K. fifth	13. Q. to K. Kt. third
14. K. Kt. to K. B. fourth	14. Q. to K. Kt. fifth
15. K. Kt. to K. sixth (ch.)	15. Q. B. takes Kt.

16. Q. takes Q. P. (check)	16. K. to B. second
17. Q. to Q. seventh (check)	17. K. to K. Kt. third
18. K. B. takes B.	18. Q. to K. Kt. fourth
19. K. B. to Q. fifth	19. Q. Kt. takes K. P.
20. K. B. to K. fourth (ch.)	20. K. Kt. to K. B. fourth
21. Q. to K. sixth (check)	21. Q. to K. B. third
22. K. B. takes Kt. (check)	22. K. to K. R. fourth
23. P. to K. Kt. fourth (ch.)	23. K. takes P.
24. K. B. takes Kt. (check)	

And Black surrenders.

GAME LXXXVIII.

EIGHTH BOARD.—M. SÉGUIN.

(*Philidor's Defence.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (M. SÉGUIN.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. Kt. to K. B. third	2. P. to Q. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. takes P.
4. K. Kt. takes P.	4. K. Kt. to K. B. third
5. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third	5. K. B. to K. second
6. K. B. to Q. third	6. Castles
7. P. to K. B. fourth	7. P. to Q. B. fourth
8. K. Kt. to K. B. third	8. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third
9. Castles	9. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
10. Q. B. to K. third	10. P. to Q. R. third
11. P. to Q. R. fourth	11. P. to K. R. third
12. P. to K. R. third	12. Q. B. takes Kt.
13. Q. takes B.	13. Q. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth
14. Q. R. to Q. square	14. Q. to Q. B. second
15. P. to Q. Kt. third	15. Q. Kt. takes B.
16. P. takes Kt.	16. K. R. to K. square
17. P. to Q. fourth	17. Q. to Q. B. third
18. P. takes Q. B. P.	18. P. takes P.
19. P. to K. fifth	19. Q. takes Q.
20. K. R. takes Q.	20. Kt. to K. R. second
21. Q. R. to Q. seventh	21. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square

22. Kt. to Q. fifth	22. B. to K. B. square
23. B. to K. B. second	23. K. R. to Q. square
24. Kt. to Q. Kt. sixth	24. R. takes R.
25. Kt. takes R.	25. R. to Q. B. square
26. R. to Q. B. third	26. R. to Q. B. second
27. Kt. takes B.	27. Kt. takes Kt.
28. R. takes P.	28. R. takes R.
29. B. takes R.	29. Kt. to K. third
30. B. to K. third	30. P. to K. Kt. third
31. P. to K. Kt. fourth	31. Kt. to Q. square
32. K. to K. B. second	32. Kt. to Q. B. third
33. K. to K. second	33. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
34. P. takes P.	34. P. takes P.
35. K. to Q. third	35. K. to B. square
36. B. to Q. B. fifth (check)	36. K. to K. square
37. K. to K. fourth	37. K. to Q. second
38. K. to Q. fifth	38. Kt. to Q. square
39. P. to K. B. fifth	39. P. takes P.
40. P. takes P.	40. P. to K. R. fourth
41. B. to Q. Kt. sixth	41. Kt. to Q. Kt. second
42. P. to K. sixth (check) ¹	42. P. takes P.
43. P. takes P. (check)	43. K. to K. second
44. K. to Q. B. sixth	44. Kt. to Q. square (check)
45. B. takes Kt. (check)	45. K. takes B.
46. K. to Q. sixth	46. K. to K. square
47. P. to K. seventh	

And M. Séguin gave in.

¹ Mr. Staunton here very properly remarks :—"Every step is made with the same precision by Mr. Morphy, in this the conclusion of the last game, after ten hours of unexampled mental tension, which he exhibited in the outset of the first *partie*."

NOTES.

A.

The *American Monthly* reports in its October number, p. 316 :—

"Mr. Morphy left for Paris on August 31, accompanied by Mr. Edge. This gentleman deserves the thanks of Mr. Morphy and of

the American Chess public, for his kindness in relieving our countryman from many of the annoyances to which a stranger in a foreign land is more or less subjected. He was one of the most efficient Secretaries of our Congress last year."

The *Era*, September 12, has the following:—

"The reputation which Mr. Morphy has achieved both in America and England, naturally made his visit to the French capital one of no small attention to the circle of players congregating at the Café de la Régence. His victory over Mr. Löwenthal and every other player here with whom he has measured swords, has made us also anxious to learn his doings in Paris, and we have been furnished through his friend Mr. Edge, who has accompanied him to France, with some interesting particulars."

B.

A few years ago, in order to execute some of those vast municipal improvements which the present French Emperor has effected in his stately capital, it became necessary to destroy the old Café de la Régence. This coffee-house had been, for more than a century, the resort of French Chess players. There Grosménil and Legalle had played; there in the next generation Philidor and the *Amateurs* were wont to meet; there Deschappelles and Labourdonnais had, successively set up their thrones. The portrait of the great Musician and Chess player still hung upon its venerable walls; the table at which he played was still preserved with care and exhibited with pride. But the ruthless, but beneficial hand of reform laid the time-honored building low, and a new structure, glittering with the splendor of modern architecture, has since arisen. The proprietor of this new Café de la Régence has attached Mr. Harrwitz to his establishment, and, for some time past the distinguished Prussian has been ever ready to meet and to conquer all comers. Rivière, Journoud, Laroche, and the veteran Lecrivain still frequent the Régence, and St. Amant, although he rarely plays, is sometimes to be seen within its walls. Rivière's periodical, *La Régence*, ceased with the beginning of 1857. In the month of August, 1857, Mr. Harrwitz began a Chess column in the *Journal du Plaisir*, but the newspaper itself lived only a few weeks. Since Mr. Morphy's arrival in Europe, St. Amant has commenced a series of weekly articles in *Le Sport*, and Rivière has resumed the publication of an occasional Chess paragraph in *L'Illustration*.

After thus representing the scene of French Chess performances, the *American Monthly* makes the following remarks:—

"Behold our young hero in the Café de la Régence! Can we not imagine the shades of Legalle and Philidor, of Bernard and Carlier, of Deschappelles and Labourdonnais looking down with delight upon the youthful inheritor of their laurels? Does not the spirit of Franklin rejoice as he watches this representative of America—less of a philosopher, perhaps, but infinitely more of a Chess player than

himself—revengeing the defeats which the tamer of the lightning was compelled to undergo in this very same Café de la Régence nearly a century ago? Nor does the past welcome him with greater joy than the present. St. Amant says:—"The advent of young Morphy will awaken the slumbering genius of Chess. He will unfold to the votaries of the game its traditional beauties, and will open a new field for the labors of the imagination. He is a citizen of the great Republic of the West, who comes over the waters to snatch the sceptre of triumphant genius from the grasp of astonished Europe." Révière writes of him in words of equal admiration. Crowds flock to the Café de la Régence to see him. "Does any one believe," exclaims St. Amant, "that it is not the season, and that there is nobody in Paris? Let them go to the Café de la Régence and glance at the throng of spectators who look on in admiration, while Morphy, the young American, displays his wonderful attainments." "The desire to obtain places to overlook the play," says a French journal, "is very great. The Americans, as is natural, claim the seats nearest their countryman. The English visitors dispute the privilege with them, and our old *habitués* are not backward in asserting their rights." Honors are showered upon the head of the eminent champion. Famous sculptors, like Lequesne, ask him to sit for his bust in marble; he is invited to dine with Dukes; audiences notice his visits to the theatre; and poets and men of genius flatter him. And amid all this, Gallic pride, which would else feel sore at his repeated victories, exults in the fact that he is half a Frenchman."

C.

The feat of playing eight games at once without seeing the boards, appears to have created even more excitement in the French capital than it did in Birmingham. It is described by "Malakoff," the clever Paris correspondent of the *New York Times*, as follows:—

"The astounding performances of young Paul Morphy have brought the excitement in the Chess-playing world of this city up to white heat. On Monday last he played against, and beat, blindfolded, eight of the best players of Paris at one time! The Café de la Régence, at which this extraordinary feat occurred, has two large rooms on the ground floor. In the first room, which is full of marble tables, were seated the eight adversaries of Mr. Morphy. In the second room, in which are two billiard tables, was seated the single player. A large portion of this room, including the billiard tables, was shut off from the crowd by a cord, and behind the tables, in a large arm-chair, sat Mr. Morphy, with his back nearly directly to the crowd. Two gentlemen, reporting for the press, kept the games, and two other gentlemen, Messrs. Journoud and Arnous de Rivière, cried out the moves, or rather carried them from one room to the other. The adversaries of Mr. Morphy were Messrs. Baucher, Bierwith, Bornemann, Guibert, Lequesne (the distinguished sculptor), Potier, Preti, and

Séguin. They were all either old or middle-aged men, and superior players, while Mr. Morphy is but twenty-one years of age. The boards of the eight players were numbered 1, 2, 3, &c., in the order in which I have given the names of the gentlemen. At half-past twelve o'clock the games commenced, Mr. Morphy playing first, and calling out the same move for all the eight boards, "P. to K. fourth." The games were conducted in French, Mr. Morphy speaking French perfectly. At seven o'clock No. 7 was beaten with an unlooked-for checkmate. Soon after eight o'clock, No 6 abandoned the game as hopeless, and, half an hour later, M. Lequesne, No. 5 played for and gained a draw game. Nos. 1, 2, and 3 were soon after beaten. At ten o'clock, No. 4 made the blind player accept a drawn game, but it was half-past ten o'clock before M. Séguin, No. 8, a very old gentleman, who contended with great desperation, was beaten. Thus he beat six, while two, who acted on the defensive and only sought a drawn game, effected their purpose, but a drawn game under such circumstances ought to be considered equivalent to a defeat.

"During the entire games, which lasted just ten hours, Mr. Morphy sat with his knees and eyes against the bare wall, never once rising or looking towards the audience, nor even taking a particle of drink or other refreshment. His only movements were those of crossing his legs from side to side, and occasionally, thumping a tune with his fingers on the arms of the *fauteuil*. He cried out his moves without turning his head. Against 1, 2, 3, and 6 and 7., who were not up to the standard of the other three players,* he frequently made his moves simultaneously after receiving theirs. He was calm throughout, and never made a mistake, nor did he call a move twice. It must be recollected, moreover, that Morphy played 'against the field'—in other words, that around each of the eight boards there was a large collection of excellent Chess players, who gave their advice freely, and who had eight times longer to study their play in, than the single player. He played certainly against fifty men, and they never ceased for a moment making supposed moves and studying their game most thoroughly during the long intervals that necessarily fell to each board. And yet Morphy, who was out of sight of these eight boards, saw the game plainer on each than those who surrounded them! I could scarcely believe the thing possible if I had not seen it. At the end of the games there was a shout from the three hundred throats present, which made one believe he was back again in old Tammany Hall! The fact is there were a considerable number of Englishmen and Americans present (among the latter was Prof. Morse, who took a deep interest in these extraordinary games), but much the larger number were French. Morphy did not seem at all fatigued, and appeared so modest, that the frenzy and admiration of the French knew no bounds. He was shaken by the hand and complimented till

* [The author ranges the French players in a different order. See page 193.—*Trans.*]

he hung down his head in confusion. One grey-haired old man, an octogenarian Chess-player, stroked his hair with his hands, as he would a child of his own, and showered upon him terms of endearment. Morphy has no beard yet, and looks more like a schoolboy than a world's champion. He escaped from the excited crowd as soon as possible, and left with some friends, to get something to eat. It is not necessary to point out to Chess players the immensity of the intellectual feat; every one will admit that it borders upon the miraculous, and as was remarked by one of his antagonists, M. Lequesne, such a mind never did exist, and, perhaps, never will again."

Amongst the spectators were, besides several Chess notabilities as St. Amant, Laroche, and others, the Duke of Brunswick, a descendant of the famous "Gustavus Selenus," and Mery, a favourite French poet. The latter celebrated the combat between Labourdonnais and Macdonnel in an epic poem, the former had played many consultation games in company with Counts Isouard and Casabianca against Harwitz. Both these gentlemen, the duke as well as the poet, were called to the performance by the electric telegraph, having been at the time at a watering place on the Rhine. They afterwards payed many flattering attentions to the young American.

CHAPTER XII.

GAMES WITH SEVERAL FRENCH PLAYERS.

AFTER the death of KIESERITZKY in 1853, France was rather deficient in Chess players of superior strength. Although St. AMANT, after a lengthened absence, returned to his native country, he has nearly given up Chess. As strong practical players of the old school, ought to be mentioned above all, LAROCHE from Bayonne, and DEVINCK; next to them, A. de RIVIÈRE and A. DELANNOY, two clever writers. Amongst the strong players of the present day are JOURNOUD and BUDZINSKI, LÉCRIVAIN, LEQUESNE, and GUIBERT, and amongst the youngest, the most eminent is BAUCHER, of whom we have already spoken.

Against all these players the transatlantic master has fought with such success, that the few games which he lost, entirely disappear among the great number he won. Besides, several games took place, in which the American encountered, single handed, two French players in consultation. In these also he had the final advantage.

The following table gives all the games which he has played in France.

SCORE OF GAMES PLAYED BY MORPHY DURING THE
AUTUMN OF 1858 IN FRANCE:—

A. Even games against	<i>lost</i>	<i>won</i>	<i>drawn</i>
Laroche	0	— 5	— 2
A. de Rivière	1	— 7	— 1
Journoud	0	— 12	— 0
Budzinski	0	— 7	— 0
Baucher	0	— 2	— 0
B. At the odds of Pawn and move.			
Laroche	0	— 3	— 3
Budzinski	1	— 12	— 1
Devinck	0	— 2	— 2
Guibert	0	— 1	— 2

C. At the odds of Pawn and two moves.

	<i>lost</i>	<i>won</i>	<i>drawn</i>
Lécivain	2	— 5	— 0
Lequesne	0	— 3	— 1
Delannoy	0	— 4	— 0

D. Consultation games.

The Duke of Brunswick and

Count Isouard	0	— 10	— 0
Journoud and Rivière . . .	1	— 0	— 0
St. Amant and Lequesne . .	0	— 2	— 2
St. Amant and F. de l'A. . .	0	— 3	— 0
Chamouillet and the Club at			
Versailles	0	— 1	— 0

5 — 79 — 12

Therefore, of ninety-six games which MORPHY played with different French opponents, he only lost five, in three of which he gave odds, whilst he won seventy-nine and drew twelve.

We give the following games out of that number :—

GAMES PLAYED BY PAUL MORPHY WITH VARIOUS FRENCH PLAYERS.

GAME LXXXIX. .

Played with M. LAROCHE.

(*French Opening.*)

<i>White.</i> (M. LAROCHE.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. third
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. P. to Q. fourth
3. P. to K. fifth ¹	3. P. to Q. B. fourth
4. Kt. to K. B. third	4. Kt. to Q. B. third
5. P. to Q. B. fourth	5. P. to Q. fifth
6. P. to Q. third	6. Kt. to K. R. third
7. B. to K. second	7. B. to K. second
8. Kt. to Q. second	8. Castles
9. Q. Kt. to K. fourth	9. P. to K. B. fourth ²
10. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth	10. K. Kt. to K. B. second
11. Kt. takes Kt.	11. R. takes Kt.

12. Castles	12. P. to Q. Kt. third
13. Q. B. to Q. second	13. Q. B. to Q. Kt. second ^s
14. P. to K. R. third	14. P. to K. R. third
15. Kt. to K. R. second	15. P. to K. Kt. fourth ⁴
16. B. to K. B. third	16. R. to K. Kt. second
17. P. to Q. R. third	17. Q. to Q. B. second
18. Q. to K. second	18. P. takes P.
19. Q. B. takes P.	19. K. B. to K. Kt. fourth
20. B. takes B.	20. R. takes B.
21. Q. R. to K. square	21. K. to R. second
22. K. to R. square	22. Q. R. to K. Kt. square
23. K. R. to K. B. second	23. Kt. to K. second
24. B. takes B.	24. Q. takes B.
25. Q. to K. B. third	25. Q. to Q. B. second
26. P. to K. Kt. fourth	26. Kt. to K. Kt. third
27. Q. to K. second	27. Kt. to K. R. fifth
28. Kt. to K. B. third	28. Q. to Q. Kt. second
29. K. to R. second	29. Kt. takes Kt. (check)
30. Q. takes Kt.	30. Q. takes Q.
31. R. takes Q.	31. P. takes P.
32. R. to K. B. sixth	32. R. to K. R. fourth
33. R. takes K. P.	33. R. takes R. P. (check)
34. K. to Kt. second	34. R. takes Q. P.
35. Q. R. to K. B. square	35. P. to K. Kt. sixth
36. Q. R. to K. B. sixth	36. R. to Q. seventh (check)
37. K. to Kt. square	37. R. to K. R. seventh
38. Q. R. to K. B. seventh (ch.)	38. R. to Kt. second
39. R. takes R. (check)	39. K. takes R.
40. R. to K. B. sixth	40. R. to K. seventh
41. R. to K. B. third	41. R. to K. sixth ⁵
42. R. to K. B. square	42. P. to Q. sixth
43. K. to Kt. second	43. P. to Q. seventh
44. R. to Q. square	44. R. to Q. sixth
45. K. to B. square	45. K. to B. second
46. K. to K. second	46. R. to Q. fifth
47. K. to B. third	47. K. to K. third
48. K. takes P.	48. K. takes P.
49. K. to B. third	49. R. to Q. sixth (check)

And wins.

¹ This move is incorrect, and gives the second player the better game.

² The proper move. Black, as usual, brings all his pieces in the field, whilst White's attack is premature.

³ At this point the second player takes advantage of his superior position, and gradually turns the attack.

⁴ Black forestalls his opponent's designs to advance the Pawns on King's side.

⁵ How masterly this end-game is conducted by Morphy!

GAME XC.

Played with M. JOURNOUD.

(*Sicilian Opening.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (M. JOURNOUD.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to Q. B. fourth
2. P. to Q. fourth	2. P. takes P.
3. Kt. to K. B. third	3. P. to K. fourth
4. B. to Q. B. fourth	4. B. to K. second
5. P. to Q. B. third	5. P. to Q. third
6. Q. to Q. Kt. third	6. P. takes Q. B. P.
7. B. takes P. (check)	7. K. to B. square
8. Q. Kt. takes P.	8. Q. Kt. to B. third
9. B. takes K. Kt.	9. R. takes B.
10. Castles	10. Q. to K. square
11. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth	11. B. takes Kt.
12. B. takes B.	12. B. to K. third
13. Kt. to Q. fifth	13. P. to K. R. third
14. P. to K. B. fourth	14. Q. to Q. second ¹
15. P. takes K. P. (dis. ch.)	15. K. to K. square
16. Kt. to Q. B. seventh (ch.)	16. Q. takes Kt.
17. Q. takes B. (check)	

And wins.

¹ If "P. takes B.," White takes Kt. P. with P. (dis. check), followed by "P. to K. Kt. sixth."

GAME XCI.

Played with M. BAUCHER.

*(Kieseritzky Gambit.)**White.* (M. BAUCHER.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth
3. Kt. to K. B. third
4. P. to K. B. fourth
5. Kt. to K. fifth
6. Kt. takes Kt. P.¹
7. P. to Q. third
8. Q. B. takes P.
9. Q. to K. second (ch.)*
10. Kt. to K. B. sixth (ch.)
11. Q. B. takes B. P. (check)
12. Kt. to Q. fifth (check)
13. Kt. takes Q.
14. Q. to K. Kt. fourth
15. Q. to K. B. fourth
16. Kt. to Q. B. third
17. B. to K. second
18. Castles
19. B. to K. B. third
20. P. to Q. fourth
21. K. to Kt. square
22. P. takes Kt.
23. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth
24. P. to Q. B. fourth
25. P. takes P.
26. Kt. to Q. B. third
27. Q. to K. B. fifth (check)
28. Q. to Q. Kt. fifth
29. K. to R. square
30. Kt. to K. B. fifth (check)
31. Kt. to K. B. sixth
32. P. to Q. fifth
33. Q. to K. second
34. Kt. to K. fourth

Black. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. takes P.
3. P. to K. Kt. fourth
4. P. to K. Kt. fifth
5. Kt. to K. B. third
6. Kt. takes K. P.
7. Kt. to Kt. sixth
8. Kt. takes R.²
9. Q. to K. second
10. K. to Q. square
11. K. takes B.
12. K. to Q. square
13. B. takes Kt.
14. P. to Q. third³
15. R. to K. Kt. square
16. Q. B. to K. third
17. Kt. to Q. B. third
18. K. Kt. to Kt. sixth
19. K. Kt. to K. B. fourth
20. K. Kt. takes R. P.
21. Kt. takes B.
22. P. to Q. fourth
23. Q. R. to Q. B. square
24. K. to Q. second
25. B. takes P.
26. K. B. to Q. third
27. Q. B. to K. third
28. K. to Q. B. second
29. Q. B. to Q. second
30. K. to Q. Kt. square
31. K. R. to Q. square
32. Kt. to K. fourth
33. Q. B. to K. B. fourth
34. B. takes Kt.

35. P. takes B.	35. Kt. to Q. B. fifth
36. R. to Q. B. square	36. P. to Q. Kt. fourth (*)
37. P. to K. fifth	37. Kt. takes K. P.
38. Q. takes Kt. P. (check)	38. K. to R. square
39. R. to Q. square	39. R. to Q. B. seventh
40. Q. to Q. R. sixth	40. P. to K. B. fourth
41. K. to Kt. square	41. R. to Q. B. second
42. R. to K. B. square	42. Kt. to Q. B. fifth
43. R. to K. B. second	43. K. R. to Q. Kt. square
44. P. to Q. Kt. third	44. B. to Q. R. sixth

And wins.

¹ This is perhaps stronger than the usual move at this stage of the game, viz., "B. to Q. B. fourth."

² The books here recommend "Q. to K. second (check)," and if B. interposes, "Q. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)." This variation, however, which has been introduced by the author, seems not quite safe, as White, by interposing the Queen on Q. second, and afterwards, by giving up the exchange, will obtain the better game, and a strong attack.

* ["B. to K. Kt. fifth" seems stronger. If then B. interposes, White plays "Q. to K. second," threatening checkmate in two moves. —*Trans.*]

³ "R. to K. square" would be equally good.

⁴ He could have equally played "B. to K. B. fifth"; for, if R. takes Kt., R. retakes; and if then Q. takes R., Black wins the Queen, by playing "R. to Q. B. square."

GAME XCII.

Played with M. DEVINCK at the odds of Pawn and move.

(Remove Black's K. B. P. from the Board.)

<i>White.</i> (M. DEVINCK.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to Q. third
2. P. to Q. fourth	2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. B. to Q. third	3. P. to K. fourth
4. P. takes P.	4. P. takes P.
5. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	5. B. to Q. B. fourth
6. Kt. to K. B. third	6. P. to K. R. third
7. B. to K. R. fourth	7. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth

8. Castles	8. Q. Kt. to Q. second
9. Q. Kt. to Q. second	9. P. to K. Kt. fourth
10. B. to K. Kt. third	10. P. to K. R. fourth
11. Q. to K. square	11. Q. to K. second
12. P. to K. R. fourth	12. Kt. to K. R. second
13. P. to Q. B. third	13. Castles (Q. R.)
14. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	14. B. to Q. Kt. third
15. P. to Q. R. fourth	15. P. to Q. R. third
16. Q. to Q. Kt. square	16. K. R. to K. B. square
17. P. to Q. R. fifth ¹	17. B. to Q. R. second
18. P. to Q. Kt. fifth	18. B. takes Kt.
19. Kt. takes B.	19. R. takes Kt.
20. P. takes R.	20. K. Kt. P. takes P.
21. P. to Q. Kt. sixth ²	21. P. takes P.
22. P. takes P.	22. B. takes P.
23. R. takes Q. R. P. ³	23. P. takes R.
24. K. B. takes P. (check)	24. K. to Q. B. second
25. Q. to Q. Kt. fifth	25. P. takes B.

And White resigned.

¹ White ought to have played here "P. to Q. B. fourth," preventing the sacrifice of the exchange, obviously intended by the second player.

² "B. to R. second" would have been stronger.

³ A desperate effort. Even now "B. to R. second" would have been better.

[The Author here reprints the following analysis, published by the Translator in the *Sunday Times* of last year. In the paper referred to we have thus commented upon White's last move:—

"An unaccountable move, evidently made with the purpose of keeping on an unsound attack at any price. He ought to have brought his Q.'s Bishop back on the twenty-first move; but even now, we believe, this move could have saved the game.—*Ex gr.* :—

White.

- 23. B. to K. R. second
- 24. K. to R. square
- 25. B. to K. second
- 26. P. to Q. B. fourth
- 27. Q. to Q. third

Black.

- 23. P. to K. R. sixth (or A and B)
- 24. Q. to K. B. second (best)
- 25. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth
- 26. Kt. takes B. P.
- 27. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth (better than taking the Bishop, which would have lost the R. P.)

- 28. P. to K. B. fourth, with a good game.

A.

- 24. K. to R. square
- 25. R. to Q. R. second
- 26. B. to Q. B. fourth, with
a good position.

- 23. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth
- 24. Kt. takes B. P.
- 25. Kt. to Q. B. fourth (Q.
to K. Kt. fourth would
be answered with Q. to
Q. B. square)

B.

- 24. K. to R. square
- 25. R. to K. Kt. square
- 26. B. to K. second
- 27. R. to K. B. square
- 28. Q. to Q. R. second
- 29. B. to Q. B. fourth, with the best game."—*Trans.*]

- 23. Q. to K. Kt. second (ch.)
- 24. P. to R. sixth
- 25. Q. to K. B. second
- 26. B. takes B. P.
- 27. B. to K. sixth
- 28. Q. to K. Kt. third

GAME XCIII.

Between the same Opponents.

(Remove Black's K. B. P. from the Board.)

White. (M. DEVINCK.)

- 1. P. to K. fourth
- 2. P. to Q. fourth
- 3. P. to Q. fifth
- 4. P. to Q. B. fourth
- 5. Kt. to Q. B. third
- 6. B. to Q. third
- 7. P. to Q. B. third
- 8. K. Kt. to K. second
- 9. Castles
- 10. K. P. takes P.
- 11. P. to K. R. third
- 12. P. to K. B. fourth
- 13. Q. takes Kt.
- 14. Q. to K. B. third
- 15. P. to K. Kt. fourth
- 16. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth
- 17. B. to K. third
- 18. P. to Q. Kt. third
- 19. Q. takes B.

Black. (MORPHY.)

- 1. P. to K. third
- 2. P. to Q. B. fourth
- 3. P. to Q. third
- 4. P. to K. Kt. third
- 5. B. to K. Kt. second
- 6. Kt. to Q. R. third
- 7. Kt. to K. R. third
- 8. Castles
- 9. P. takes P.
- 10. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth
- 11. Kt. to K. fourth
- 12. Kt. takes B.
- 13. B. to K. B. fourth
- 14. Q. to Q. Kt. third
- 15. B. to Q. B. seventh
- 16. Q. R. to K. square
- 17. B. to Q. sixth
- 18. Q. B. takes Kt.
- 19. B. to Q. fifth

20. R. to K. B. third	20. B. takes Q. R.
21. Q. to Q. third	21. Kt. to Q. B. second
22. P. to K. B. fifth	22. Kt. takes Kt.
23. P. takes Kt.	23. R. takes B.

And White resigned.

GAME XCIV.

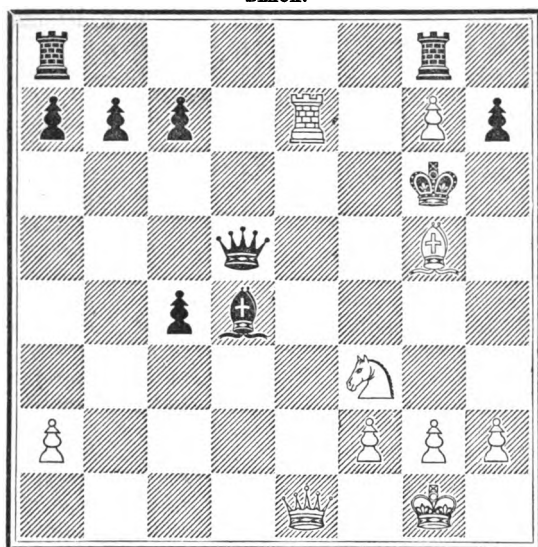
Played with M. A. De RIVIÈRE.

(*Evans's Gambit.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (M. De RIVIÈRE.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	4. B. takes P.
5. P. to Q. B. third	5. B. to Q. B. fourth
6. Castles	6. P. to Q. third
7. P. to Q. fourth	7. P. takes P.
8. P. takes P.	8. B. to Q. Kt. third
9. Q. Kt. to B. third	9. K. Kt. to B. third
10. P. to K. fifth	10. P. to Q. fourth
11. P. takes Kt.	11. P. takes B.
12. P. takes Kt. P.	12. R. to K. Kt. square
13. R. to K. square (check)	13. Q. B. to K. third
14. P. to Q. fifth	14. Q. to K. B. third
15. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	15. Q. takes Q. Kt.
16. P. takes B.	16. Q. to Q. sixth
17. P. takes B. P. (check)	17. K. takes P.
18. R. to K. seventh (check)	18. K. to Kt. third
19. Q. to K. square	19. Q. to Q. fourth
20. Q. R. to Q. square	20. Kt. to Q. fifth
21. R. takes Kt.	21. B. takes R.

(*See the Diagram on the next page.*)

BLACK.



WHITE

White having to play, forced checkmate in six moves.

GAME XCV.

Between the same Opponents.

(Same Opening.)

White. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
5. P. to Q. B. third
6. Castles
7. P. to Q. fourth
8. P. takes P.

Black. (M. De RIVIÈRE.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. B. takes P.
5. B. to B. fourth
6. P. to Q. third
7. P. takes P.
8. B. to Kt. third

9. P. to Q. fifth	9. Q. Kt. to K. second
10. P. to K. fifth	10. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. third
11. P. to K. sixth	11. P. takes P.
12. P. takes P.	12. K. Kt. to K. second
13. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth	13. Castles
14. Q. to K. R. fifth	14. P. to K. R. third
15. Kt. to B. seventh	15. R. takes Kt.
16. P. takes Q. (check)	16. K. to R. second
17. B. to Q. third	17. Q. B. to K. third
18. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	18. Q. B. takes B. P.
19. K. R. to K. square	19. K. to Kt. square
20. Q. B. takes Kt.	20. Kt. takes B.
21. Q. to K. Kt. fourth ¹	21. Q. to K. B. square
22. Q. Kt. to B. third	22. B. takes B. P. (check)
23. K. to R. square	23. B. takes R.
24. R. takes B.	24. P. to Q. fourth ²
25. R. to K. B. square	25. R. to Q. square
26. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth	26. P. to Q. B. fourth
27. Q. to K. Kt. third	27. P. to Q. B. fifth
28. B. to Q. B. second	28. Kt. to Q. B. third
29. B. to K. Kt. sixth	29. R. to Q. second
30. B. to K. B. fifth	30. R. to K. second
31. Kt. to Q. sixth	31. Q. to Q. Kt. square
32. B. to Q. B. eighth	32. Kt. to Q. square
33. B. to K. B. fifth	33. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
34. B. to K. Kt. sixth	34. B. takes B.
35. Kt. to K. B. fifth	35. Q. takes Q.
36. Kt. takes R. (check)	36. K. to R. second
37. P. takes Q.	37. P. to Q. fifth
38. Kt. takes B.	38. K. takes Kt.
39. P. to Q. R. third	39. P. to Q. R. fourth
40. K. to Kt. square	40. Kt. to Q. B. third
41. R. to K. B. eighth	41. P. to Q. B. sixth
42. R. to Q. B. eighth	42. Kt. to K. fourth
43. K. to B. second	43. Kt. to Q. B. fifth
44. K. to K. second	44. P. to Q. B. seventh

And White resigned.

¹ In perusing this game we miss Morphy's usual vigour in bringing his forces to a speedy co-operation. Mark the pieces on Queen's

side, which are still kept inactively on their places, whilst the Queen's Knight is introduced into the field after all, but rather untimely, on the next move. It is not unlikely, therefore, that the American champion has laboured, during this game, under some inimical influence.

² The remaining part of the game is played with remarkable skill by Morphy's opponent.

GAME XCVI.

Between the same Opponents.

(*Ruy Lopez Opening.*)

<i>White.</i> (M. De RIVIÈRE.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. Kt. fifth	3. P. to Q. R. third
4. B. to Q. R. fourth	4. Kt. to K. B. third
5. Q. Kt. to B. third ¹	5. B. to Q. B. fourth
6. P. to Q. third	6. P. to K. R. third
7. Q. B. to K. third	7. B. takes B.
8. P. takes B.	8. P. to Q. third
9. Castles	9. Castles.
10. B. takes Kt.	10. P. takes B.
11. Q. to K. square	11. B. to K. third
12. Kt. to K. R. fourth	12. P. to K. Kt. third
13. Q. R. to Q. square	13. Q. to K. second
14. P. to Q. fourth	14. Q. R. to K. square
15. P. to K. R. third	15. B. to Q. B. fifth
16. K. R. to B. third	16. P. takes P.
17. R. takes P.	17. B. to Q. Kt. fourth
18. P. to Q. R. fourth	18. P. to Q. B. fourth
19. R. to Q. second	19. B. to Q. B. third
20. Kt. to Q. fifth	20. B. takes Kt.
21. P. takes B.	21. Kt. to K. fifth
22. R. to K. second	22. Q. to K. fourth
23. P. to Q. B. fourth	23. R. to Q. Kt. square
24. R. to K. B. fourth	24. K. R. to K. square
25. Kt. to K. B. third	25. Q. to K. Kt. second
26. Kt. to Q. second	26. Kt. takes Kt.

27. Q. takes Kt.	27. R. to Q. Kt. sixth
28. Q. to Q. R. fifth	28. P. to K. B. fourth
29. Q. takes Q. R. P.	29. Q. R. takes Q. Kt. P.
30. R. takes R.	30. Q. takes R.
31. Q. to Q. B. sixth	31. R. takes P.
32. Q. takes Q. B. P.	32. R. to K. eighth (check)
33. K. to R. second	33. Q. to K. fourth
34. Q. to Q. eighth (check)	34. K. to B. second
35. Q. to Q. seventh (check)	35. K. to B. third
36. Q. to Q. eighth (check)	36. Q. to K. second
37. Q. to K. R. eighth (ch.)	37. Q. to K. Kt. second
38. Q. to Q. eighth (check)	

And White draws the game by perpetual check.

¹ Instead of this move either castling or "P. to Q. fourth" would have been stronger.

GAME XCVII.

Between the same Opponents.

(*Evans's Gambit.*)

<i>White.</i> (M. De RIVIÈRE.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	4. B. takes P.
5. P. to Q. B. third	5. B. to B. fourth
6. Castles	6. P. to Q. third
7. P. to Q. fourth	7. P. takes P.
8. P. takes P.	8. B. to Q. Kt. third
9. P. to Q. fifth	9. Kt. to Q. R. fourth
10. B. to Q. third	10. Kt. to K. second
11. Q. B. to Q. Kt. second	11. Castles
12. Kt. to Q. second	12. Kt. to K. Kt. third
13. K. Kt. to Q. fourth	13. Q. to K. B. third
14. Q. Kt. to K. B. third	14. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
15. Q. to Q. B. second	15. B. takes Kt.
16. Kt. takes B.	16. Kt. to K. fourth

17. K. to R. square	17. Q. to K. second ¹
18. Kt. takes Kt.	18. P. takes Kt.
19. P. to K. B. fourth	19. P. to K. B. third
20. Q. to Q. B. third	20. B. to Q. fifth
21. Q. takes Kt.	21. B. takes B.
22. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square	22. P. to Q. Kt. third
23. Q. to Q. second	23. B. to Q. fifth
24. P. to K. B. fifth ²	24. P. to Q. R. third
25. B. to Q. B. fourth	25. Q. to Q. third
26. P. to Q. R. fourth	26. K. R. to Q. Kt. square ³
27. Q. R. to Q. Kt. third	27. K. to B. square
28. Q. to K. second	28. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
29. P. takes P.	29. P. to Q. R. fourth
30. Q. R. to K. Kt. third	30. P. to Q. R. fifth
31. Q. to K. R. fifth	31. P. to K. R. third
32. Q. to K. Kt. sixth	32. Q. to K. second ⁴
33. P. to Q. sixth	33. P. takes P.
34. Q. takes K. R. P. ⁵	34. Q. to K. B. second
35. Q. to R. eighth (ch.) ⁶	35. K. to K. second
36. R. takes Kt. P. ⁷	36. R. takes Q.
37. R. takes Q. (check)	37. K. to K. square
38. R. takes B. P.	38. P. to Q. R. sixth
39. B. to Q. R. second	39. Q. R. to Q. B. square
40. P. to Q. Kt. sixth	40. K. to Q. second
41. P. to Q. Kt. seventh	41. R. to Q. B. seventh
42. B. to K. sixth (check)	42. K. to Q. B. second
43. R. to Q. Kt. square	43. K. to Q. Kt. square
44. B. to Q. Kt. third	44. R. to Q. Kt. seventh
45. R. takes R.	45. P. takes R.
46. B. to Q. R. second	46. K. takes P.
47. R. takes P.	47. R. to Q. R. square

And wins.

¹ The game is carefully played by both parties, but White's forces are better developed, which is but the natural result of the opening. Of this superior position the Frenchman does not fail to take the utmost advantage on the next moves.

² All these moves are excellent. M. De Rivière has, up to this point, conducted the game with that energy, which is the most striking feature in his opponent's play, and the considerable advantage of position, which he obtained, if properly followed up afterwards, ought indeed to have led to victory.

³ A weak move. Black at this point seems to underrate the strength of his antagonist.

⁴ Black's game is lost now, had the attack been properly conducted.

⁵ "Q. to K. R. seventh" would have been less brilliant, but more to the purpose.

⁶ "Q. to K. R. seventh" would still have won the game.

⁷ Again White overlooked the obvious and correct move, "Q. takes R.," winning the exchange.

GAME XCVIII.

Between the same Opponents.

(*Same Opening.*)

<i>White.</i> (M. De RIVIÈRE.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. K. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. K. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	4. B. takes P.
5. P. to Q. B. third	5. B. to Q. B. fourth
6. Castles	6. P. to Q. third
7. P. to Q. fourth	7. P. takes P.
8. P. takes P.	8. B. to Q. Kt. third
9. B. to Q. Kt. second	9. Kt. to K. B. third
10. Q. Kt. to Q. second	10. Castles
11. P. to K. R. third	11. P. to Q. fourth
12. P. takes P.	12. K. Kt. takes P.
13. Q. Kt. to K. fourth	13. B. to K. B. fourth
14. Kt. to K. Kt. third	14. B. to K. Kt. third
15. Kt. to K. fifth	15. Kt. to K. B. third
16. Kt. takes B.	16. R. P. takes Kt.
17. Q. B. to R. third	17. R. to K. square
18. Q. to Q. Kt. third	18. Q. to Q. second
19. Q. R. to Q. square	19. Q. Kt. to R. fourth ¹
20. Q. to Q. third	20. Q. R. to Q. square
21. B. to Q. Kt. second	21. Kt. takes B.
22. Q. takes Kt.	22. Q. to Q. fourth
23. Q. to Q. R. fourth	23. P. to Q. B. third
24. R. to Q. third	24. P. to Q. B. fourth

25. K. R. to Q. square	25. P. to Q. B. fifth
26. R. to K. third	26. B. to Q. B. second
27. Kt. to K. B. square	27. P. to Q. R. fourth
28. R. takes R. (check)	28. R. takes R.
29. Kt. to K. third	29. Q. to Q. third
30. Q. takes B. P. ²	30. Q. to K. R. seventh (ch.)
31. K. to B. square	31. Kt. to K. fifth
32. B. to B. square	32. B. to K. B. fifth
33. Q. to Q. B. second	33. B. takes Kt.
34. B. takes B.	34. Q. to R. eighth (check)
35. K. to K. second	35. Q. takes Kt. P.
36. K. to Q. third	36. Q. to K. B. sixth
37. R. to K. square	37. Q. to K. B. fourth
38. K. to K. second	38. Q. to K. R. fourth (ch.)
39. K. to Q. third	39. Q. to Q. Kt. fourth (ch.)
40. Q. to Q. B. fourth	40. Kt. takes P. (check)
41. B. takes Kt.	41. Q. to K. B. fourth (ch.)
42. K. to Q. second	42. Q. takes B. (check)
43. R. to K. second	43. R. takes R. (check)
44. Q. takes R.	44. Q. takes Q. (check)

And wins.

¹ If "Kt. takes P.," White wins by playing "Q. to Q. third."

[In the *Sunday Times* we appended the following variation:—

White.

Black.

20. Q. to Q. third	19. Q. Kt. takes P.
21. B. to Q. Kt. second	20. K. to R. second (best)
22. B. takes Kt.	21. P. to Q. B. fourth (or A)
23. P. to K. R. fourth, with a good game.	22. P. takes B. (best)

A.

22. P. to K. R. fourth	21. Q. R. to Q. square
23. Q. to K. B. third	22. Kt. to K. third (best)
24. P. to K. R. fifth, &c.— <i>Trans.</i>]	23. Q. to K. second

² "Kt. to K. Kt. fourth" was a better move.

GAMES PLAYED BY PAUL MORPHY AGAINST FRENCH
PLAYERS IN CONSULTATION.

GAME XCIX.

(Same Opening.)

White. (Messrs. JOURNOUD
and De RIVIÈRE.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
5. P. to Q. B. third
6. Castles
7. P. to Q. fourth
8. P. takes P.
9. Q. B. to Q. Kt. second
10. Kt. to Q. second¹
11. P. to K. fifth
12. P. takes P.
13. Q. Kt. to K. fourth
14. K. Kt. to Kt. fifth
15. Kt. takes B.
16. Q. to K. Kt. fourth
17. Q. R. to Q. square
18. Q. takes K. P.
19. B. takes Kt.
20. R. takes Kt.
21. B. takes R.
22. R. to K. square
23. B. to K. B. third
24. Q. to Q. B. fourth
25. P. to K. sixth²
26. Q. to Q. R. fourth
27. Q. to Q. B. second
28. Q. to K. Kt. sixth
29. Q. to K. fourth
30. P. to K. Kt. third
31. R. to K. second
32. B. to K. R. fifth

Black. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. B. takes P.
5. B. to B. fourth
6. P. to Q. third
7. P. takes P.
8. B. to Q. Kt. third
9. Kt. to K. B. third
10. Castles
11. P. takes P.
12. Kt. to Q. fourth
13. Q. B. to K. third
14. P. to K. R. third
15. P. takes Kt.
16. K. to R. square
17. R. to K. B. fifth
18. R. takes Kt.
19. Kt. to Q. fifth
20. R. takes R.
21. B. takes B.
22. Q. to K. Kt. fourth
23. R. to K. B. square
24. P. to Q. B. fourth
25. Q. to K. second
26. Q. to K. R. fifth
27. Q. to K. second
28. R. to K. B. third
29. R. to K. B. square
30. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
31. P. to Q. Kt. fifth
32. P. to Q. R. fourth

33. B. to B. seventh	33. P. to Q. R. fifth
34. Q. to Q. B. second	34. R. to Q. R. square
35. Q. to K. fourth	35. R. to Q. Kt. square
36. Q. to Q. fifth	36. P. to Q. Kt. sixth
37. P. takes P.	37. P. takes P.
38. B. to K. Kt. sixth	38. P. to Q. Kt. seventh
39. B. to Q. Kt. square	39. R. to Q. square
40. Q. to K. B. fifth	40. P. to K. Kt. fourth
41. Q. to K. Kt. sixth	41. B. to K. B. third
42. Q. takes R. P. (check)	42. K. to Kt. square
43. Q. to Kt. sixth (check)	43. B. to K. Kt. second
44. Q. to R. seventh (check)	44. K. to B. square
45. P. to K. B. fourth	45. R. to Q. eighth (check)
46. K. to Kt. second	46. B. to B. third
47. P. takes P.	47. B. to Q. fifth
48. Q. to K. B. fifth (check)	48. K. to Kt. square
49. Q. to K. Kt. sixth (check)	49. K. to R. square
50. R. to K. fourth	50. Q. to Q. Kt. second
51. P. to K. seventh	

And Black resigned.

¹ "Q. to Q. B. second" appears still stronger.

² Capital play. If now "R. takes B.," White wins as follows :—

<i>White.</i>	<i>Black.</i>
26. P. to K. seventh	25. R. takes B.
27. K. to R. square	26. B. takes P. (check)
28. P. to Q. eighth (Q. check), &c.	27. R. to K. sixth

GAME C.

(Philidor's defence.)

White. (MORPHY.)

Black. (Duke of BRUNSWICK
and Count ISOUARD.)

1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. P. to Q. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
4. P. takes P.	4. B. takes Kt.
5. Q. takes B.	5. P. takes P.

6. B. to Q. B. fourth	6. Kt. to K. B. third
7. Q. to Q. Kt. third	7. Q. to K. second
8. Q. Kt. to B. third	8. P. to Q. B. third
9. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	9. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
10. Kt. takes P.	10. P. takes Kt.
11. B. takes Q. Kt. P. (ch.)	11. Q. Kt. to Q. second
12. Castles (Q. R.)	12. R. to Q. square
13. R. takes Kt.	13. R. takes R.
14. R. to Q. square	14. Q. to K. third
15. B. takes R. (check)	15. Kt. takes B.
16. Q. to Q. Kt. eighth (ch.)	16. Kt. takes Q.
17. R. mates	

This elegant little game was played at the Italian Opera during the performance of *Il Barbiere di Siviglia*.

GAME CI.

(*Giucoso Piano.*)

White. (Messrs. ST. AMANT
and F. DE L'A.)

Black. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth	3. R. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. B. third	4. Kt. to K. B. third
5. P. to Q. fourth	5. P. takes P.
6. P. takes P.	6. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)
7. B. to Q. second	7. B. takes B. (check)
8. Q. Kt. takes B.	8. P. to Q. fourth
9. P. takes P.	9. K. Kt. takes P.
10. Castles	10. Castles
11. P. to K. R. third	11. Kt. to K. B. fifth
12. K. to R. second ¹	12. Q. Kt. takes P.
13. Kt. takes Kt.	13. Q. takes Kt.
14. Q. to Q. B. second	14. Q. to Q. third
15. K. to R. square	15. Q. to K. R. third
16. Q. to Q. B. third	16. B. to K. B. fourth
17. K. to R. second	17. Q. R. to Q. square

18. Q. R. to Q. square	18. B. takes K. R. P.
19. P. takes B.	19. R. to Q. sixth
20. Q. takes R.	20. Kt. takes Q.
21. B. takes Kt.	21. Q. to Q. third (check)
22. P. to K. B. fourth	22. Q. takes B.

And wins.

¹ "Q. Kt. to Q. Kt. third" would have been decidedly stronger.

GAME CII.

(*French Opening.*)

White. (MORPHY.)

Black. (M. CHAMOUILLET
and the Chess Club at
Versailles.)

1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. third
2. P. to Q. fourth	2. P. to Q. fourth
3. P. takes P.	3. P. takes P.
4. Kt. to K. B. third	4. Kt. to K. B. third
5. K. B. to Q. third	5. K. B. to Q. third
6. Castles	6. Castles
7. Q. Kt. to B. third	7. P. to Q. B. fourth ¹
8. P. takes P.	8. B. takes P.
9. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	9. Q. B. to K. third
10. Q. to Q. second	10. Q. Kt. to B. third
11. Q. R. to Q. square	11. K. B. to K. second
12. K. R. to K. square ²	12. P. to Q. R. third
13. Q. to K. B. fourth	13. Kt. to K. R. fourth
14. Q. to K. R. fourth	14. P. to K. Kt. third
15. P. to K. Kt. fourth	15. Kt. to K. B. third ³
16. P. to K. R. third	16. Q. R. to Q. B. square
17. P. to Q. R. third	17. K. R. to K. square
18. Q. Kt. to K. second	18. P. to K. R. fourth
19. Kt. to K. B. fourth	19. Kt. to K. R. second
20. Kt. takes B.	20. P. takes Kt.
21. R. takes P.	21. B. takes B.
22. R. takes P. (check)	22. K. to B. square
23. Q. takes P.	23. R. to Q. B. second

24. Kt. takes B. 24. K. R. to K. second ⁴
25. Q. to R. sixth (check) 25. K. to K. square
26. R. to Kt. eighth (check)

And the Allies resigned.

¹ Why not "Kt. to Q. B. third" as well? By advancing the B. P., the Black Allies isolated the Queen's Pawn, and thus weakened their game at the very commencement.

² How cleverly White has brought all his forces into play, at this early stage of the game!

³ "Kt. to K. Kt. second" seems stronger.

⁴ If "Kt. takes Kt.," White wins by playing "Q. to K. R. sixth (check)," etc.



CHAPTER XIII.

THE MATCH WITH HERR HARRWITZ.

D. HARRWITZ, a native of Breslau, who could boast of many victories over some of the best players in England, had for several years delighted the Parisian Chess circles in the new Café de la Regence by his sound as well as brilliant play, and was far superior to the best French Chess players. (A) A serious encounter therefore between him and the transatlantic champion, was the first thing which was thought of after the arrival of the young master in Paris, and a match was soon agreed upon, in which the winner of the first seven games should be the conqueror. (B) In the beginning, fortune seemed to favour the German player. He had already won a preliminary game, and of the match he won the two first games. Thereupon the American player rallied and scored four consecutive games, his superiority increasing with each victory. At this juncture MORPHY's opponent asked for an armistice on the plea of ill health, which was granted on condition that afterwards every day a game should be played. After that Herr HARRWITZ lost another game, and again proposed a delay, which being justly denied him, he resigned the match. (C) His chivalrous opponent accepted the resignation, but refused the stakes, on account of the match, which consisted in winning seven games, not having been terminated. The conduct of the vanquished needs no criticism, nor does the behaviour of the conqueror, who acted with proper tact, and that chivalry which we have acknowledged in him on former occasions. (D)

GAME CIII.—PRELIMINARY GAME.

(Kieseritzky Gambit.)

<i>White.</i> (Herr HARROWITZ.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth	2. P. takes P.
3. Kt. to K. B. third	3. P. to K. Kt. fourth
4. P. to K. R. fourth	4. P. to K. Kt. fifth
5. Kt. to K. fifth	5. Kt. to K. B. third
6. B. to Q. B. fourth	6. P. to Q. fourth
7. P. takes P.	7. B. to Q. third
8. P. to Q. fourth	8. Kt. to K. R. fourth
9. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (ch.)	9. P. to Q. B. third
10. P. takes P.	10. Castles
11. P. takes Q. Kt. P.	11. Q. B. takes P.
12. Q. takes P. (check)	12. Kt. to Kt. second
13. Q. B. takes P.	13. Q. to Q. Kt. third
14. Q. Kt. to B. third	14. K. B. takes Kt.
15. B. takes B.	15. P. to K. B. third
16. Q. B. to K. Kt. third	16. Q. Kt. to Q. R. third
17. Castles (K. R.)	17. Q. R. to Q. square
18. Q. R. to Q. square	18. K. to R. square
19. K. B. takes Kt.	19. B. takes B.
20. K. R. to K. square	20. B. to Q. B. square
21. Q. to K. B. third	21. B. to Q. Kt. second
22. Q. to Q. third	22. Q. R. to Q. second
23. Q. to Q. Kt. fifth	23. Q. to Q. square
24. P. to Q. fifth	24. Kt. to K. B. fourth
25. B. to B. second	25. K. R. to K. Kt. square
26. Q. to Q. third	26. Q. R. to K. Kt. second
27. Q. takes Kt.	27. R. takes P. (check)
28. K. to B. square	28. B. to Q. R. third (check)
29. Kt. to K. second	29. Q. to Q. third
30. R. to Q. third	30. B. takes R.
31. P. takes B.	31. R. to K. R. seventh
32. Kt. to K. B. fourth	32. R. to R. eighth (check)
33. K. to K. second	33. R. to K. R. seventh
34. Kt. to K. sixth	34. K. R. to K. Kt. third

35. R. to Q. B. square	35. Q. to Q. Kt. square
36. P. to Q. Kt. third	36. K. R. to K. Kt. seventh
37. Q. takes B. P. (check)	37. K. to Kt. square
38. K. to K. third	38. Q. R. to R. sixth (check)
39. K. to K. second	39. R. takes B. (check)
40. Q. takes R.	40. R. to R. seventh
41. R. to K. Kt. square (ch.)	41. K. to R. square
42. R. to K. Kt. second	42. Q. to K. fourth (check)
43. K. to B. third	43. Q. takes Q. P. (check)
44. K. to Kt. third	44. R. takes R. (check)
45. Q. takes R.	45. Q. takes Kt.
46. Q. to Q. R. eighth (ch.)	46. K. to Kt. second
47. Q. takes P. (check)	

And, although Black had maintained the attack with uncommon energy up to the very end of the game, White ultimately won through his numerical superiority of Pawns.

GAME CIV.—FIRST GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Queen's Gambit declined.*)

<i>White.</i> (Herr HARRWITZ.)	<i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)
1. P. to Q. fourth	1. P. to Q. fourth
2. P. to Q. B. fourth	2. P. to K. third
3. Kt. to Q. B. third	3. Kt. to K. B. third
4. B. to K. B. fourth	4. P. to Q. R. third
5. P. to K. third	5. P. to Q. B. fourth
6. Kt. to K. B. third	6. Kt. to Q. B. third
7. P. to Q. R. third	7. P. takes Q. P. ¹
8. K. P. takes P.	8. P. takes P.
9. K. B. takes P.	9. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
10. B. to Q. third	10. B. to Q. Kt. second
11. Castles	11. B. to K. second
12. B. to K. fifth	12. Castles
13. Q. to K. second	13. Kt. to Q. fourth
14. B. to K. Kt. third	14. K. to R. square
15. K. R. to K. square	15. B. to K. B. third
16. Q. to K. fourth	16. P. to K. Kt. third

17. Kt. takes Kt.	17. Q. takes Kt.
18. Q. takes Q.	18. P. takes Q.
19. Kt. to K. fifth	19. Q. R. to Q. square
20. Kt. takes Kt.	20. B. takes Kt.
21. Q. R. to Q. B. square	21. Q. R. to Q. B. square
22. B. to Q. sixth	22. R. to K. Kt. square
23. B. to K. fifth	23. K. to Kt. second
24. P. to K. B. fourth	24. B. to Q. second
25. K. to B. second	25. P. to K. R. third
26. K. to K. third	26. R. takes R.
27. R. takes R.	27. R. to Q. B. square
28. R. to Q. B. fifth	28. B. takes B.
29. B. P. takes B.	29. B. to K. third
30. P. to Q. R. fourth ²	30. P. takes P.
31. B. takes Q. R. P.	31. R. to Q. Kt. square
32. R. to Q. Kt. fifth	32. R. to Q. square ³
33. R. to Q. Kt. sixth	33. R. to Q. R. square
34. K. to Q. second	34. B. to Q. B. square
35. B. takes B.	35. R. takes B.
36. R. to Q. Kt. fifth	36. R. to Q. R. square
37. R. takes Q. P.	37. P. to Q. R. sixth
38. P. takes P.	38. R. takes P.
39. R. to Q. B. fifth	39. K. to B. square
40. K. to K. second	40. K. to K. second
41. P. to Q. fifth	41. K. to Q. second
42. R. to Q. B. sixth	42. P. to K. R. fourth
43. R. to K. B. sixth	43. K. to K. second
44. P. to Q. sixth (check)	44. K. to K. square
45. P. to K. sixth	45. P. takes P.
46. R. takes P. (check)	46. K. to K. B. second
47. P. to Q. seventh	47. R. to Q. R. square
48. R. to Q. sixth	48. K. to K. second
49. R. takes P.	49. K. takes P.
50. R. to K. Kt. fifth	50. R. to K. R. square
51. K. to K. B. third	51. K. to K. third
52. K. to K. Kt. third	52. P. to K. R. fifth (check)
53. K. to Kt. fourth	53. P. to K. R. sixth
54. P. to K. Kt. third	54. K. to K. B. third
55. R. to K. R. fifth	

And White wins.

¹ The game is even now, with the exception of White having already brought his Queen's Bishop into action.

² White here makes the correct and decisive move, and plays this game throughout very carefully, and with great skill.

³ It would perhaps have been better to have played "R. to Q. R. square" at once.

GAME CV.—SECOND GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Philidor's Defence.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Herr HARRWITZ.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. P. to Q. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. takes P.
4. Q. takes P.	4. Kt. to Q. B. third
5. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth	5. B. to Q. second
6. B. takes Kt.	6. B. takes B.
7. B. to K. Kt. fifth	7. Kt. to K. B. third
8. Kt. to Q. B. third	8. B. to K. second
9. Castles (with Q. R.)	9. Castles
10. K. R. to K. square	10. P. to K. R. third
11. B. to K. R. fourth	11. Kt. to K. square ¹
12. B. takes B.	12. Q. takes B.
13. P. to K. fifth	13. B. takes Kt.
14. P. takes B.	14. Q. to K. Kt. fourth (ch.)
15. K. to Kt. square	15. P. takes P.
16. R. takes P.	16. Q. to K. Kt. seventh
17. Kt. to Q. fifth	17. Q. takes K. R. P.
18. K. R. to K. square	18. Q. to Q. third
19. R. to K. Kt. square	19. K. to R. second
20. Q. to K. third	20. P. to K. B. fourth
21. Kt. to K. B. fourth	21. Q. to Q. Kt. third
22. Q. to K. second	22. R. to K. B. second
23. Q. to Q. B. fourth	23. Q. to K. B. third
24. Kt. to K. R. fifth	24. Q. to K. second
25. Q. R. to K. square	25. Q. to Q. second
26. P. to Q. R. third ²	26. Kt. to Q. third
27. Q. to Q. fourth	27. R. to K. Kt. square
28. R. to K. Kt. second	28. Kt. to K. square
29. Q. to Q. B. third	29. P. to K. B. fifth

30. R. to K. R. square	30. P. to K. Kt. third
31. Q. R. to K. Kt. square	31. Q. to Q. fourth
32. Q. to K. square	32. Q. takes Kt.
33. R. to K. Kt. fifth	33. Q. takes K. B. P.
34. Q. to K. sixth	34. R. to K. B. third
35. Q. to K. seventh (check)	35. R. to K. Kt. second
36. Q. takes Kt.	36. P. takes R.
37. Q. to K. square	37. Q. to Q. B. third

And Black wins.

¹ The Knight is very well placed on this square, strengthening Black's position.

Threatening to win the Queen by "R. takes Kt.," etc.

[If Q. or R. takes R., White takes Kt. P. with R., checking, followed, eventually, by "Kt. to K. B. sixth (check)."—*Trans.*]

GAME CVI.—THIRD GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Queen's Pawn's Opening Irregular.*)

White. (Herr HARRWITZ.)

Black. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to Q. fourth	1. P. to K. B. fourth
2. P. to Q. B. fourth	2. P. to K. third
3. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third	3. K. Kt. to K. B. third
4. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	4. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
5. Q. to Q. Kt. third	5. P. to Q. B. fourth ¹
6. P. to Q. fifth	6. P. to K. fourth
7. P. to K. third	7. Castles
8. K. B. to Q. third	8. P. to Q. third
9. K. Kt. to K. second	9. P. to K. R. third
10. B. takes Kt.	10. Q. takes B.
11. P. to Q. R. third	11. B. takes Kt. (check)
12. Q. takes B.	12. Kt. to Q. second
13. Castles on K.'s side	13. Q. to K. Kt. third
14. P. to Q. Kt. fourth ²	14. P. to Q. Kt. third
15. P. to K. B. third	15. P. to K. R. fourth
16. B. to Q. B. second	16. B. to Q. Kt. second
17. B. to Q. R. fourth ³	17. Q. to K. B. second
18. B. takes Kt.	18. Q. takes B.
19. P. takes P.	19. Q. Kt. P. takes P.
20. P. to K. B. fourth	20. P. to K. fifth

21. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square	21. B. to Q. R. third ⁴
22. K. R. to Q. B. square	22. Q. to Q. R. fifth
23. Kt. to K. Kt. third	23. P. to K. R. fifth
24. Kt. to K. B. square	24. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square
25. Kt. to Q. second	25. Q. R. to Q. Kt. third
26. R. takes R.	26. P. takes R.
27. Q. to Q. Kt. third	27. Q. takes Q.
28. Kt. takes Q.	28. P. to Q. Kt. fourth ⁵
29. P. takes P.	29. B. takes P.
30. Kt. to Q. R. fifth	30. R. to Q. R. square
31. Kt. to Q. Kt. seventh	31. R. to Q. R. third
32. R. to Q. B. third	32. K. to K. B. square
33. Kt. to Q. eighth	33. B. to Q. second
34. R. to Q. Kt. third	34. K. to K. second
35. R. to Q. Kt. eighth	35. P. to Q. B. fifth
36. K. to K. B. second	36. P. to Q. B. sixth
37. K. to K. second	37. R. takes Q. R. P.
38. Kt. to Q. B. sixth (check)	38. B. takes Kt.
39. P. takes B.	39. P. to Q. B. seventh
40. K. to Q. second	40. R. to Q. B. sixth ⁶
41. K. to Q. B. square	41. R. takes Q. B. P.
42. R. to Q. Kt. third	42. K. to K. B. third
43. R. to Q. R. third	43. P. to K. Kt. fourth
44. P. to K. Kt. third	44. K. R. P. takes P.
45. K. R. P. takes P.	45. P. takes P.
46. Kt. P. takes P.	46. K. to K. Kt. third
47. R. to Q. R. fifth	47. R. to Q. B. fourth
48. R. to Q. R. sixth	48. R. to Q. B. sixth
49. R. takes Q. P. (check)	49. K. to K. R. fourth
50. R. to Q. second	50. K. to K. Kt. fifth
51. R. to K. Kt. second (ch.)	51. K. to K. B. sixth
52. R. to K. Kt. fifth	52. R. to Q. B. fourth
53. R. to K. R. fifth	53. K. takes K. P.
54. R. to K. R. fourth	54. K. to K. B. sixth

And White gave up the game.

¹ This defence has been first introduced by the author in his *Kritik der Eröffnungen*, where the following variation occurs:—

White.

4. P. to Q. B. fourth
5. Kt. to Q. B. third

Black.

4. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
5. P. to Q. B. fourth, etc.

² This move, which weakens the Pawn on Q. B. fourth, involves the loss of the game.—See White's seventeenth move.

³ The following exchange of the pieces endangers White's position, the more so as now the Pawn on Q. B. fourth becomes untenable.

⁴ Mr. Staunton here justly remarks:—"The prompt advantage which Mr. Morphy takes of the slightest error of his opponent, is the chief characteristic of his games, and it is well illustrated on this occasion." The real cause of the loss of the game, however, has been shown in our preceding notes.

⁵ The decisive move.

⁶ A truly beautiful combination!

GAME CVII.—FOURTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Philidor's Defence.*)

<i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)	<i>Black.</i> (Herr HARRWITZ.)
1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third	2. P. to Q. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. takes P.
4. Q. takes P.	4. Kt. to Q. B. third
5. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth	5. B. to Q. second
6. B. takes Kt.	6. B. takes B.
7. B. to K. Kt. fifth	7. P. to K. B. third *
8. B. to K. R. fourth	8. Kt. to K. R. third
9. Kt. to Q. B. third	9. Q. to Q. second
10. Castles (K. R.)	10. B. to K. second
11. Q. R. to Q. square	11. Castles (K. R.)
12. Q. to Q. B. fourth (ch.)	12. R. to K. B. second
13. K. Kt. to Q. fourth ¹	13. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth
14. P. to K. R. third	14. Kt. to K. fourth
15. Q. to K. second	15. P. to K. Kt. fourth
16. B. to K. Kt. third	16. R. to K. Kt. second
17. Kt. to K. B. fifth	17. R. to K. Kt. third
18. P. to K. B. fourth	18. P. takes P.
19. R. takes P.	19. K. to R. square
20. R. to K. R. fourth	20. B. to K. B. square
21. B. takes Kt.	21. B. P. takes B.
22. R. to K. B. square	22. Q. to K. third
23. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth	23. Q. to K. Kt. square
24. B. to K. B. second	24. P. to Q. B. third

25. Kt. takes B. P.	25. R. to Q. B. square
26. Kt. to Q. fifth	26. B. takes Kt.
27. P. takes B.	27. R. to Q. B. second
28. P. to Q. B. fourth	28. B. to K. second
29. R. to K. R. fifth	29. Q. to K. square
30. P. to Q. B. fifth ²	30. Q. R. takes P.
31. R. takes K. R. P. (check)	31. K. takes R.
32. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)	32. K. to Kt. square
33. Kt. takes B. (check)	33. K. to Kt. second
34. Kt. to B. fifth (check)	34. K. to Kt. square
35. Kt. takes Q. P.	

And White wins.

[The *Chess Player's Chronicle* here makes the following remark : —“ We should like to know on what principle Herr Harwitz played “P. to K. B. third,” instead of bringing the Kt. there, as in the second game of the match, which he won. Why try to improve a good move, and not leave well alone ?”—*Trans.*]

¹ “P. to K. fifth” seems to us a stronger move.

[The *New York Chess Monthly* is of a different opinion, stating that “P. to K. fifth” would not be well played.—*Trans.*]

² A true Morpbian sacrifice, preparatory to a decisive attack with the pieces.

GAME CVIII.—FIFTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Queen's Pawn's Opening Irregular.*)

White. (Herr HARRWITZ.)

Black. (MORPHY.)

1. P. to Q. fourth	1. P. to K. B. fourth
2. P. to Q. B. fourth	2. P. to K. third
3. Kt. to Q. B. third	3. Kt. to K. B. third
4. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth	4. B. to K. second
5. P. to K. third	5. Castles
6. K. B. to Q. third	6. P. to Q. Kt. third
7. K. Kt. to K. second	7. Q. B. to Q. Kt. second
8. Castles	8. Kt. to K. R. fourth
9. B. takes B.	9. Q. takes B.
10. Kt. to K. Kt. third	10. Kt. takes Kt.
11. R. P. takes Kt.	11. P. to Q. third

12. P. to K. B. fourth ¹	12. Kt. to Q. B. third
13. P. to K. Kt. fourth	13. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth
14. P. takes P.	14. P. takes P.
15. Q. to Q. second	15. Q. R. to K. square
16. Q. R. to K. square	16. Q. to K. R. fifth
17. K. B. to Q. Kt. square	17. R. to K. third
18. Q. to K. B. second	18. Q. to K. R. fourth
19. P. to Q. fifth	19. R. to K. R. third
20. Q. to K. B. third	20. Q. to K. R. fifth
21. P. to Q. R. third	21. Kt. to Q. R. third
22. P. to Q. Kt. fourth ²	22. Kt. to Q. Kt. square
23. Kt. to K. second	23. Kt. to Q. second ³
24. Kt. to K. Kt. third	24. P. to K. Kt. third
25. K. to B. second	25. Kt. to K. B. third
26. R. to K. R. square	26. Kt. to Kt. fifth (check)
27. K. to Kt. square	27. Q. to K. B. third
28. R. takes R.	28. Kt. takes R.
29. Q. to Q. square	29. Kt. to Kt. fifth
30. Q. to Q. second	30. Q. to K. R. fifth
31. Kt. to K. B. square	31. R. to K. square
32. P. to K. Kt. third	32. Q. to K. R. sixth
33. P. to Q. Kt. fifth	33. Kt. to K. B. third
34. Q. to K. Kt. second	34. Q. takes Q. (check)
35. K. takes Q.	35. P. to Q. R. third
36. P. to Q. R. fourth	36. P. takes P.
37. R. P. takes P.	37. R. to Q. R. square ⁴
38. Kt. to Q. second [*]	38. R. to Q. R. sixth
39. P. to K. fourth	39. P. takes P.
40. Kt. takes P.	40. Kt. takes Kt.
41. B. takes Kt. †	41. R. to Q. B. sixth
42. B. to K. B. third	42. K. to B. second
43. R. to K. fourth	43. B. to B. square
44. B. to K. second	44. B. to K. B. fourth
45. R. to Q. fourth	45. P. to K. R. fourth
46. K. to B. second	46. K. to B. third
47. R. to Q. second	47. B. to Q. B. seventh
48. K. to K. square	48. B. to K. fifth
49. K. to B. second	49. K. to B. fourth
50. R. to Q. R. second	50. P. to K. R. fifth
51. P. takes P.	51. K. takes P.

52. R. to Q. R. seventh	52. R. to K. R. sixth
53. R. takes P.	53. R. to R. seventh (check)
54. K. to K. square	54. K. to K. sixth
- And wins.⁵

¹ "P. to K. fourth" seems stronger; the above move weakens both the King's and Knight's Pawn.

² This move is premature and proves as fatal in this as in Game CIV.

³ The successive introduction into action of the Black Queen's Kt. is worth noticing.

⁴ White could have given up the Knight for three Pawns at this point; the move in the text however, which also leads to victory, is safer.

* [We have thus commented upon this move in the *Sunday Times* of last year:—"This, we believe, was the turning point of the game. The King's Pawn being rather weak, Herr Harrwitz ought to have advanced it at that moment, threatening to get either a passed Pawn, or, eventually, to open the Rook's file, and thus to free his pieces. It is true that Herr Harrwitz pushed the same Pawn on the following move, but then the position was altered in favour of Mr. Morphy."—*Trans.*]

† It strikes us that "R. takes Kt." would have forced the draw. Thus:—

White.

Black.

41. R. takes Kt. 41. K. to B. second (best)
(In answer to "R. to Q. Kt. sixth," White can safely play "B. to Q. B. second," as White threatens to check with R. on the next move, followed by R. to Q. Kt. eighth).

42. P. to K. B. fifth 42. P. takes P. (best)

43. R. to K. B. fourth, &c.—*Trans.*]

⁵ If White plays "B. to B. square," Black answers with "R. to Q. R. seventh."

GAME CXIX.—SIXTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Philidor's Defence.*)

White. (MORPHY.)

Black. (Herr HARRWITZ.)

1. P. to K. fourth	1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. Kt. to B. third	2. P. to Q. third
3. P. to Q. fourth	3. P. takes P.
4. Q. takes P.	4. K. Kt. to B. third ¹
5. P. to K. fifth	5. P. takes P.

6. Q. takes Q. (check)	6. K. takes Q.
7. Kt. takes P.	7. B. to K. third
8. Kt. to Q. B. third	8. B. to Q. third
9. Kt. to Q. B. fourth	9. B. takes Kt.
10. B. takes B.	10. R. to K. square (check)
11. B. to K. third	11. K. to K. second
12. Castles (Q. R.)	12. P. to Q. R. third
13. B. to K. Kt. fifth	13. Q. Kt. to Q. second
14. Kt. to K. fourth	14. P. to K. R. third
15. B. takes Kt. (check)	15. Kt. takes B.
16. Kt. takes B.	16. P. takes Kt.
17. K. R. to K. square (ch.)	17. K. to B. square
18. R. takes R. (check) ²	18. Kt. takes R.
19. B. to Q. fifth	19. R. to Q. Kt. square
20. B. to K. B. third	20. P. to K. Kt. third
21. P. to Q. B. third	21. K. to K. second
22. R. to K. square (check)	22. K. to B. square ³
23. K. to B. second	23. Kt. to Q. B. second
24. K. to Q. Kt. third	24. Kt. to K. third
25. K. to R. fourth	25. P. to Q. Kt. third ⁴
26. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	26. P. to K. R. fourth
27. P. to K. R. fourth	27. K. to K. second
28. R. to K. third	28. K. to Q. second
29. B. to Q. fifth	29. R. to K. square
30. K. to Q. Kt. third	30. R. to K. Kt. square
31. R. to K. B. third	31. K. to K. second
32. P. to Q. R. fourth	32. P. to Q. R. fourth
33. B. takes Kt.	33. K. takes B.
34. K. to B. fourth	34. P. to K. Kt. fourth
35. K. to Kt. fifth ⁵	35. Q. R. P. takes P.
36. P. takes Q. Kt. P.	36. P. takes P.
37. K. takes P.	37. R. to Q. Kt. square (ch.)
38. K. to R. fifth	38. K. to Q. fourth
39. R. to Q. third (check)	39. K. to B. fifth
40. R. takes Q. P.	40. R. takes P.
41. R. to Q. fourth (check) ⁶	41. K. takes R.
42. K. takes R.	42. P. to K. B. fourth
43. P. to K. B. fourth	43. K. to K. sixth
44. P. to Q. R. fifth	44. K. to B. seventh
45. P. to R. sixth	45. K. takes P.

46. P. to R. seventh	46. P. to R. sixth
47. P. queens (check)	47. K. to Kt. eighth
48. Q. to K. B. third	

And Black resigns.⁷

¹ This is a weak move, which gives White the advantage of gaining immediately an attack.

² In end games the Bishops are generally more useful than the Knights.

³ Compulsory to guard the K. B. P., which is open to attacks.

⁴ We believe it would have been better to have checked with Kt. on Q. B. fourth," followed, eventually, by "P. to Q. R. fourth."

⁵ The end game is skillfully played by Morphy.

⁶ The decisive move.—See Game CVI., fortieth move.

⁷ The game could now be continued as follows:—

White.

- 49. Q. to K. Kt. third (ch.)
- 50. K. to Q. B. fourth
- 51. Q. takes P. on R. fifth
- 52. K. to Q. fifth
- 53. Q. takes Q. (check)
- 54. K. to K. fifth, &c.

Black.

- 48. P. to R. seventh
- 49. K. to R. eighth
- 50. P. to R. fifth
- 51. K. to Kt. eighth
- 52. P. queens
- 53. K. takes Q.

GAME CX.—SEVENTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(Queen's Pawn's Opening Irregular.)

White. (Herr HARREWITZ.)

- 1. P. to Q. fourth
- 2. P. to Q. B. fourth
- 3. Kt. to Q. B. third
- 4. B. to K. Kt. fifth
- 5. P. to K. third
- 6. B. to Q. third
- 7. K. Kt. to K. second
- 8. B. takes Kt.
- 9. Castles
- 10. Q. to Q. second
- 11. P. to K. B. fourth
- 12. P. to Q. fifth

Black. (MORPHY.)

- 1. P. to K. B. fourth
- 2. P. to K. third
- 3. Kt. to K. B. third
- 4. B. to K. second
- 5. Castles
- 6. P. to Q. Kt. third
- 7. B. to Q. Kt. second
- 8. B. takes B.
- 9. Q. to K. second
- 10. P. to Q. third
- 11. P. to Q. B. fourth
- 12. Kt. to Q. R. third

13. P. takes P.	13. Q. takes P.
14. Q. R. to K. square	14. B. to K. R. fifth
15. Kt. to K. Kt. third ¹	15. Q. to K. Kt. third
16. Kt. to Q. fifth	16. Q. B. takes Kt.
17. P. takes B.	17. B. takes Kt.
18. P. takes B.	18. Kt. to Q. B. second
19. K. to B. second	19. Q. R. to K. square
20. R. to K. R. square	20. R. to K. second
21. R. to K. R. fourth	21. Q. to K. B. second
22. B. to K. second ²	22. Kt. to K. square
23. Q. to Q. third	23. Kt. to K. B. third
24. B. to K. B. third ³	24. P. to K. Kt. third
25. R. to K. second	25. K. R. to K. square ⁴
26. P. to Q. Kt. third	26. Q. to K. Kt. second
27. R. to K. R. square	27. P. to K. R. third
28. K. to Kt. square	28. P. to K. Kt. fourth
29. P. takes P.	29. P. takes P.
30. B. to K. R. fifth	30. Kt. to K. fifth
31. R. to K. square ⁵	31. R. to K. B. square
32. B. to B. third ⁶	32. Kt. takes P.
33. R. to K. R. third	33. Q. to K. fourth
34. R. to K. R. sixth	34. P. to K. Kt. fifth
35. B. to Q. square	35. K. to Kt. second
36. R. to K. R. fourth	36. R. to K. R. square
37. R. takes R.	37. K. takes R.
38. B. to Q. B. second	38. R. to K. R. second
39. Q. to Q. second	39. Q. to Q. Kt. seventh ⁷
40. R. to Q. square	40. R. to R. eighth (check)
41. K. to B. second	41. R. to K. B. eighth (ch.) ⁸
42. K. takes Kt.	42. Q. to K. fourth (check)
43. K. to R. fourth	43. Q. to K. B. third (check)
44. K. to Kt. third	44. Q. to K. fourth (check)

Perpetual check.

¹ "P. to K. Kt. third" would have considerably exposed the King's side.

² In order to secure the Q. P., which can obviously not be taken with Q., at this moment, for White would change the Queens, and then play "B. to Q. B. fourth." It is questionable, however, whether "Q. to Q. B. second," preparatory to "P. to K. Kt. fourth," would not have been more to the purpose.

³ "P. to K. Kt. fourth," although being a showy move, would have given Black the advantage. *Ex. gr.*—

White.

- 24. P. to K. Kt. fourth
- 25. B. takes P.
- 26. K. to Kt. square (best)
- 27. R. to R. third
- 28. R. to K. second (best)

Black.

- 24. P. takes P.
- 25. Kt. to K. fifth (check)
- 26. Q. to K. B. third
- 27. Q. takes Q. Kt. P.
- 28. Q. to Q. B. sixth, with the best game.

⁴ The following variation deserves attention:—

White.

- 26. P. takes P.
- 27. K. to Kt. square
- 28. R. to K. square

Black.

- 25. P. to K. Kt. fourth
- 26. Kt. to K. fifth (check)
- 27. Kt. takes P. on Kt. sixth
- 28. Q. to K. Kt. second, etc.

⁵ "B. takes R." would have been suicidal. Thus:—

White.

- 31. B. takes R.
- 32. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
- (32. "B. to K. R. fifth," would be answered by "Q. to Q. R. eighth (check)," &c.)

Black.

- 31. Kt. takes P.
- 32. Q. to Q. R. eighth (check)
- 33. Q. takes R. (check)
- 34. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)
- 35. P. to Kt. fifth (check)
- 36. P. to Kt. sixth (dis. check) and wins.

⁶ "P. to K. Kt. fourth," instead, could have been made with great propriety.

⁷ Threatening to win the Queen by checking with R. on R. eighth, and with Kt. on K. fifth on the next move.

⁸ We have here a rare instance of the transatlantic master being guilty of a miscalculation. "R. takes R.," instead, followed by "Kt. to K. fifth (check)," and "Kt. to Q. B. sixth," on the next move, would have secured the victory.

[We gave the same note, as well as the greater part of the preceding variations to this game, in the *Sunday Times* of last year. The last note we continued as follows:—

White.

- 42. Q. takes R.
- 43. K. to Kt. square (best)
- 44. Q. to Q. third (best)
- 45. K. to R. second
- 46. P. to K. Kt. third (best)

Black.

- 41. R. takes R.
- 42. Kt. to K. fifth (check)
- 43. Kt. to Q. B. sixth
- 44. Q. to Q. R. eighth (check)
- 45. Kt. to K. fifth
- 46. K. to Kt. square, and must win

GAME CXI.—EIGHTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

*(Philidorian Defence.)**White.* (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. P. to Q. fourth
4. P. takes P.
5. Q. takes B.
6. B. to Q. B. fourth
7. Q. to Q. Kt. third
8. B. takes P. (check)
9. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth
10. K. B. to K. R. fifth
11. Q. B. to K. R. sixth (ch.)
12. B. to K. B. third
13. Q. to Q. B. fourth
14. Q. to K. second
15. B. to K. third
16. Kt. to Q. second
17. Castles (Q. R.)
18. P. to K. Kt. third
19. B. to K. Kt. second
20. K. R. to K. B. square
21. P. to K. B. fourth
22. P. to Q. Kt. third
23. P. to K. B. fifth
24. P. to K. Kt. fourth
25. B. to K. B. third
26. Kt. to Q. Kt. square
27. Q. to K. B. second
28. P. to K. Kt. fifth
29. P. to K. B. sixth (check)
30. P. to K. B. seventh
31. P. takes Kt. (Q. check)
32. B. takes Kt.
33. Q. to K. second
34. Kt. to Q. second
35. B. to K. Kt. fourth
36. Kt. to K. B. third

Black. (HERR HARREWITZ.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to Q. third
3. B. to K. Kt. fifth ¹
4. B. takes Kt.
5. P. takes P.
6. Kt. to K. B. third ²
7. B. to Q. third
8. K. to B. square
9. Q. Kt. to Q. second
10. P. to K. Kt. third
11. K. to K. second
12. Kt. to Q. B. fourth
13. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
14. Kt. to K. third
15. P. to Q. R. third
16. K. to B. second
17. Q. to K. second
18. K. R. to Q. Kt. square ³
19. P. to Q. R. fourth
20. P. to Q. R. fifth
21. P. to Q. R. sixth
22. K. to Kt. second
23. Q. Kt. to K. B. square
24. Q. to K. square
25. Q. to Q. B. third
26. P. to Q. Kt. fifth
27. Q. Kt. to Q. second
28. Kt. to K. Kt. square ⁴
29. K. to R. square
30. Kt. to Q. B. fourth ⁵
31. K. takes Q.
32. B. takes B.
33. Q. to K. third
34. K. to R. square
35. Q. to K. second
36. R. to Q. square

37. P. to K. R. fourth	37. R. to Q. third
38. R. takes R.	38. P. takes R.
39. Q. to Q. B. fourth	39. R. to K. B. square
40. Q. to K. sixth	40. B. to K. sixth (check)
41. K. to Q. square	41. Q. to Q. B. second
42. Kt. to Q. second	42. B. to K. B. fifth
43. Kt. to Q. B. fourth	43. Q. to Q. B. fourth
44. Q. to Q. fifth	44. Q. takes Q. (check)
45. P. takes Q.	45. R. to Q. square
46. R. to K. B. third	46. K. to Kt. second
47. P. to Q. B. third	47. R. to Q. Kt. square
48. P. takes P.	48. R. takes P.
49. K. to B. second	49. K. to B. square
50. K. to B. third	50. B. to Q. Kt. fourth
51. B. to K. sixth	51. R. to Q. B. fourth
52. P. to Q. Kt. fourth	52. R. to Q. B. second
53. P. to Q. Kt. fifth	53. K. to K. second
54. P. to Q. Kt. sixth	54. R. to Q. Kt. second
55. B. to Q. B. eighth	55. R. to Q. Kt. square
56. P. to Q. Kt. seventh	56. K. to Q. square
57. Kt. takes Q. P.	57. K. to K. second
58. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth	58. P. to K. R. third
59. P. to K. sixth (check)	

And Black resigned.⁶

¹ This move, which used to be made in former times, is decidedly weaker than "P. takes P."

² A mistake, which involves the loss of a Pawn. "Q. to Q. second" was the proper move.

³ "K. R. to K. square," or Q. square, would have been safer.

⁴ "Kt. takes K. P." could have been answered with "Q. to K. Kt. second."

⁵ A desperate effort to turn the attack.

⁶ If "K. to Q. square," "R. takes B." followed by "P. takes K. B. P."

NOTES.

A.

D. Harrwitz, born in Breslau, after having played in 1848 a match with Anderssen, in which they made even games, went through Berlin,

where he lost a brilliant game against Dufresne, to England. There he gathered many laurels owing chiefly to his elegant blindfold play. In 1853 he published in London a Chess periodical, the *British Chess Review*, and won a long and stubbornly contested match of Löwenthal, by the odd game. Afterwards he settled in Paris, and made an engagement with the new proprietor of the Café de la Regence. During a short time he wrote some Chess articles for the *Journal du Plaisir*, and became widely known by his consultation games with the Duke of Brunswick. His play is ready and elegant, rather than deep, and his combinations appear more to be isolated, though ingenious manœuvres, than well combined and premeditated designs. He is very skilful in profiting by the mistakes of his adversaries, and knows how to gain an advantage by speculating upon their probable miscalculations. It was natural therefore, that against a deeper and correct opponent he should be in a disadvantage, till at last, feeling himself the superiority of his antagonist, he should despair of a favourable termination of the contest. However that may be, the games which have been played, are of some value on account of the openings, and deserving of theoretical analysis.*

* [The *Chess Player's Chronicle* has, in its May Number of 1859, p. 131, a somewhat different account of Harrwitz's Chess career, which for the benefit of our readers we here subjoin, in order to complete the biographical sketch by the German author. The account given by the English Monthly Periodical runs as follows :—

“Herr Harrwitz, after having during the space of nearly two years played in Paris with considerable success, came, we believe, in 1847, to England, to try his skill against Mr. Staunton; but, having seen that master's play, he found that he was not as yet able to cope with him upon equal terms; a match was therefore arranged, in which Mr. Staunton gave him in seven games the odds of Pawn and two moves, in seven games the odds of Pawn and move, and in seven games played upon even terms. The result of that match was unfavourable to Harrwitz, for he lost all the even games, won six games with Pawn and move, but only three with Pawn and two. Soon after, he played a match with Herr Horwitz, which he won six to five. A match which he played about that time in Germany with Anderssen was left unfinished, the players leaving off even. On his return to England, he played another match with Horwitz at Brighton, which he won seven to six. Also another match with the late Mr. Williams, who won the third prize in the great tournament of 1851. (We did not mention here the first match with Mr. Williams, which was played in 1847, and which Mr. Williams gave up after losing three games, and drawing two.) In this match Herr Harrwitz won seven games, and Mr. Williams none. In a third match with Mr. Williams, Herr Harrwitz scored seven to Mr. Williams's two. Finally, Herr Harrwitz won the great match with Herr Löwenthal in 1853—eleven games to eight, and twelve drawn. In that match the nominal score was eleven to ten: Herr Harrwitz by the conditions, having

been obliged to give up two games on account of illness. It may not be amiss to mention also a match at odds which Herr Harowitz has played, as the strength of his opponent, Mr. G. Medley, entitles it to notice. Herr Harowitz won eleven games to Mr. Medley's nine.

From the above enumeration it may be seen that Herr Harowitz has not been surpassed by any living player in match-play, either by the number of matches, or by the results: having beaten all his opponents except Mr. Staunton, against whom he broke his maiden lance.

In the discussion of Herr Harowitz's merits it would be unjust to omit one very important point: that is to say, blindfold play, of which though by no means great admirers, we must confess that he has been the most distinguished representative for a series of years. We use the words *a series of years* advisedly; for although we have had the splendid performances of Kieseritzki, Morphy, and Paulsen, we must remember that they have not travelled through the whole of England and Scotland, with their nerves likely to be shaken by railway, and then played with a Withers, a Gordon, and other distinguished amateurs.

Such was the opponent Mr. Morphy had to overcome in order to establish his renown. Mr. Morphy, still young in glory as well as in years—his achievements yet few, though by no means inconsiderable,—may have well been nervous in meeting an opponent with so many laurels.”—*Trans.*]

B.

As to the interest which was displayed in all the Paris Chess circles Staunton has the following in the *Illustrated London News*, September 25th:—

“This contest, we are told, excites the liveliest interest in the French capital, and is watched with intense anxiety, not only by all the accustomed frequenters of the Parisian Chess rendezvous, but by hundreds of amateurs who were never before within its precincts.”

C.

As to essays at prolongation on the part of the German player Staunton ironically but justly observes:—

“This contest having now entered what may be called the ‘sick phase,’ an indispensable condition, apparently, in all modern Chess matches, whenever one of the combatants gets two or three games ahead, how long the public will have to wait before hostilities recommence, it is hard to say. Herr Harowitz, the indisposed, who, it is consolatory to know, is not so prostrate but that he is enabled to enjoy his daily Chess in the Café de la Régence with opponents less troublesome than Mr. Morphy, has demanded a truce of eight or ten days. This his antagonist has at once agreed to conditionally, that at the expiration of that time a game shall be played daily until the victory is determined. The American's stipulation is so reasonable, considering he is only a sojourner in Paris, and he has shown such

readiness in all cases to conform to the wishes of his adversary, that it is incumbent upon the members of the French Chess circle not to allow of any further delay."

Mr. Staunton, when penning these lines, might have remembered his own behaviour against St. Amant, Anderssen, and even Morphy. He has, himself, on the plea of ill-health, preferred not to begin a second match with both of the above-mentioned European players, and on pretext of business engagements, in spite of former promises, he declined to enter a contest at all with the chivalrous champion of the New World.

D.

As to the peculiar termination of that match, the Chess papers have amongst others, the following remarks:—

1. First of all we find the following short notice in the *Sunday Times*:—

"We learn from Paris, that on Monday last, October 4th, Herr Harrwitz resigned this match, the score standing—Harrwitz, 2; Morphy, 5; drawn, 1; and Harrwitz having the move. Our correspondent adds, that Mr. Morphy refused to receive the stakes, saying that the match had not been played out."

2. The *American Monthly* in its November Number, p. 352, has the following:—

"Herr Harrwitz has resigned the match. Having asked a delay of some days to recruit his health, Mr. Morphy granted it on condition that a game should then be played daily until the contest should be brought to a close. After resuming and playing two additional games, Herr Harrwitz requested another delay, which his opponent was compelled to decline. Mr. Morphy's sojourn in France is limited, as he desires to encounter before his return several of the best players in Germany."

3. Herr Löwenthal in the *Era* says:—

"This match has been prematurely brought to a conclusion by the resignation of Herr Harrwitz on the plea of ill health, the score, after the eighth sitting being, Morphy, 5; Harrwitz, 2; drawn 1. Perhaps this was a wise step on the part of Herr Harrwitz, as it was very unlikely indeed that he would win another game; in fact the young American champion has beaten his opponent with the greatest ease. Mr. Morphy's acceptance of the resignation and refusal of the stakes, is but what we should have anticipated of one who is as honourable as he is chivalrous."

~~~~~

## CHAPTER XIV.

## THE MATCH WITH PROFESSOR ANDERSSSEN.

MORPHY had, for the first time, tried his skill with a strong German master, in his match with HAREWITZ, but the result of the match could not be considered a fair trial of strength between the young American and the champions of Germany. HAREWITZ, by his lengthened absence from his country, had almost become a stranger to it, and besides, Germany had two other representatives upon whom she could look with confidence: HEYDEBRANDT VON DER LASA the first theoretician in Chess, and a player of the utmost coolness and accuracy, and ANDERSSSEN, a practical player of great genius and deep combination, though far less self-possessed. Both players of great renown in the Old as well as New World, were yet left to dispute with young MORPHY the supremacy he coveted.

Fortune, however, soon favoured the young master, by bringing one of the two above-mentioned matadors to encounter him, and the scales which hitherto had been in favour of the champion of the New World, fell greatly. ANDERSSSEN, excited by his chivalrous zeal, could not wait even for the impatient young hero, but burning to measure his prowess with the admired and courted American, he went to Paris to meet him, and prepared for every risk, put his championship and his well earned laurel crown into the scales. Entered upon without any other condition, but that the winner of the first seven games should be the victor, this match was a rare occurrence in the annals of Chess contests, on account of the chivalrous behaviour of both parties. The whole of the match, consisting of eleven games, some of which were very obstinately contested, only lasted a week. The result of the score was, MORPHY seven, ANDERSSSEN two, and two drawn games.

The first game, an *Evans's Gambit*, in which MORPHY had the move, was masterly played on both sides, and was, in con-

sequence, won by the defending party. The same masterly play is to be seen in the second game, in which the brilliant attack of the first player was met by an obstinate defence, and the game was finally given up as a drawn battle. In the third game the American tried a new attack in the *Ruy Lopez Opening*, which variation, though introduced into practice by German players, is, comparatively, but little known; and this very game was won by the American champion, through an evident mistake of his opponent. In the fourth game, the same opening was played as in the second, up to the fifteenth move. The attack was then continued to the twenty-fourth move; but on the next move the German player, underrating his opponent's strength, allowed him a superiority of Pawns, which he could have easily prevented, thus ultimately losing the game. In the fifth game, ANDERSSSEN soon overcame the disadvantage of the opening he chose, viz., 1. "P. to Q. fourth," in answer to 1. "P. to K. fourth"; but then again relying too much upon the strength of his position, he ventured upon an over-daring attack by sacrificing a piece, which finally left the advantage to his persevering antagonist. In the sixth game, ANDERSSSEN began with Pawn to Queen's Rook's third, followed by Pawn to Queen's Bishop's fourth, thus commencing with a close opening. In this game he exhibited so much superiority, that he soon obtained a winning position; but at the decisive moment he broke down, missing the winning move, and again, it being in his power to draw the game, he finally lost it by a mistake. In the seventh game the Prussian player repeated the opening of the fifth, and thereby gave his powerful antagonist a welcome opportunity of displaying his eminent skill in open games. In the eighth game, the German fell back upon the close opening of the sixth, and made a drawn battle. In the next game the American master exhibited his perfect knowledge of the *Sicilian Opening*, and easily came off victorious by the help of a blunder on the part of his opponent. The tenth game shows the decided superiority of the German in close games, and the last gives a striking instance of the skill of the American in playing against the, so called, *French Opening*.

---

## GAME CXII.—FIRST GAME IN THE MATCH.

*(Evans's Gambit.)**White.* (MORPHY.)*Black.* (Herr ANDERSSSEN.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
5. P. to Q. B. third
6. P. to Q. fourth
7. Castles
8. P. to K. fifth
9. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth<sup>2</sup>
10. P. takes P.<sup>3</sup>
11. B. takes Kt.
12. Q. to Q. R. fourth
13. Q. takes Q. B. P.
14. B. to Q. Kt. second
15. P. takes B.
16. Kt. to Q. second
17. K. to R. square
18. P. to K. B. fourth \*
19. Q. takes Q. P.
20. K. to Kt. square
21. B. to Q. B. third
22. Q. to K. B. third
23. K. to R. square
24. Q. to K. Kt. second
25. R. to K. Kt. square
26. Q. R. to K. B. square
27. Q. to Q. B. sixth<sup>8</sup>
28. Q. to K. Kt. second
29. B. takes B.
30. Kt. to K. B. third
31. P. to K. R. fourth
32. Q. to K. Kt. fourth
33. R. to K. Kt. second
34. Q. to K. B. fifth
35. Q. to K. B. sixth

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. B. takes Kt. P.
5. B. to Q. R. fourth
6. P. takes P.
7. Kt. to K. B. third<sup>1</sup>
8. P. to Q. fourth
9. Kt. to K. fifth
10. Castles<sup>4</sup>
11. P. takes B.
12. B. to Q. Kt. third
13. B. to K. Kt. fifth
14. B. takes Kt.
15. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth
16. R. to K. square
17. Kt. to K. R. sixth
18. Q. to K. R. fifth<sup>5</sup>
19. Kt. takes K. B. P. (ch)
20. Kt. to Q. sixth
21. Kt. takes P. at K. B. fourth<sup>6</sup>
22. Kt. to K. R. sixth (check)
23. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth
24. Q. R. to Q. square
25. P. to K. R. third
26. Q. to K. R. sixth<sup>7</sup>
27. Q. to Q. second
28. B. takes Q. P.
29. Q. takes B.
30. Q. to Q. fourth
31. Kt. to K. third
32. Q. to Q. B. third
33. R. to Q. sixth
34. K. R. to Q. square
35. Q. to Q. fourth<sup>9</sup>

- |                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 36. Q. to K. B. fifth                 | 36. R. to Q. eighth                   |
| 37. R. takes R.                       | 37. Q. takes R. (check)               |
| 38. K. to R. second                   | 38. R. to Q. sixth                    |
| 39. R. to K. B. second                | 39. R. to K. sixth                    |
| 40. Kt. to Q. second                  | 40. R. to K. seventh <sup>10</sup>    |
| 41. Q. takes K. B. P. (ch.)           | 41. K. to R. square                   |
| 42. Kt. to K. fourth                  | 42. R. takes R. (check) <sup>11</sup> |
| 43. Kt. takes R.                      | 43. Q. to Q. fourth                   |
| 44. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth              | 44. Q. takes Q. R. P. (ch.)           |
| 45. K. to Kt. third                   | 45. Q. to Q. Kt. sixth (ch.)          |
| 46. K. to R. second                   | 46. Q. to B. seventh (check)          |
| 47. K. to Kt. third                   | 47. Q. to Q. B. sixth (check)         |
| 48. K. to R. second                   | 48. Q. to Q. B. third <sup>12</sup>   |
| 49. P. to K. R. fifth                 | 49. P. to Q. R. fourth <sup>13</sup>  |
| 50. Kt. to K. B. sixth <sup>14</sup>  | 50. P. takes Kt.                      |
| 51. Q. takes P. (check)               | 51. K. to Kt. square                  |
| 52. Q. to K. Kt. sixth (ch.)          | 52. K. to B. square                   |
| 53. Q. takes R. P. (check)            | 53. K. to K. square                   |
| 54. Q. to K. Kt. sixth (ch.)          | 54. K. to Q. second                   |
| 55. P. to K. R. sixth                 | 55. Q. to Q. fourth                   |
| 56. P. to K. R. seventh <sup>15</sup> | 56. Q. takes P. (check)               |
| 57. K. to Kt. square                  | 57. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth              |
| 58. P. to R. eighth (queens)          | 58. Q. takes Q.                       |
| 59. Q. takes Kt.                      | 59. Q. to Q. fifth (check)            |
| 60. K. to B. square                   | 60. P. to Q. R. fifth                 |
| 61. Q. to K. B. fifth (check)         | 61. K. to Q. B. third                 |
| 62. Q. to Q. B. eighth                | 62. K. to Q. Kt. fourth               |
| 63. K. to K. square <sup>16</sup>     | 63. P. to Q. B. fourth                |
| 64. Q. to Q. Kt. seventh (ch.)        | 64. K. to Q. B. fifth                 |
| 65. Q. to K. B. seventh (ch.)         | 65. K. to Q. B. sixth                 |
| 66. Q. to K. B. third (check)         | 66. Q. to Q. sixth                    |
| 67. Q. to K. B. sixth (check)         | 67. K. to Q. Kt. sixth                |
| 68. Q. to Q. Kt. sixth (ch.)          | 68. K. to Q. B. seventh               |
| 69. Q. to Q. R. seventh <sup>17</sup> | 69. Q. to Q. B. sixth (check)         |
| 70. K. to K. second                   | 70. P. to Q. R. sixth                 |
| 71. Q. to Q. R. fourth (ch.)          | 71. K. to Kt. seventh                 |
| 72. Q. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)        | 72. Q. to Q. Kt. sixth                |

And White surrendered. <sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The correctness of this defence has been first demonstrated by the author in the *Berlin Schachzeitung* of 1852. We have also



repeatedly pointed out its merits in the present volume, and especially in our Note 1 to Game X. p. 37. Recently Anderssen himself approved of our opinion, although in a previous analysis of the *Evans's Gambit* (*Berlin Schachzeitung* of 1851) he endeavoured to show, that the move in question is incorrect, if, instead of castling, the first player had played "P. to Q. fourth" on the sixth move.

<sup>2</sup> In the authors "*Schachparthieen*" (No. 31, p. 86) as well as in the *German Handbook* (Third Edition, p. 148) it has been shown that "P. takes Kt." at this point is inferior to the move in the text.

Suppose :—

*White.*

9. P. takes Kt.
10. P. takes K. Kt. P.
11. B. to K. Kt. fifth
12. Q. Kt. to Q. second
13. Q. to Q. R. fourth
14. Q. to Q. R. third

*Black.*

9. P. takes B.
10. R. to K. Kt. square
11. Q. to Q. fourth
12. Q. B. to K. B. fourth
13. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
14. K. to Q. second

And Black will soon be able to play "Q. R. to K. square," with the better game.

<sup>3</sup> He could have equally played "Kt. takes Q. P." *Ex. gr.*—

*White.*

10. Kt. takes P.
11. B. takes Kt.
12. Q. B. to Q. R. third

*Black.*

10. B. to Q. second
11. P. takes B.
12. B. to Q. Kt. third

&c.

In the analysis referred to, Anderssen recommended 10. "B. to Q. R. third," instead of taking the Q. P. The following variation, however, would turn in Black's favour :—

*White.*

10. B. to Q. R. third
11. Q. to Q. Kt. third
12. Q. takes Q. P. (or A)
13. Q. takes K. Kt.

*Black.*

10. B. to Q. second
11. K. B. takes Q. B. P.
12. B. takes R.
13. Kt. to K. second, etc.

A.

12. Kt. takes B.
13. B. takes Q. Kt.
14. Kt. takes P.
15. P. to K. B. third
16. Q. to Q. Kt. seventh

12. Kt. takes Kt.
13. P. takes B.
14. Kt. to K. fifth
15. Kt. to Q. seventh
16. Q. to Q. Kt. square, with the better game.

<sup>4</sup> The *German Handbook* here gives "B. to Q. second." Anderssen, however, considers castling at this point at least equally good, and we coincide with his opinion.

\* [We observed in the *Sunday Times*.—"This move is quite characteristic of Morphy's style. Rather than be embarrassed by a tedious defence, he chances a Pawn, even against so strong an antagonist, to maintain the attack.—*Trans.*]

<sup>6</sup> Had he taken P. with Kt., White could have answered with "R. to K. Kt. square," taking advantage of the open Rook's file.

<sup>6</sup> It is remarkable how masterly Black has, up to this point, maintained his material advantage, without allowing his opponent to take up the attack. The preceding, as well as the following moves of the agile Black Knight, deserve particular attention.

<sup>7</sup> Black could not have taken P. with B. without the loss of the exchange, as White would have replied to it with "Kt. to K. B. third."

<sup>8</sup> "Q. takes Q.," followed by "R. to K. Kt. fourth," would have been more advisable.

<sup>9</sup> Compulsory, as White threatened to take Kt. P. with R., checking.

<sup>10</sup> Black aims at a speedy termination of the game, by exchanging the pieces, clearly foreseeing the result, and not shrinking from the apparent danger of his King being put in jeopardy, which he masterly averts by his following moves of the Queen.

<sup>11</sup> If "R. takes Kt." "Q. takes Kt."; and if then "R. takes R. P." checking, K. moves to Kt. third, with a good game.

<sup>12</sup> In addition to our Note 10, we here give Falkbeer's remarks to Black's last move, acknowledging the depth of Black's manoeuvres:—"All these manoeuvres, although they appear to lose time, are very deep, it being Black's intention to establish his Queen at her B. third, to protect the Kt., and at the same time to prevent the check of the Q. followed by the sacrifice of the Kt., which might have resulted in a drawn game.

<sup>13</sup> Instead of advancing the Pawn, he could have checked with Q. on Q. B. seventh, when the following variation might have occurred:—

*White.*

- 50. K. to Kt. third
- 51. K. to R. second
- 52. K. takes Q.
- 53. K. to Kt. third

*Black.*

- 49. Q. to Q. B. seventh (check)
- 50. Q. to Q. B. sixth (check)
- 51. Q. to K. R. sixth (check)
- 52. Kt. to Kt. fourth (check)
- 53. Kt. takes Q.

In this position White has still some chance of drawing the game, on account of his passed Pawn on Q. fifth, which he threatens to advance on the next move.

<sup>14</sup> A brilliant sacrifice, which, however, is frustrated by the coolness and perseverance of the German master, who proves himself equal to his opponent.

<sup>15</sup> No other move could have saved the game. The only plausible one, viz., "Q. to R. fifth," would have led to the following termination:—

*White.*

- 56. Q. to K. R. fifth
- 57. K. to R. square

*Black.*

- 56. Q. to Q. seventh (check)

(If "K. to Kt. third," or Kt. square, Black checks with Q. on K. Kt. fourth.)

58. K. to R. second  
 59. K. to R. square  
 60. P. to R. seventh (or A.)
57. Q. to Q. B. eighth (check)  
 58. Q. to K. B. fifth (check)  
 59. Kt. to Kt. fourth  
 60. Q. to K. fifth (ch.), and wins.

A.

61. Q. to K. B. eighth (check)  
 62. Kt. to B. sixth (check)  
 63. Q. to Kt. eighth (check), and wins equally.
60. Q. to K. Kt. sixth  
 61. K. to R. second  
 62. K. to Kt. third

<sup>16</sup> If "Q. takes P.," Black checks with Q. on Q. B. fifth, and queens the R. P.

<sup>17</sup> Again he could not have taken the B. P., on account of Black's following move.

<sup>18</sup> This game was played at the Hôtel Brétenil in Paris, on the 20th December, 1858, and lasted seven hours.

## GAME CXIII.—SECOND GAME IN THE MATCH.

*(Ruy Lopez.)**White.* (Herr ANDERSEN.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. Kt. to B. third
3. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
4. B. to Q. R. fourth
5. P. to Q. third <sup>2</sup>
6. P. to Q. B. third
7. B. to Q. B. second <sup>4</sup>
8. P. takes P.
9. P. to K. R. third
10. Castles
11. P. to Q. fourth
12. P. takes P.
13. Kt. to Q. B. third
14. B. to Q. Kt. square \*
15. P. to Q. R. third
16. Q. Kt. to K. second
17. Q. B. to K. third
18. Kt. to K. Kt. third
19. Kt. to K. B. fifth <sup>7</sup>
20. Q. takes B.

*Black.* (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Q. Kt. to B. third
3. P. to Q. R. third <sup>1</sup>
4. Kt. to K. B. third
5. B. to Q. B. fourth
6. P. to Q. Kt. fourth <sup>3</sup>
7. P. to Q. fourth
8. Kt. takes P.
9. Castles
10. P. to K. R. third
11. P. takes P.
12. B. to Q. Kt. third
13. K. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth
14. Q. B. to K. third <sup>5</sup>
15. Kt. to Q. fourth
16. Kt. to K. B. third <sup>6</sup>
17. R. to K. square
18. B. to Q. B. fifth
19. B. takes R.
20. Q. Kt. to K. second

- |                                     |                                          |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 21. K. Kt. to R. fourth             | 21. Kt. takes Kt.                        |
| 22. Kt. takes Kt.                   | 22. Q. to Q. second                      |
| 23. B. takes K. R. P. <sup>8</sup>  | 23. P. takes B.                          |
| 24. Q. to Q. B. square              | 24. B. takes P. <sup>9</sup>             |
| 25. Q. takes K. R. P. <sup>10</sup> | 25. R. to K. eighth (check)              |
| 26. K. to R. second                 | 26. Kt. to K. fifth                      |
| 27. B. takes Kt.                    | 27. R. takes B. <sup>11</sup>            |
| 28. Q. to K. Kt. fifth (check)      | 28. K. to B. square                      |
| 29. Q. to K. R. sixth (check)       | 29. K. to K. square                      |
| 30. Kt. takes B.                    | 30. Q. to Q. third (check) <sup>12</sup> |
| 31. Q. takes Q. <sup>13</sup>       | 31. P. takes Q.                          |
| 32. R. to Q. square                 | 32. K. to B. square                      |
| 33. R. to Q. second                 | 33. Q. R. to K. square                   |
| 34. P. to K. Kt. fourth             | 34. Q. R. to K. fourth                   |
| 35. P. to K. B. third               | 35. R. to K. eighth                      |
| 36. P. to K. R. fourth              | 36. R. to Q. fourth                      |
| 37. K. to Kt. third                 | 37. P. to Q. R. fourth                   |
| 38. P. to K. R. fifth               | 38. K. to Kt. square                     |
| 39. K. to B. second                 | 39. R. to K. square                      |
| 40. K. to Kt. third                 | 40. R. to K. second                      |
| 41. K. to B. fourth                 | 41. K. to R. second                      |
| 42. K. to Kt. third                 | 42. R. to K. sixth                       |
| 43. K. to B. fourth                 | 43. R. to K. square                      |
| 44. K. to Kt. third                 | 44. R. to K. second                      |

Both parties persisting in these moves, the game was given up as drawn.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> It would be stronger to play "Kt. to K. B. third" at once. The White Bishop is well placed at Q. R. fourth, and if Black, in order to dislodge him, should venture upon advancing the Q. Kt. P., the Queen's side will be exposed. An elaborate analysis of this variation can be found in the author's *Schachparthien*. p. 43.

<sup>2</sup> Castling at this point would be stronger; for if Black takes K. P. with Kt., White answers with "R. to K. square," followed, eventually, by "P. to Q. fourth." Still the move in the text has some merit of its own, as the first player threatens to play "P. to Q. B. third" on the next move. In this position Black's game is extremely confined, and the slightest error will place it in jeopardy, as indeed, can be seen by the next moves. Nevertheless Herr Löwenthal zealously censured the move "P. to Q. third," exaggerating the force of other attacks, and pretending that the above move has only been made for the sake of the defence, whilst Herr Falkbeer did full justice

to the first player, thus concluding his notes :—

"The brilliancy of this game, one of the best which was ever played since the arrival of Mr. Morphy in Europe, reflects great credit both on the American champion and on his renowned antagonist. The spirited and energetic manner in which White followed up his attack, and also the tenacity of Black's defence, are equally deserving of admiration."

<sup>3</sup> The *German Handbook* recommends "Q. to K. second" in the following variation :—

*White.*

1. P. to K. fourth
2. K. Kt. to B. third
3. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
4. P. to Q. third
5. P. to Q. B. third
6. Castles
7. P. to Q. fourth
8. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth

*Black.*

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Q. Kt. to B. third
3. Kt. to K. B. third
4. B. to Q. B. fourth
5. Q. to K. second
6. Castles
7. B. to Q. Kt. third
8. P. to Q. third

In the present position, however, the move in the text is preferable, as "Q. to K. second" at this point, could be answered with "P. to Q. fourth," and, if "P. takes P.," with castling on the next move.

<sup>4</sup> It may be left as an open question whether the retreat of the Bishop to Q. Kt. third, should not be more advisable at this juncture. However, we for our part, have no occasion to answer that question so positively as Herr Löwenthal does, stating :—"We much prefer 'B. to Q. Kt. third,'" without giving any reason for this assertion.

\* [We have thus commented upon this position in the *Sunday Times* :—

"Had he advanced the Q.'s Pawn instead of this move, to avoid the apparent loss of a Pawn, the following variation, which would have resulted in Black's favor, might have arisen.

*White.*

14. P. to Q. fifth
15. B. to K. fourth
16. P. to Q. sixth
17. P. takes Kt.
18. Kt. to Q. fifth
19. Q. takes Kt.
20. Q. takes P.

*Black.*

14. Kt. to K. second
15. P. to K. B. fourth
16. P. takes B.
17. Q. takes P.
18. Kt. takes Kt.
19. B. to K. third
20. Q. to K. B. third

With the better game.

Or,

*White.*

16. Q. to Q. Kt. third
17. P. to Q. sixth (dis. ch.)
18. Q. takes Kt.
19. Q. takes Q. (best)
20. Kt. takes K. P.
21. Q. Kt. to Q. second

*Black.*

16. P. takes K. B.
17. K. to R. square
18. Q. takes P.
19. P. takes Q.
20. P. to Q. fourth

This move being compulsory to save the K. R. P. Black has decidedly the better game.

If, however, White at his fourteenth move had preferred to protect his Q. P. with the Bishop, the annexed interesting variation would have probably occurred.

| <i>White.</i>          | <i>Black.</i>          |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 14. Q. B. to K. third  | 14. Kt. takes B.       |
| 15. Q. takes Kt.       | 15. Kt. takes P.       |
| 16. B. takes Kt.       | 16. B. takes B.        |
| 17. Q. R. to Q. square | 17. P. to Q. B. fourth |
| 18. Kt. takes B.       | 18. P. takes Kt.       |
| 19. Q. to K. fourth    |                        |

With a good game."—*Trans.*]

\* Black could not have taken the P. with impunity. Suppose:—

| <i>White.</i>                            | <i>Black.</i>              |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 15. Q. Kt. to K. second                  | 14. B. takes Q. P. (or A.) |
| 16. P. to Q. R. third                    | 15. B. to Q. Kt. third     |
| 17. Q. to Q. B. second, winning a piece. | 16. Kt. to Q. fourth       |

A.

|                          |                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 15. Kt. takes Kt.        | 14. Kt. takes Q. P.            |
| 16. Q. to K. B. third    | 15. B. takes Kt.               |
| 17. Q. to K. fourth, &c. | 16. Q. B. to K. third, (or B.) |

B.

|                                |                       |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 17. R. to Q. square            | 16. P. to Q. B. third |
| 18. Q. to K. fourth, and wins. | 17. Q. to K. B. third |

<sup>6</sup> Necessary, as White threatened to play "Q. to Q. B. second," winning a piece. In the fourth game in the match, in which, up to this point, the same moves were played, Anderssen played 16. "Q. B. to K. third," instead of the move in the text.

<sup>7</sup> This way of establishing the Knight on K. B. fifth, is one of the favorite manœuvres of the German master, by which he has obtained many a brilliant victory. Had he played "R. to K. square," instead, Black could have taken the Q. P. with impunity; "Q. B. to Q. third," however, would have lessened the attack, which it is White's evident intention to keep up by all means.

<sup>8</sup> The depth and elegance of this sacrifice is acknowledged even by Herr Löwenthal, as follows:—"From personal experience we know how dangerous it is to make such a sacrifice as this, in contending with Mr. Morphy, whose insight into a difficult position is such as to enable him to hit the blot which almost invariably accompanies the giving up of a piece for a Pawn. Mr. Anderssen, however, here follows up the game with great accuracy and ingenuity, and the result does him much credit."

We have no doubt that the sacrifice of the Bishop at this critical

point, was perfectly correct and opportune, the more so, as the preparatory and seemingly strong move "Q. to Q. B. square," could have effectually been replied to with "Kt. to K. fifth," shutting up the white Bishop.

<sup>9</sup> Had he now played "Kt. to K. fifth," White would have answered with "Q. to K. B. fourth."

<sup>10</sup> "Kt. takes P. (check)" would have been less efficacious. True, White would have won, had Black moved the King to R. square. Suppose:—

*White.*

25. Kt. takes P. (check)

26. B. to K. B. fifth

("Q. to Q. third" is, this time, out of the question.)

27. Q. to K. B. fourth

("Q. to K. Kt. fifth" could be answered with "B. takes B. P. check.")

*Black.*

25. K. to R. square

26. Q. to K. second

27. Any move.

28. Q. to K. R. fourth, etc.

"K. to B. square," however, would have led to the following result:—

*White.*

25. Kt. takes P. (check)

26. B. to K. B. fifth

27. Q. to K. Kt. fifth

28. K. to B. square

29. P. to K. B. fourth

*Black.*

25. K. to B. square

26. Q. to Q. third

27. R. to K. fourth

28. Q. R. to K. square

29. R. to K. seventh, and wins.

<sup>11</sup> If "R. takes R," White would have at least ensured a drawn game by checking with K. on Kt. seventh, followed by "B. to R. seventh (check)".

<sup>12</sup> Had Black taken the Kt. with either Q. or R., White would in either case, have won the Queen's Rook, by checking with Q. accordingly. Even Herr Löwenthal here remarks:—"The last series of moves has been admirably played by the German master."

<sup>13</sup> Anderssen never displays his powers so effectually, as after having exchanged the Queens. He is justly considered the greatest living Chess player with regard to the skilful management of the minor pieces.

<sup>14</sup> This game was played Dec. 21, 1858, and lasted five hours.

## GAME CXIV.—THIRD GAME IN THE MATCH.

(Same Opening.)

*White.* (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth

2. K. Kt. to B. third

*Black.* (HERR ANDERSSSEN.)

1. P. to K. fourth

2. Q. Kt. to B. third

- |                                    |                                         |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 3. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth           | 3. K. Kt. to B. third                   |
| 4. P. to Q. fourth <sup>1</sup>    | 4. Kt. takes P.                         |
| 5. Kt. takes Kt.                   | 5. P. takes Kt.                         |
| 6. P. to K. fifth                  | 6. P. to Q. B. third <sup>2</sup>       |
| 7. Castles                         | 7. P. takes B.                          |
| 8. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth           | 8. K. B. to K. second <sup>3</sup>      |
| 9. P. takes Kt.                    | 9. B. takes P. <sup>4</sup>             |
| 10. R. to K. square (check)        | 10. K. to B. square                     |
| 11. B. takes B.                    | 11. Q. takes B.                         |
| 12. P. to Q. B. third <sup>5</sup> | 12. P. to Q. fourth                     |
| 13. P. takes P.                    | 13. Q. B. to K. third                   |
| 14. Q. Kt. to B. third             | 14. P. to Q. R. third                   |
| 15. R. to K. fifth                 | 15. R. to Q. square                     |
| 16. Q. to Q. Kt. third             | 16. Q. to K. second                     |
| 17. Q. R. to K. square             | 17. P. to K. Kt. fourth <sup>6</sup>    |
| 18. Q. to Q. square                | 18. Q. to K. B. third                   |
| 19. Q. R. to K. third              | 19. K. R. to K. Kt. square <sup>7</sup> |
| 20. R. takes B. <sup>8</sup>       |                                         |

And Black surrendered.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This strong move has been recommended and elaborately analysed in the Author's *Lehrbuch*, p. 229, and in his *Schachpartieen*, p. 55.

<sup>2</sup> Löwenthal calls this a weak move, and Falkbeer goes as far as to call it an unfavourable innovation. Both writers, it seems, have not the slightest notion of the fact, that in former editions of the *German Handbook* the move in question has been recommended as the proper answer to castling.\* The *Handbook* gives also the following variation:—

*White.*

6. P. to K. fifth
7. P. takes Kt.
8. P. to Q. B. third
9. Q. takes P.
10. Q. takes K. B. P.

*Black.*

6. P. to Q. B. third
7. Q. to Q. R. fourth (ch.)
8. Q. takes B.
9. P. takes P.
10. R. to K. Kt. square, with a good game.

In order to improve White's game and to strengthen the attack, the author in his *Schachpartieen* has substituted 7. Castles for White, and there continued the game as follows:—

- |                             |                      |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| 7. Castles                  | 7. P. takes B.       |
| 8. B. to Q. Kt. fifth       | 8. B. to K. second   |
| 9. P. takes Kt.             | 9. B. takes P.       |
| 10. R. to K. square (check) | 10. K. to B. square  |
| 11. B. takes B.             | 11. Q. takes B., &c. |

The editor, therefore, is fully entitled to claim the authorship of



this important variation, which has been afterwards adopted in the third edition of the *German Handbook*. This is not the first case where Morphy has taken his opponents by surprise through some novel move, which, however, has been previously discovered and analysed by the German school,—a fact which he has acknowledged himself in his own notes to his games in the *Chess Monthly*.

The move 6. “Kt. to K. fifth,” instead of “P. to Q. B. third,” is also deserving of attention.

\* [Just so: but White *has* not castled on the sixth move! In our note in the *Sunday Times*, to which the author refers, we doubted the correctness of Black’s sixth move, “P. to Q. B. third,” calling it “a novel move, but of rather doubtful soundness.” Now, the author himself admits, that this move was only approved of in the former editions of the *German Handbook* in answer to castling, or on the supposition, that White should take Kt. with P. on the next move; and in his own work, as well as in the last edition of the above-named Treatise, the move in question is proved to be unsound altogether! Still he finds fault with us for coming to the same conclusion. This is singular logic indeed. Herr Lange, it seems, has either made a mistake, or he is begging the question; at all events his argument falls to the ground, if it implies that we ever questioned the authority of his predecessors.—*Trans.*]

“P. to K. R. third” instead would be less efficacious.—*Ex. gr.:—*

*White.*

8. P. to K. R. third
9. P. takes P. (or A)
10. B. to K. second

*Black.*

8. P. takes Kt.
9. R. to K. square (check)
10. B. takes B. P., &c.

**A.**

9. P. takes B.
10. B. to B. second
11. K to R. square

9. R. to K. square (check)
10. R. takes B. (check)
11. P. takes Kt. P. (check),  
and wins.

See the author’s *Schachpartieen*, p. 55.

“If “P. takes P.,” White takes Q. P. with Q., followed by “B. to K. B. fourth,” if Black moves “K. R. to Kt. square.”

“The first player can also play, “Kt. to Q. Kt. third” with great advantage. This move is given in the author’s *Schachpartieen*, and has often been successfully carried out by himself in practical play. Thus a game played by the editor, led to the ensuing termination:—

*White.*

12. Kt. to Q. R. third
13. Q. to K. second
14. Q. to Q. second
15. Q. to Q. Kt. fourth (ch.)
16. Kt. to Q. B. fourth
17. Kt. takes Q. P.
18. R. mates

*Black.*

12. P. to Q. R. third
13. Q. to K. third
14. Q. to Q. Kt. third
15. P. to Q. third
16. Q. to Q. B. fourth
17. Q. takes Q.

In another game, played between the author and Herr Anderssen, the following moves occurred :—

*White.*

12. Kt. to Q. R. third
13. Q. to K. second
14. Q. R. to Q. square
15. R. to Q. third
16. R. to K. B. third
17. Q. to Q. second
18. Q. takes P. (check)
19. P. to K. Kt. fourth
20. R. takes B. P., and wins.

*Black.*

12. P. to Q. R. third
13. P. to K. Kt. third
14. K. to Kt. second
15. P. to Q. fourth
16. Q. to Q. third
17. B. to K. B. fourth
18. P. to K. B. third
19. B. to Q. B. square

Thus Black (Anderssen) made the same mistake in this as in the above game with Morphy, by placing his Queen in jeopardy.

<sup>6</sup> This is an error. The correct move would have been "P. to K. Kt. third."

<sup>7</sup> Obviously an oversight. He ought to have played "K. to R. square."

[We should think, that "P to K. Kt. fifth" was the correct move at this juncture. A careful examination of this intricate position will show, that with the move suggested by us, Black would have turned the attack, and have rather the best of the game.—*Trans.*]

<sup>8</sup> It is clear, that if "P. takes R.," White wins the Queen on the next move by playing "R. to K. B. third."

<sup>9</sup> This game was played December 22nd, 1858, and lasted about two hours

### GAME CXV.—FOURTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(Same Opening.)

*White.* (HERR ANDERSSSEN.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. B. to Q. Kt. fifth
4. B. to Q. R. fourth
5. P. to Q. third
6. P. to Q. B. third
7. B. to Q. B. second
8. P. takes P.
9. P. to K. R. third
10. Castles
11. P. to Q. fourth

*Black.* (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. P. to Q. R. third
4. Kt. to K. B. third
5. B. to Q. B. fourth
6. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
7. P. to Q. fourth
8. Kt. takes P.
9. Castles
10. P. to K. R. third
11. P. takes P.

- |                                         |                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 12. P. takes P.                         | 12. B. to Q. Kt. third               |
| 13. Kt. to Q. B. third                  | 13. K. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth           |
| 14. B. to Q. Kt. square                 | 14. Q. B. to K. third                |
| 15. P. to Q. R. third                   | 15. Kt. to Q. fourth                 |
| 16. Q. B. to K. third <sup>1</sup>      | 16. Kt. to K. B. third               |
| 17. Q. to Q. second <sup>2</sup>        | 17. R. to K. square                  |
| 18. K. R. to Q. square                  | 18. B. to Q. fourth <sup>3</sup>     |
| 19. Kt. to K. fifth                     | 19. Q. to Q. third                   |
| 20. Q. to Q. B. second <sup>4</sup>     | 20. Kt. takes Q. P.                  |
| 21. B. takes Kt.                        | 21. B. takes B.                      |
| 22. Kt. takes Q. B. <sup>5</sup>        | 22. Q. takes K. Kt. <sup>6</sup>     |
| 23. Kt. takes Kt. (check)               | 23. Q. takes Kt.                     |
| 24. Q. to K. R. seventh (ch.)           | 24. K. to B. square                  |
| 25. B. to K. fourth                     | 25. Q. R. to Q. square               |
| 26. K. to R. square <sup>7</sup>        | 26. B. takes Q. Kt. P.               |
| 27. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square <sup>8</sup> | 27. R. takes R. (check)              |
| 28. R. takes R.                         | 28. Q. takes K. B. P.                |
| 29. Q. to R. eighth (check)             | 29. K. to K. second                  |
| 30. Q. to R. seventh                    | 30. B. to K. fourth                  |
| 31. B. to K. B. third                   | 31. Q. to Kt. sixth                  |
| 32. K. to Kt. square                    | 32. Q. to Kt. third                  |
| 33. Q. takes Q.                         | 33. P. takes Q.                      |
| 34. B. to Q. Kt. seventh                | 34. R. to Q. Kt. square              |
| 35. B. takes Q. R. P.                   | 35. P. to Q. B. third                |
| 36. K. to B. second                     | 36. B. to Q. third                   |
| 37. R. to Q. third <sup>9</sup>         | 37. K. to Q. second                  |
| 38. K. to K. second                     | 38. R. to Q. R. square <sup>10</sup> |
| 39. B. to Q. Kt. seventh                | 39. R. takes Q. R. P.                |
| 40. B. to Q. B. eighth (ch.)            | 40. K. to B. second                  |
| 41. R. to Q. square                     | 41. R. to Q. R. seventh (ch.)        |
| 42. K. to B. third                      | 42. B. to Q. B. fourth               |
| 43. B. to K. sixth                      | 43. R. to K. B. seventh (ch.)        |
| 44. K. to Kt. third                     | 44. R. to K. B. third                |
| 45. R. to Q. seventh (check)            | 45. K. to Kt. third                  |
| 46. B. to K. Kt. fourth                 | 46. B. to Q. third (check)           |
| 47. K. to R. fourth                     | 47. P. to Q. B. fourth               |
| 48. B. to K. B. third                   | 48. P. to Q. B. fifth                |
| 49. R. takes K. Kt. P.                  | 49. R. to K. B. fifth (check)        |
| 50. B. to K. Kt. fourth                 | 50. P. to Q. B. sixth                |
| 51. P. to K. Kt. third                  | 51. R. takes B. (check)              |

And White resigned.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In the second game Anderssen played at this point, "Q. Kt. to K. second."

<sup>2</sup> With the twofold object of placing the Rook on Queen's square, and of capturing the R. P. with Q. B. at the right moment.

<sup>3</sup> Decidedly stronger than "Q. Kt. to Q. R. fourth," which could have been answered with the above-mentioned sacrifice.

<sup>4</sup> Had he taken the B. with Q. Kt., the following moves might have occurred:—

| <i>White.</i>                                         | <i>Black.</i>                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 20. Q. Kt. takes B.                                   | 20. Kt. takes Kt.                             |
| (If Q. takes Kt., White plays K. B. to Q. R. second). |                                               |
| 21. Q. to Q. B. second                                | 21. Kt. takes Q. B.                           |
| 22. P. takes Kt.                                      | 22. Kt. takes Kt.                             |
| 23. P. takes Kt.                                      | 23. Q. takes K. P.                            |
| 24. Q. to R. seventh (check)                          | 24. K. to B. square                           |
| 25. K. B. to K. B. fifth                              | 25. B. takes P. (check)                       |
| 26. K. to R. square                                   | 26. P. to K. Kt. third, with the better game. |

<sup>5</sup> "K. Kt. to K. Kt. fourth" instead, would have much improved White's attack.

<sup>6</sup> This is the correct reply. Had he taken Q. Kt. with Q., White could have advantageously answered with "Kt. to Q. B. sixth."

<sup>7</sup> This is the turning point of the game. White ought to have played now "R. to K. B. square," and thus obtained the better game; for if Black, on the next move, takes Q. Kt. P. with B., White can effectually reply to it with "Q. R. to K. square." By the weak move above White missed the opportunity of following up successfully an attack, which was well planned hitherto.

<sup>8</sup> In answer to "K. R. to K. square," Black could have played "P. to K. Kt. fourth."

<sup>9</sup> Even "P. to Q. R. fourth," at this point would scarcely have saved the game.

<sup>10</sup> "K. to B. second," instead, would have led to the following result:—

| <i>White.</i>                                                  | <i>Black.</i>                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 39. P. to Q. R. fourth                                         | 38. K. to Q. B. second        |
| 40. P. takes P.                                                | 39. B. to K. B. square (or A) |
| 41. R. to Q. B. third (check)                                  | 40. P. takes P.               |
| 42. R. to Q. B. eighth, thus liberating the imprisoned Bishop. | 41. K. to Q. Kt. third        |

A.

|                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 40. P. takes P.         | 39. B. to K. fourth |
| 41. R. to Q. fifth, &c. | 40. P. takes P.     |

<sup>11</sup> This game was played immediately after the preceding, and lasted about four hours.

## GAME XCVI.—FIFTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

*(Irregular Opening.)*

- | <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)             | <i>Black.</i> (Herr ANDERSEN.)          |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth                  | 1. P. to Q. fourth <sup>1</sup>         |
| 2. P. takes P.                      | 2. K. Kt. to B. third                   |
| 3. P. to Q. fourth                  | 3. Kt. takes P. <sup>2</sup>            |
| 4. P. to Q. B. fourth               | 4. Kt. to K. B. third                   |
| 5. Q. Kt. to B. third               | 5. Q. B. to K. B. fourth                |
| 6. K. Kt. to B. third               | 6. P. to K. third                       |
| 7. Q. B. to K. third                | 7. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth                |
| 8. Q. to Q. Kt. third               | 8. B. takes Kt. (check)                 |
| 9. P. takes B.                      | 9. B. to K. fifth                       |
| 10. Kt. to Q. second                | 10. B. to Q. B. third                   |
| 11. K. B. to Q. third               | 11. Q. Kt. to Q. second <sup>3</sup>    |
| 12. Q. to Q. B. second              | 12. P. to K. R. third                   |
| 13. Castles (K. R.)                 | 13. Castles                             |
| 14. Q. R. to K. square              | 14. P. to Q. Kt. third                  |
| 15. P. to K. R. third               | 15. Q. to Q. B. square <sup>4</sup>     |
| 16. K. to R. second                 | 16. K. to R. square                     |
| 17. R. to K. Kt. square             | 17. R. to K. Kt. square                 |
| 18. P. to K. Kt. fourth             | 18. P. to K. Kt. fourth                 |
| 19. P. to K. B. fourth              | 19. Q. to K. B. square                  |
| 20. K. R. to K. Kt. third           | 20. Q. R. to Q. square                  |
| 21. Kt. to K. B. third              | 21. B. takes Kt.                        |
| 22. R. takes B.                     | 22. Q. to Q. third                      |
| 23. K. to K. Kt. second             | 23. K. Kt. to K. R. fourth <sup>5</sup> |
| 24. P. takes P.                     | 24. P. takes P.                         |
| 25. P. takes Kt.                    | 25. P. to K. Kt. fifth                  |
| 26. P. takes P.                     | 26. R. takes P. (check)                 |
| 27. K. to K. B. square              | 27. P. to K. B. fourth                  |
| 28. Q. to K. B. second <sup>6</sup> | 28. Kt. to K. fourth                    |
| 29. P. takes Kt.                    | 29. Q. takes B. (check)                 |
| 30. Q. to K. second                 | 30. Q. to K. fifth                      |
| 31. B. to K. B. second              | 31. Q. to Q. B. third                   |
| 32. Q. R. to Q. square              | 32. R. takes R. (check)                 |
| 33. Q. takes R.                     | 33. Q. takes P. (check)                 |
| 34. Q. to Q. third <sup>7</sup>     | 34. Q. takes Q. R. P.                   |
| 35. R. to K. Kt. third              | 35. Q. to Q. B. fifth                   |
| 36. Q. takes Q.                     | 36. R. takes Q.                         |

- |                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 37. R. to K. Kt. sixth      | 37. R. to Q. B. third           |
| 38. P. to Q. B. fourth      | 38. P. to Q. R. fourth          |
| 39. K. to K. second         | 39. R. takes P.                 |
| 40. R. takes P.             | 40. R. to Q. B. seventh (ch.)   |
| 41. K. to B. third          | 41. P. to Q. R. fifth           |
| 42. R. to K. Kt. sixth      | 42. R. to Q. B. fifth           |
| 43. R. to K. Kt. square     | 43. P. to Q. R. sixth           |
| 44. P. to K. sixth          | 44. P. to Q. R. seventh         |
| 45. R. to Q. R. square      | 45. R. to K. fifth              |
| 46. R. takes P.             | 46. R. takes P.                 |
| 47. K. to K. B. fourth      | 47. R. to Q. third <sup>8</sup> |
| 48. K. takes P.             | 48. R. to Q. fourth (check)     |
| 49. K. to Kt. fourth        | 49. P. to Q. Kt. fourth         |
| 50. R. to R. eighth (check) | 50. K. to R. second             |
| 51. R. to R. seventh        | 51. R. to Q. second             |
| 52. B. to K. Kt. third      | 52. R. to K. Kt. second (ch.)   |
| 53. K. to R. fourth         |                                 |

And Black resigned.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> From this point, up to the conclusion of the match, the German master changed his line of play, and endeavoured to throw his opponent upon his own resources, bidding farewell to openings which are thoroughly analysed by the books, and well-known by Morphy.

<sup>2</sup> This is undoubtedly the best move. It has been introduced, and warmly recommended by the author, in his *Kritik der Eröffnungen*, p. 319.

<sup>3</sup> Threatening to play "Kt. to Q. B. fourth." Still it would have been better play to take K. Kt. P. with B., with the view of castling afterwards on Q.'s side.

<sup>4</sup> Loss of time. Either "K. to R. square," or "B. to Q. Kt. second," would have been stronger. It is clear that Anderssen underrated the real meaning of his opponent's preceding move, which was not merely defensive, but rather made for the sake of attack.

<sup>5</sup> An over daring sacrifice, justifiable but on the expectation that Black should have taken the offered piece immediately. In this case "P. takes P. (dis. check)" would have been decisive.

<sup>6</sup> The defence is conducted with accomplished skill by Morphy.

<sup>7</sup> At this point Falkbeer made the following remark in the *Sunday Times* :—"We recommend this beautiful and instructive game to the particular attention of our readers. Both the attack and defence are admirably conducted, and it is our firm belief, that it required all the powers of the American champion to resist the fierce onslaught of his opponent. Even at this juncture the more obvious move, viz., "Q. to K. second" (in order to protect the Q. B. P.) would have

proved erroneous, White's answer being "Q. takes Q. (check)," followed by "R. to Q. R. fifth."

<sup>8</sup> The end-game is masterly played by both parties.

<sup>9</sup> This game was played on December 22, and lasted nearly five hours.

### GAME CXVII.—SIXTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

*(Irregular Opening.)*

*White.* (Herr ANDERSSSEN.)

*Black.* (MORPHY.)

- |                                        |                                     |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to Q. R. third <sup>1</sup>      | 1. P. to K. fourth                  |
| 2. P. to Q. B. fourth <sup>2</sup>     | 2. K. Kt. to B. third               |
| 3. Q. Kt. to B. third                  | 3. P. to Q. fourth                  |
| 4. P. takes P.                         | 4. Kt. takes P.                     |
| 5. P. to K. third <sup>3</sup>         | 5. Q. B. to K. third                |
| 6. K. Kt. to B. third                  | 6. K. B. to Q. third                |
| 7. K. B. to K. second                  | 7. Castles                          |
| 8. P. to Q. fourth <sup>4</sup>        | 8. Kt. takes Kt. <sup>5</sup>       |
| 9. P. takes Kt.                        | 9. P. to K. fifth <sup>6</sup>      |
| 10. Kt. to Q. second                   | 10. P. to K. B. fourth <sup>7</sup> |
| 11. P. to K. B. fourth <sup>8</sup>    | 11. P. to K. Kt. fourth             |
| 12. K. B. to Q. B. fourth <sup>9</sup> | 12. B. takes B.                     |
| 13. Kt. takes B.                       | 13. P. takes P.                     |
| 14. P. takes P. <sup>10</sup>          | 14. Q. to K. square                 |
| 15. Castles                            | 15. Q. to Q. B. third               |
| 16. Q. to Q. Kt. third                 | 16. Q. to Q. fourth                 |
| 17. Q. R. to Kt. square                | 17. P. to Q. Kt. third              |
| 18. Q. to Q. R. second                 | 18. P. to Q. B. third <sup>11</sup> |
| 19. Q. to K. second                    | 19. Kt. to Q. second                |
| 20. Kt. to K. third                    | 20. Q. to K. third                  |
| 21. P. to Q. B. fourth <sup>12</sup>   | 21. Kt. to K. B. third              |
| 22. Q. R. to Q. Kt. third              | 22. K. to B. second <sup>13</sup>   |
| 23. B. to Q. Kt. second                | 23. Q. R. to Q. B. square           |
| 24. K. to R. square <sup>14</sup>      | 24. K. R. to K. Kt. square          |
| 25. P. to Q. fifth                     | 25. P. takes P.                     |
| 26. P. takes P.                        | 26. Q. to Q. second <sup>15</sup>   |
| 27. Kt. to Q. B. fourth                | 27. K. to K. second                 |
| 28. B. takes Kt. (check) <sup>16</sup> | 28. K. takes B.                     |
| 29. Q. to Q. Kt. second (ch.)          | 29. K. to K. B. second              |

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 30. R. to K. R. third               | 30. K. R. to K. Kt. second       |
| 31. Q. to Q. fourth <sup>17</sup>   | 31. K. to Kt. square             |
| 32. K. R. to R. sixth <sup>18</sup> | 32. B. to K. B. square           |
| 33. P. to Q. sixth                  | 33. R. to K. B. second           |
| 34. Q. R. to R. third <sup>19</sup> | 34. Q. to Q. R. fifth            |
| 35. K. R. to Q. B. square           | 35. Q. R. to Q. B. fourth        |
| 36. Q. R. to K. Kt. third (ch.)     | 36. B. to K. Kt. second          |
| 37. P. to K. R. third               | 37. K. to R. square              |
| 38. R. takes B. <sup>20</sup>       | 38. R. takes R.                  |
| 39. R. to Q. B. third               | 39. P. to K. sixth <sup>21</sup> |
| 40. R. takes P.                     | 40. R. takes Kt.                 |
| 41. Q. to K. B. sixth <sup>22</sup> | 41. R. to Q. B. eighth (ch.)     |
| 42. K. to R. second                 | 42. Q. takes K. B. P. (check)    |

And Black resigns.<sup>23</sup>

<sup>1</sup> White obviously intended to turn it into the Sicilian Opening (which is weak without the preceding move, P. to Q. R. third, as may be seen in the ninth game of the match), and thus, by choosing a close opening, to throw the adversary upon the resources of his own genius. Black, however, could have also played "P. to Q. fourth," or "P. to K. B. fourth" on the first move. In the latter case White could have answered with 2. "P. to Q. fourth," Black's rejoinder being "P. to K. third;" and on White's third move, "P. to Q. B. fourth," Black could have played "Kt. to K. B. third," thus reducing the game to the so-called *Dutch opening*.—See *Schachzeitung*, January, 1859, p. 7.

<sup>2</sup> This is now the ordinary Sicilian game with the exception that White has the advantage of the move "P. to Q. R. third."

<sup>3</sup> If White were now to play "Kt. to K. B. third," Black would take the Queen's Knight and then play "P. to K. fifth." In the ordinary Sicilian Opening, however, without having moved the Q. R. P., that is to say after the moves:—

*White.*

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. P. to Q. fourth
4. Kt. takes P.

*Black.*

1. P. to Q. B. fourth
2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. P. takes P.
4. P. to K. third

White can play with advantage "Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth on the fifth move.

<sup>4</sup> Castling first, followed by "P. to Q. fourth," would have been better.—See the tenth game in the match.

<sup>5</sup> Black ought to have taken P. with P. and then played "Kt. to Q. B. third."

<sup>6</sup> The transatlantic master's great experience and ability in the different modes of conducting an attack in open games induces him



to employ the same tactics here, thereby showing that he mistakes the proper nature of a close game. The attack in an open game is generally managed, on account of the advanced King's Pawn by the advance of the B. P., and then by bringing the pieces to bear upon the royal wing and thus opening a direct attack. These tactics, however good otherwise, cannot be followed in the present case, when the adverse K. P. has only been moved one square, whilst Black's Pawn has been played two, and thus gives the opponent's centre Pawns great strength on the Queen's side. Those who know how to appreciate the relative play of Pawns and pieces, must allow that after Black's ninth move "P. to K. fifth," White has a decided advantage of position, and Black's game is as weak, nay, weaker than that of the first player in the following variation of the *French Opening* :—

*White.*

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to Q. fourth
3. P. to K. fifth

*Black.*

1. P. to K. third
2. P. to Q. fourth
3. P. to Q. B. fourth

<sup>7</sup> Herr Löwenthal observes at this point, that Black has a very good game, and thus clearly shows what a false conception he has of the present position. White is complete master on the Queen's side, and should Black, in order to prevent castling, uncover his own King, his opponent may, supported by his centre Pawns, slowly, but safely paralyze all Black's efforts. The continuation of this game as well as the eighth and tenth of the match, will sufficiently prove our assertion.

<sup>8</sup> With this move White has completely secured his game, and his adversary's attack must soon break down, for want of the necessary forces to support it. We must bring here to the reader's recollection the last game played in the tournament between Anderssen and Szén, which possesses the same characteristics and leaves the attack of "P. to K. Kt. fourth," ventured upon by Szén, without result. —(See *Schachzeitung*, 1852, p. 154.)

<sup>9</sup> "Kt. to Q. B. fourth" would have been stronger.—See Game X.

<sup>10</sup> White thus allows his antagonist a free Pawn, being fully conscious of the superiority of his position on the Queen's side. On the other side, Black, from this point, conducts the game with an admirable appreciation of the weak and strong points of his own position; he selects the best and most difficult moves, offensive as well as defensive. All his efforts, however, are unavailing to stifle the germ of destruction which is already budding in his game.

<sup>11</sup> It is clear that White threatened to play "R. to Q. Kt. fifth."

<sup>12</sup> It is remarkable how White, step after step, gains ground.

<sup>13</sup> Black evidently felt that White would gain a decisive attack upon the uncovered King, by playing "B. to Q. Kt. second," and by bringing his Rook over to the King's side, whilst the adverse centre Pawns prevented himself from deploying his forces in the middle of the board.

<sup>14</sup> This move is preparatory to the advance of the Queen's Pawn, so that "B. to Q. B. fourth" should not pin the Knight.

<sup>15</sup> He could not have taken Q. P. with Kt. on account of White's rejoinder, "Q. to K. R. fifth (check)."

<sup>16</sup> Up to this point White has conducted his game with extraordinary vigour, and, as the position clearly shows, obtained a decided advantage. Now a reaction takes place, and the first player's energy is evidently exhausted. Instead of simply playing "K. R. to Q. square," and thus strengthen his position, or of playing "Q. R. to K. R. third," in order to obtain a direct attack, he exchanges pieces, and thereby relieves his opponent's cramped position. By continuing the game with "K. R. to Q. square," our readers will soon find that White's game is won by its nature. However, we shall confine us to the more obvious attack with "Q. R. to K. R. third," which would lead to the following result:—

*White.**Black.*

28. R. to K. R. third

28. R. to Kt. second, (or A and B.)

29. R. to K. R. sixth

29. R. to K. B. second (best)

(In answer to "Q. R. to K. B. square," White plays "Kt. to K. fifth," and wins).

30. B. takes Kt. (check)

30. R. takes B.

31. R. takes P. (check)

31. R. to K. B. second

32. R. takes R. (check)

32. K. takes R.

33. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)

33. K. to B. third

34. Q. to K. Kt. fifth (check)

34. K. to B. second

35. Kt. takes B. (check), and wins.

*A.*

29. Kt. to K. fifth

28. R. to K. Kt. third

30. Kt. takes R. (check)

29. Q. to K. square (best)

31. B. takes Kt. (check), with a winning position.

30. P. takes Kt. (best)

*B.*

29. B. takes Kt. (check)

28. Q. to Q. Kt. fourth

30. Q. to K. B. second \*

29. K. takes B.

31. Q. to K. R. fourth (check), and wins.

30. Q. takes Kt.

\* [The author acknowledges the correctness of this move, which was suggested by the translator. The above variations, as well as those to move 38, were published by the *Sunday Times*.—*Trans.*]

<sup>17</sup> Threatening to play "Kt. to K. fifth."

<sup>18</sup> A weak move, of which White's opponent does not fail to take advantage. The defence of the American player is extremely clever, and shows his consummate skill. With each weak move of his adversary, his own position improves.

<sup>19</sup> "Kt. to Q. fifth" would be bad, for Black would reply to it with "Q. to Q. Kt. fourth."

<sup>20</sup> Even now, after all his remissness, White had so strong a position, that plenty of resources were left to him. Thus, instead of exchanging the Rook for the B., the quiet move of "Q. to Q. second," might have turned in White's favour. Suppose:—

*White.*

*Black.*

38. Q. to Q. second

38. R. takes Kt. (or A and B)

39. R. takes R.

39. Q. takes R.

40. P. to Q. seventh, and wins.

A.

39. Kt. to K. fifth

38. B. to K. R. third

40. R. to Q. B. eighth (check)

39. R. takes Kt. (or C)

41. P. to K. seventh, and wins.

40. R. to K. square

B.

39. R. takes P.

38. P. to K. sixth

40. R. takes R.

39. R. takes Kt.

41. P. to Q. seventh

40. Q. takes R.

42. K. to R. second

41. Q. to K. B. eighth (check)

43. P. to K. Kt. third, and wins.

42. Q. takes B. P. (check)

C.

39. Kt. to K. fifth

38. B. to K. R. third

40. Q. takes R.

39. R. takes R. (check)

41. P. to Q. seventh

40. R. to K. B. square (best)

42. Q. to Q. B. eighth, and wins.

41. Q. to Q. fifth

It is clear from this, how much the passed Pawn on Queen's sixth contributes to the winning of the game, a result which harmonizes with the opening, and the explanations we have given. This shows at the same time, how the sudden change from a safe though slow advance to a more rapid but unsound and premature attack, can lead but to an unfavourable result. Still White's position was so strong, that even at the very last stadium he had a drawn game, which is an additional proof of the correctness of our former assertions.

<sup>21</sup> A sacrifice of a Pawn, just in the style of the transatlantic master. White seemed to disdain the drawn game, which he could have effected by playing "Q. to K. B. sixth." Even taking the P. with the Q. would have given him a better chance.

<sup>22</sup> Now this move comes not only too late, but is an evident blunder, by which the game is lost at once. By playing instead "Q. to K. fifth," there might have been some resource left.

<sup>23</sup> This game was played December 24th, and lasted nearly eight hours.

## GAME CXVIII.—SEVENTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

*(Irregular Opening.)*

| <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)           | <i>Black.</i> (Herr ANDERSSSEN.)       |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth                | 1. P. to Q. fourth                     |
| 2. P. takes P.                    | 2. Q. takes P.                         |
| 3. Q. Kt. to B. third             | 3. Q. to Q. R. fourth <sup>1</sup>     |
| 4. P. to Q. fourth                | 4. P. to K. fourth                     |
| 5. P. takes P.                    | 5. Q. takes P. (check)                 |
| 6. K. B. to K. second             | 6. K. B. to Q. Kt. fifth <sup>2</sup>  |
| 7. K. Kt. to B. third             | 7. B. takes Kt. (check)                |
| 8. P. takes B.                    | 8. Q. takes Q. B. P. (check)           |
| 9. Q. B. to Q. second             | 9. Q. to Q. B. fourth                  |
| 10. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square        | 10. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third              |
| 11. Castles                       | 11. K. Kt. to K. B. third              |
| 12. Q. B. to K. B. fourth         | 12. Castles <sup>3</sup>               |
| 13. Q. B. takes Q. B. P.          | 13. Q. Kt. to Q. fifth                 |
| 14. Q. takes Kt.                  | 14. Q. takes B.                        |
| 15. B. to Q. third                | 15. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth <sup>4</sup> |
| 16. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth           | 16. K. R. to Q. square <sup>5</sup>    |
| 17. Q. to Q. Kt. fourth           | 17. B. to B. square <sup>6</sup>       |
| 18. K. R. to K. square            | 18. P. to Q. R. fourth <sup>7</sup>    |
| 19. Q. to K. seventh <sup>8</sup> | 19. Q. takes Q.                        |
| 20. R. takes Q.                   | 20. Kt. to Q. fourth <sup>9</sup>      |
| 21. B. takes K. R. P. (check)     | 21. K. to R. square                    |
| 22. R. takes K. B. P.             | 22. Kt. to Q. B. sixth                 |
| 23. Q. R. to K. square            | 23. Kt. takes Q. R. P. <sup>10</sup>   |
| 24. K. R. to K. B. fourth         | 24. Q. R. to Q. R. third               |
| 25. B. to Q. third                |                                        |

And Black resigned.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Black intends to move "P. to K. fourth" afterwards, and therefore does not play as usual Q. to Q. square, for if he did so, White by replying with "P. to Q. fourth," would prevent his advancing the King's Pawn. This proves that although Black evades the known openings, he does not shun open games. Besides "Q. to Q. square" gives the first player an advantage, which may be seen in the consultation game between Staunton and Ally, against Morphy and Ally (Game XLIII. p. 107).

<sup>2</sup> It must be observed how energetically Black tries to overcome the disadvantages of the opening.

<sup>3</sup> Black here rightly gives up the Pawn, which he has won before, in order to develop his game.

<sup>4</sup> "P. to K. R. third" would have been here the proper move, in order to secure Black's game, and to equalize the position.

<sup>5</sup> Even now "P. to K. R. third" would have been better; for if White had replied to it with "P. to K. B. fourth," then "Q. R. to Q. square" would have been Black's correct answer.

<sup>6</sup> The weakness of the Q. Kt. Pawn, and still more the threatened move, "Kt. takes K. R. P." seem to have induced the retreat of the Bishop.

<sup>7</sup> A weak attack, which is frustrated by his adversary's correct play.

<sup>8</sup> The American plays here again with accomplished skill. The simple offer of the exchange of the Queens, which is indeed the best and decisive move, may have been overlooked or rejected by many good players in this position.

<sup>9</sup> Why not simply "R. to B. square"?

<sup>10</sup> The last moves on both sides, show great energy on the part of the first player, and the want of it in his opponent.

<sup>11</sup> This game was played December 25th, and lasted between two and three hours.

## GAME CXIX.—EIGHTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

### (Irregular Opening.)

*White.* (Herr ANDERSSSEN.)

1. P. to Q. R. third
2. P. to Q. B. fourth
3. Kt. to Q. B. third
4. P. takes P.
5. P. to K. third
6. Kt. to K. B. third
7. B. to K. second
8. P. to Q. fourth<sup>1</sup>
9. P. takes Kt.
10. Kt. to Q. second
11. P. to K. B. fourth
12. P. to K. Kt. third
13. B. to K. B. square
14. P. to Q. B. fourth<sup>4</sup>
15. P. to Q. B. fifth<sup>5</sup>

*Black.* (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. P. to Q. fourth
4. K. Kt. takes P.
5. Q. B. to K. third
6. B. to Q. third
7. Castles
8. Kt. takes Kt.
9. P. to K. fifth
10. P. to K. B. fourth
11. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)<sup>2</sup>
12. Q. to K. R. sixth
13. Q. to K. R. third<sup>3</sup>
14. P. to Q. B. third
15. B. to Q. B. second

- |                                                    |                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 16. B. to Q. B. fourth                             | 16. Kt. to Q. second                   |
| 17. Castles                                        | 17. P. to Q. Kt. fourth                |
| 18. P. takes P. ( <i>en passant</i> ) <sup>6</sup> | 18. P. takes P.                        |
| 19. Q. to Q. Kt. third                             | 19. K. R. to K. square                 |
| 20. B. to Q. Kt. second                            | 20. P. to Q. Kt. fourth                |
| 21. B. takes B. (check)                            | 21. Q. takes B.                        |
| 22. Q. to Q. B. second <sup>7</sup>                | 22. Q. to Q. fourth                    |
| 23. K. R. to Q. B. square <sup>8</sup>             | 23. R. to Q. R. third                  |
| 24. P. to Q. R. fourth                             | 24. K. R. to Q. R. square <sup>9</sup> |
| 25. P. takes P.                                    | 25. Q. takes Kt. P.                    |
| 26. Q. to Q. B. fourth (ch.)                       | 26. Q. takes Q.                        |
| 27. Kt. takes Q.                                   | 27. R. takes R.                        |
| 28. B. takes R.                                    | 28. Kt. to K. B. third                 |
| 29. B. to Q. B. third                              | 29. R. to Q. R. seventh <sup>10</sup>  |
| 30. B. to Q. second                                | 30. Kt. to Q. fourth                   |
| 31. K. to B. square                                | 31. B. to Q. square                    |
| 32. K. to K. square                                | 32. B. to K. second                    |
| 33. R. to Q. Kt. square                            | 33. P. to K. R. third                  |
| 34. Kt. to K. fifth                                | 34. P. to Q. B. fourth <sup>11</sup>   |
| 35. P. takes P.                                    | 35. B. takes P.                        |
| 36. R. to Q. Kt. fifth                             | 36. Kt. takes K. P.                    |
| 37. R. takes B.                                    | 37. Kt. to Kt. seventh (check)         |
| 38. K. to K. second                                | 38. P. to K. sixth                     |
| 39. Kt. to K. B. third <sup>*</sup>                | 39. P. to K. Kt. third                 |
| 40. R. to Q. fifth                                 | 40. K. to B. second                    |
| 41. R. to Q. sixth                                 | 41. K. to Kt. second                   |
| 42. P. to K. R. fourth <sup>12</sup>               | 42. P. takes B.                        |
| 43. R. takes Q. P.                                 | 43. R. to Q. R. fifth                  |
| 44. K. to B. second                                | 44. Kt. takes K. B. P.                 |
| 45. P. takes Kt.                                   | 45. R. takes P.                        |
| 46. R. to Q. fourth                                | 46. R. takes R.                        |
| 47. Kt. takes R.                                   | 47. K. to B. third                     |
| 48. K. to K. third                                 | 48. P. to K. Kt. fourth                |
| 49. P. to R. fifth                                 | 49. K. to K. fourth                    |
| 50. Kt. to K. B. third (ch.)                       | 50. K. to B. third                     |

And the game was abandoned as drawn, after a few more moves.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> We have already observed in the sixth game of the match, that castling, at this point, would be more advantageous.

<sup>2</sup> After this check, Black's K. B. can be kept in, for some time,

and thus, at least, a move be gained. This is the reason why castling on the eighth move was preferable. We refer our readers to the tenth game in the match, which is the more correctly played.

<sup>3</sup> Now the Queen is well established, whilst White's King's Bishop is entirely out of play. See our preceding Note.

<sup>4</sup> White could have played here "B. to Q. B. fourth," as in the sixth game. The advance of the Pawns seems premature at this point. Besides, it would be more to the purpose to keep both Bishops, and to play "Kt. to Q. B. fourth," as in the tenth game.

<sup>5</sup> This early advance of the Pawns is anything but favourable. White's attack on the Queen's side is therefore by far less vigorous than it was in the sixth, and especially in the tenth game.

<sup>6</sup> In order to use the open file for the action of the Rook in attacking the adverse Q. B. Pawn.

<sup>7</sup> To exchange Queens would strengthen Black's game.

<sup>8</sup> Here White omits the proper move, viz., "P. to Q. R. fourth," giving his adversary time to double the Rooks, after which this move will be by far less efficacious.

<sup>9</sup> Now the game is pretty even. White, in order to enter Black's game, is obliged to offer the exchange of Queens, and then Black in his turn can assume the offensive, and by exchanging pieces equalize the game.

<sup>10</sup> Black's next manœuvres are deserving of great attention.

<sup>11</sup> The following end-game is very interesting, and masterly played on both sides.

\* [It strikes us, White had a very good chance of winning the game, had he now played "Kt. to Q. B. fourth," thus winning the K. B. P. and still keeping the Kt. locked in.—*Trans.*]

<sup>12</sup> It may be seen that Black tries hard to win the Kt.

<sup>13</sup> This game was played December 25th, and lasted about four hours.

## GAME CXX.—NINTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Sicilian Defence.*)

*White.* (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to Q. fourth
3. Kt. to K. B. third
4. Kt. takes P.
5. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth<sup>1</sup>
6. B. to K. B. fourth

*Black.* (Herr ANDERSEN.)

1. P. to Q. B. fourth
2. P. takes P.
3. Kt. to Q. B. third
4. P. to K. third
5. P. to Q. third
6. P. to K. fourth

- |                                        |                                    |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 7. B. to K. third                      | 7. P. to K. B. fourth <sup>2</sup> |
| 8. Q. Kt. to Q. B. third <sup>3</sup>  | 8. P. to K. B. fifth               |
| 9. Kt. to Q. fifth                     | 9. P. takes B.                     |
| 10. K. Kt. to Q. B. seventh<br>(check) | 10. K. to B. second                |
| 11. Q. to K. B. third (check)          | 11. Kt. to K. B. third             |
| 12. B. to Q. B. fourth                 | 12. Kt. to Q. fifth                |
| 13. Kt. takes Kt. (disc. ch.)          | 13. P. to Q. fourth <sup>4</sup>   |
| 14. B. takes P. (check)                | 14. K. to Kt. third <sup>5</sup>   |
| 15. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)          | 15. K. takes Kt.                   |
| 16. P. takes P. <sup>6</sup>           | 16. Kt. takes Q. B. P. (check)     |
| 17. K. to K. second                    |                                    |

And Black resigned.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This attack with the Knight is a decisive advantage in the Sicilian game. If Black now plays "P. to Q. R. third," White would answer with "Kt. to Q. sixth (check)." If then B. takes Kt., Q. takes B.; and if afterwards, "Q. to K. second," White retreats "Q. to K. Kt. third," having by far the better game. See Game XI. in the match between Löwenthal and Morphy, in this volume, p. 171, and Game II. in the tournament between Szen and Anderssen.

<sup>2</sup> Black, it appears, chose the *Sicilian Opening*, in the erroneous belief to be enabled by this move to free his position. It would have been better to play "P. to Q. R. third," although even then White would have the best of the game, which was shown in the game above referred to in the London tournament. There Szen retreated the Knight to Q. B. third, and played it afterwards to Q. fifth, with a strong attack. The moves were the following:—

*White. (SZEN.)*

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to Q. fourth
3. Kt. to K. B. third
4. Kt. takes P.
5. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth
6. Q. B. to K. B. fourth
7. Q. B. to K. third
8. Kt. to Q. B. third
9. Kt. to Q. fifth
10. Q. takes B.
11. Q. to Q. Kt. third
12. Q. takes Q. Kt. P., &c.

*Black. (ANDERSSSEN.)*

1. P. to Q. B. fourth
2. P. takes P.
3. Kt. to Q. B. third
4. P. to K. third
5. P. to Q. third
6. P. to K. fourth
7. P. to Q. R. third
8. Q. B. to K. third
9. B. takes Kt.
10. Kt. to K. B. third
11. P. to Q. fourth

(See *Berlin Schachzeitung*. p. 151.)

<sup>3</sup> This move dissipated Black's illusion, as "P. to Q. R. third" would now be answered by "Kt. to Q. fifth," and if then P. takes Kt., White plays "B. to Q. Kt. sixth," and wins. Black had,



therefore, no other choice than to play "P. to K. B. fifth," at this juncture, which gave White a good opportunity of making a decisive attack in his usual brilliant style.

<sup>4</sup> If B. interposes, White takes B. with B., checking, followed, if Kt. retakes B., by "Kt. to Q. fifth (dis. check)."

<sup>5</sup> Black could have prolonged the game by taking the B. with the Queen. He probably expected, however, after White's fifteenth move, ("Q. to K. B. fifth (check),") to be checked on the sixteenth move on K. B. seventh, and hoped thereby to extricate himself.

<sup>6</sup> White wisely omits to check either with Queen or Kt. In the latter case, Black would have even obtained the better game by taking the Kt. with the Queen.

<sup>7</sup> This game was played December 17th, and lasted scarcely half an hour.

# GAME CXXI.—TENTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

*(Irregular Opening.)*

*White.* (HERR ANDERSEN.)

*Black.* (MORPHY.)

1. P. to Q. R. third <sup>1</sup>
2. P. to Q. B. fourth
3. Kt. to Q. B. third
4. P. takes P.
5. P. to K. third
6. Kt. to K. B. third
7. B. to K. second
8. Castles
9. Kt. P. takes Kt.
10. P. to Q. fourth
11. Kt. to Q. second <sup>3</sup>
12. P. to K. B. fourth
13. P. to K. Kt. third <sup>5</sup>
14. Kt. to Q. B. fourth <sup>6</sup>
15. B. takes B. (check)
16. R. to Q. R. second <sup>7</sup>
17. P. to Q. R. fourth
18. Q. to K. Kt. third <sup>8</sup>
19. B. to K. sixth
20. B. to Q. B. fourth <sup>9</sup>
21. R. to K. Kt. second

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. P. to Q. fourth
4. Kt. takes P.
5. Q. B. to K. third
6. B. to Q. third
7. Castles
8. Kt. takes Kt. <sup>2</sup>
9. P. to K. B. fourth
10. P. to K. fifth
11. R. to K. B. third
12. R. to K. R. third <sup>4</sup>
13. Kt. to Q. second
14. B. takes Kt.
15. K. to R. square
16. Q. to K. second
17. Kt. to K. B. third
18. P. to Q. Kt. third
19. R. to K. square
20. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth
21. R. to Q. Kt. square

- |                                         |                                            |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 22. K. B. to K. second                  | 22. Kt. to K. B. third                     |
| 23. P. to Q. B. fourth <sup>10</sup>    | 23. P. to Q. B. third                      |
| 24. B. to Q. Kt. second                 | 24. Q. to K. B. second                     |
| 25. Q. to Q. B. second                  | 25. B. to K. second                        |
| 26. B. to Q. B. third                   | 26. R. to K. Kt. square                    |
| 27. P. to Q. R. fifth                   | 27. B. to Q. third                         |
| 28. P. takes P.                         | 28. P. takes P.                            |
| 29. R. to Q. R. square                  | 29. P. to K. Kt. fourth                    |
| 30. P. takes P.                         | 30. Q. R. takes P.                         |
| 31. R. to Q. R. eighth (check)*         | 31. R. to K. Kt. square                    |
| 32. Q. to Q. R. fourth                  | 32. R. takes R.                            |
| 33. Q. takes R. (check)                 | 33. Q. to K. square                        |
| 34. Q. takes Q. (check) <sup>11</sup>   | 34. Kt. takes Q.                           |
| 35. P. to Q. B. fifth                   | 35. B. to Q. B. second                     |
| 36. K. B. to Q. B. fourth <sup>12</sup> | 36. K. to Kt. second                       |
| 37. P. takes P.                         | 37. B. takes Q. Kt. P.                     |
| 38. R. to Q. Kt. second                 | 38. B. to Q. B. second                     |
| 39. R. to Q. Kt. seventh                | 39. K. to B. third                         |
| 40. B. to Q. Kt. fourth                 | 40. R. to K. Kt. third <sup>13</sup>       |
| 41. B. to K. B. eighth                  | 41. P. to K. R. fourth                     |
| 42. K. to B. second                     | 42. P. to K. R. fifth <sup>14</sup>        |
| 43. P. takes P.                         | 43. R. to K. Kt. fifth                     |
| 44. P. to K. R. fifth                   | 44. R. to K. R. fifth                      |
| 45. P. to K. R. sixth                   | 45. R. takes P. at K. R.<br>second (check) |
| 46. K. to Kt. square                    | 46. R. to K. R. sixth                      |
| 47. B. to K. B. square                  | 47. R. to Kt. sixth (check) <sup>15</sup>  |
| 48. K. to B. second                     | 48. R. to K. Kt. fifth                     |
| 49. B. to Q. B. fourth                  | 49. R. to K. R. fifth                      |
| 50. B. to K. Kt. eighth                 | 50. B. to Q. third                         |
| 51. B. takes B.                         | 51. Kt. takes B.                           |
| 52. R. to Q. seventh                    | 52. Kt. to K. square                       |
| 53. P. to K. R. seventh                 | 53. K. to Kt. fourth                       |
| 54. R. to K. seventh                    | 54. Kt. to Q. third                        |
| 55. R. to K. sixth                      | 55. Kt. to Q. B. fifth                     |
| 56. R. takes Q. B. P.                   | 56. Kt. to Q. seventh                      |
| 57. K. to K. second                     | 57. R. to K. R. seventh (ch.)              |
| 58. K. to Q. square                     | 58. Kt. to K. B. sixth                     |
| 59. R. to Q. B. seventh                 | 59. K. to Kt. third <sup>16</sup>          |
| 60. P. to Q. fifth                      | 60. P. to K. B. fifth                      |

- |                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 61. P. takes P.                  | 61. P. to K. sixth               |
| 62. R. to K. seventh             | 62. P. to K. seventh (check)     |
| 63. R. takes P.                  | 63. R. to R. eighth (check)      |
| 64. K. to Q. B. second           | 64. Kt. to Q. fifth (check)      |
| 65. K. to Q. second              | 65. Kt. takes R.                 |
| 66. K. takes Kt.                 | 66. K. to Kt. second             |
| 67. K. to K. third <sup>17</sup> | 67. R. to K. eighth (check)      |
| 68. K. to Q. fourth              | 68. R. to K. B. eighth           |
| 69. K. to K. fifth               | 69. R. to K. eighth (check)      |
| 70. K. to K. B. fifth            | 70. R. to Q. eighth              |
| 71. B. to K. sixth               | 71. R. to Q. fifth <sup>18</sup> |
| 72. K. to K. fifth               | 72. R. to Q. eighth              |
| 73. P. to K. B. fifth            | 73. R. to K. R. eighth           |
| 74. P. to B. sixth (check)       | 74. K. takes R. P.               |
| 75. K. to Q. sixth               | 75. R. to Q. R. eighth           |
| 76. K. to K. seventh             | 76. R. to Q. R. second (ch.)     |
| 77. B. to Q. seventh             |                                  |

And Black resigned.<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The present game is the most correctly played, and for the adept, the most interesting game of the whole match. The German master carries here in the most skilful manner his own mode of play through, and his highly talented adversary offers the most desperate resistance. It is a struggle between the open and close way of opening, in a game which by its first move already belongs to the latter, and therefore if well conducted cannot be discomfited even by the most able opponent.

<sup>2</sup> With this move and the following two, Black begins the open mode of playing. We bring here to the reader's recollection what we said about the move of "P. to K. fifth" and "P. to K. B. fourth" in the Notes to the sixth game of the match, and must add that at the present moment "P. to Q. B. fourth," followed by "Kt. to Q. B. third" may probably be the best continuation for Black's game.

<sup>3</sup> In former games, especially in those played by Andersen in the tournament in 1851, he often retreated the Kt. to K. square. From Q. second, however, the Kt. may be easily brought into play on Q. B. fourth; moreover it prevents the immediate advance of the adverse K. B. P., which would leave the K. P. unprotected.

<sup>4</sup> The Rook does not now occupy a favourable position, as it must remain for some time inactive, and as Andersen himself says, "is good for nothing where it is."

<sup>5</sup> By this simple move, White paralyzes all efforts at an attack on the King's side, and is thus allowed to concentrate his activity on the opposite flank.

<sup>6</sup> White threatens to establish his Kt. on K. fifth, and thus forces his antagonist to exchange the B. for the Kt., remaining himself with two bishops. In former games of this opening, the Bishop instead of the Knight was played to "Q. B. fourth."

<sup>7</sup> To bring the pieces in their proper position in their own camp at first, and then to advance them slowly and safely, is the criterion of close games; the consecutive order of moves, however, varies in each game. The general way of doing it, it is true, can only be acquired by a careful comparison of standard games. But to find for each move the correct answer is essentially a quality of a genius, and though the best moves in certain positions may sometimes appear very obvious, it is, nevertheless, a more difficult task to find them out, than many players would imagine.

<sup>8</sup> The experienced Chess player will see at once that White is already entirely master of the field.

<sup>9</sup> It seems at first sight as if White were here losing a move, but Black's Rook cannot remain upon K. square, and therefore the loss is balanced. Besides, Black could have made another move more in consonance with White's views of attack, as for instance, "P. to K. Kt. third;" and as there was no risk whatever, the move in the text may be easily explained.

[Had White taken the B. P., instead of retreating the Bishop, he would have lost a piece by the very move "P. to K. Kt. third," which, according to the author, he tempted his adversary to make.—*Trans.*]

<sup>10</sup> Now White has gained time to advance the Q. B. P.

\* [It seems to us that White had an easier way here of winning the game, by playing "R. to Q. R. sixth" instead of checking.—*Ex. gr.* :—

| <i>White.</i>          | <i>Black.</i>                        |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 31. R. to Q. R. sixth  | 31. Q. to Q. Kt. second (or A and B) |
| 32. Q. to Q. R. second | 32. B. to Q. Kt. square (best)       |
| 33. P. to Q. B. fifth  | 33. P. takes P. (best)               |

("P. to Q. Kt. fourth" would be answered with "P. to Q. fifth.")  
 33. P. takes P., and White will ultimately force a piece.

A.

|                                       |                        |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 32. R. to Q. R. seventh               | 31. B. to Q. B. second |
| 33. P. to Q. fifth (dis. check)       | 32. Kt. to K. square   |
| 34. B. to K. fifth                    | 33. K. to Kt. square   |
| 35. B. to K. B. fourth, and must win. | 34. P. to Q. B. fourth |

B.

|                                                       |                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 32. B. takes Kt.                                      | 31. Kt. to K. R. fourth |
| 33. P. to Q. fifth (dis. check), &c.— <i>Trans.</i> ] | 32. Q. takes B.         |

<sup>11</sup> Till this point Black has played the game with great energy and

finesse; but now he relaxes for a moment, and instead of playing "Q. to Q. Kt. seventh," and winning a Pawn, he exchanges Queens, and thus considerably improves Black's position. Although this remissness does not lose him the game, which by its nature is very strong, yet it considerably retards the victory, which finally to obtain, White must now make great efforts. After the exchange of Queens, however, White seemed to be aware of his fault, and carried on the end-game with renewed and uninterrupted energy.

<sup>12</sup> This position of the Bishop, upon which White very likely counted too much at the time, was probably the chief reason why he exchanged the Queens. For if Black now made any other move, "R. to Q. R. second" would be decisive. This proves that with the American champion no opponent must count upon the slightest mistake or miscalculation.

<sup>13</sup> At last the inactive Rook comes into play again.—See our Note to move 12.

<sup>14</sup> This manoeuvre results in favour of the opponent, as the White Pawn will afterwards when placed on K. R. seventh be in a menacing position;—but Black has no other means to bring his pieces, and especially his Rook into play.

<sup>15</sup> If "R. takes K. P.," White's K. R. P. would advance straight to Queen.

<sup>16</sup> Here begins a new phase of the end game, a fresh combat between the remains of the open and close game forces. White's passed Queen's Pawn tries to advance. Black on the contrary essays a direct attack with his remaining powers upon the King, and even wins the exchange; but still, as this advantage could only be gained at the expense of his Pawns, it is not sufficient to retrieve his game. It may be asked, if instead of the last move Black could not have advanced the K. B. P. at once; the answer is that White could have replied to it with advantage by checking with the Rook on K. Kt. seventh, first, and on K. B. seventh on the next move.

<sup>17</sup> White conducts his Pawns to Queen in the same masterly manner in this as in the first game.

<sup>18</sup> It will be seen that if "K. takes R. P.," White can move the King to B. sixth, and then advance with impunity one of his two Pawns.

<sup>19</sup> This game was played December 27th, 1858, and lasted about six hours.

## GAME CXXII.—ELEVENTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*French Opening.*)

| <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.) | <i>Black.</i> (HERR ANDERSSSEN.)   |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth      | 1. P. to K. third                  |
| 2. P. to Q. fourth      | 2. P. to K. Kt. third <sup>1</sup> |

- |                                 |                                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 3. B. to Q. third               | 3. B. to K. Kt. second               |
| 4. B. to K. third <sup>2</sup>  | 4. P. to Q. B. fourth                |
| 5. P. to Q. B. third            | 5. P. takes P.                       |
| 6. P. takes P.                  | 6. Kt. to Q. B. third                |
| 7. Kt. to K. second             | 7. K. Kt. to K. second               |
| 8. Castles                      | 8. Castles                           |
| 9. Kt. to Q. B. third           | 9. P. to Q. fourth                   |
| 10. P. to K. fifth <sup>3</sup> | 10. P. to K. B. third                |
| 11. P. to K. B. fourth          | 11. P. takes P. <sup>4</sup>         |
| 12. B. P. takes P.              | 12. P. to Q. R. third                |
| 13. Q. to Q. second             | 13. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth <sup>5</sup> |
| 14. B. to K. Kt. fifth          | 14. Kt. takes B.                     |
| 15. Q. takes Kt.                | 15. B. to Q. second                  |
| 16. Q. to K. R. third           | 16. Q. to K. square                  |
| 17. Kt. to K. Kt. third         | 17. R. to Q. B. square               |
| 18. R. takes R. (check)         | 18. Q. takes R.                      |
| 19. R. to K. B. square          | 19. Q. to K. square                  |
| 20. Q. to R. fourth             | 20. Kt. to K. B. fourth <sup>6</sup> |
| 21. Kt. takes Kt.               | 21. Kt. P. takes Kt.                 |
| 22. R. to K. B. third           | 22. B. to Q. Kt. fourth              |
| 23. R. to K. Kt. third          | 23. R. to Q. B. second               |
| 24. B. to K. B. sixth           | 24. P. to K. B. fifth                |
| 25. Q. takes K. B. P.           | 25. Q. to K. B. square <sup>7</sup>  |
| 26. Kt. takes B.                | 26. P. takes Kt.                     |
| 27. Q. to K. R. sixth           | 27. K. to R. square                  |
| 28. R. takes B.                 | 28. R. takes R.                      |
| 29. K. to B. second             | 29. K. to Kt. square                 |
| 30. Q. takes R. (check)         | 30. Q. takes Q.                      |
| 31. B. takes Q.                 | 31. K. takes B.                      |
| 32. P. to K. Kt. fourth         | 32. P. to Q. Kt. fifth               |
| 33. P. to K. R. fourth          | 33. P. to Q. Kt. fourth              |
| 34. K. to K. third              | 34. P. to Q. Kt. sixth <sup>8</sup>  |
| 35. P. to Q. R. third           |                                      |

And White won the game and match.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> To choose so limited a defence, when opposed by so distinguished an adversary, cannot be recommended. The correct move is "P. to Q. fourth."

<sup>2</sup> Löwenthal here points out the habit of the American to play the Bishops upon the third royal squares, and sees therein an innovation worth noticing. It must be remarked that this can be only

said of the young champion when he plays close games, and in these the German school has long since recommended it. It has been especially treated in the author's *Kritik der Eröffnungen*, 1855, Chapter IV.

<sup>3</sup> In the present case, as the Pawns on the Queen's side are not so strong, and Black's King's Bishop is unfavourably placed, the advance of the Pawn to K. fifth is not so dangerous, as in former close games. But even in this game Black would have had the advantage of position, if he had not, on the twelfth move, exchanged the Pawn on K. fifth, thus opening the Rook's file. This mistake was the first step to the loss of the game.

<sup>4</sup> Instead of this move, which we censured in our last note, Black ought to have further developed his game; as, for instance, by playing "P. to Q. R. third," bringing afterwards his Q. B. into play, and then doubling the Rooks on K. B. file. White could not have taken K. B. P. without disadvantage, and Black should only have taken K. P. after having developed his game and brought the Rooks into communication.

<sup>5</sup> White's K. B. is not so dangerous as Black seems to imagine, and if he intended to play his "Kt. to K. B. fourth," White could have always prevented that by pinning it with Q. B.

<sup>6</sup> This move with the Kt. gives full scope to his opponent's attack, and the young American follows it up with his usual vigour, which leaves no repose to his enemy.

<sup>7</sup> Black, it seems, here supposed his opponent would play "Q. to K. R. sixth," on the next move, in which case he could have improved his position by playing "B. to Q. sixth." White's correct move, however, prevented this manœuvre.

<sup>8</sup> If White takes this P., Black answers with P. to Q. Kt. sixth, and has still some chance of a drawn. White's correct reply, however, prevented this manœuvre.

<sup>9</sup> This game was played December 28th, 1858, and lasted about four hours.

---

## I.

The high reputation which the Transatlantic master had enjoyed for a long time in the western part of Europe had insensibly found an echo in Germany. There were, it is true, still single players and Chess societies which did not join in the general enthusiasm, although the German Chess organ had, long before his appearance in Europe, acknowledged his high qualities, and given due expression to its opinions. But Germany not only possesses many players of

great and acknowledged merit, but has two stars of the first magnitude in the Chess horizon to which they could look up with confidence, and the brilliant rays of which were also reflected in foreign countries. This ought to have sufficed, and the coming of events ought to have been quietly waited for. It was clear that the American champion would be compelled to encounter the far-renowned German masters ere he could boast of the championship of the world. His chivalrous mind would have doubtlessly led him to that final and decisive combat; and the programme of his Chess tour, which was repeatedly announced in the *American Monthly*, distinctly intimated a similar project. Moreover, it would have been indifferent to the German masters that a foreign and newly risen Chess celebrity was gathering laurels in France and in England, as long as that knight errant of Chess did not consider it necessary and to the interest of his own reputation to enter the arena with those who were acknowledged the strongest. Every true German, therefore, ought to have abstained, for various reasons, from making the first step in meeting him who was engaged in seeking laurels abroad; and those considerations, which ought to have determined our countrymen to be on their guard, were founded not only on national pride and consciousness of German powers, but still more on the pretensions of foreign countries, which invariably tended to increase their reputation at the expense of our own. In mentioning this, we scarcely allude to the chivalrous young hero himself, as may be seen afterwards, but chiefly to his countrymen, his enthusiastic admirers and companions. It so happened, that several German societies and private amateurs so far forgot themselves, as to invite the young hero, with whose further views they were altogether unacquainted, to visit their country, and thus to challenge him to an encounter. Such advances could but flatter the pride of the young master, even had his chivalrous mind disdained to avail himself of this advantage, although he knew very well he had most to fear from the German champions. The busy friends, however, of the young American considered such a juncture so desirable, and the advantage of bringing the adverse party to make the initiative so essential in the most difficult encounter



which the young hero had to submit to, that they tried by every means to bring that event to pass. The first step was to influence public opinion by means of the press, and thus it was announced in several papers at different times in a confident manner and with an air of certainty, that not only ANDERSEN, but also HEYDEBRANDT VON DER LASA would hasten to Paris, in order to try their strength with the young phenomenon. In this sense, not only French but also English papers, instructed by direct or indirect communications from France, published news which, both with regard to their wording and their contents, must appear absurd to every one acquainted with the circumstances. The barefacedness in inventing similar reports was so great, that it was announced as an undoubted fact that the Prussian general-consul at Rio Janeiro, HEYDEBRANDT VON DER LASA (who at the time had not even a knowledge of MORPHY's presence in Europe) would make it his task to obtain an immediate leave of absence, in order to hasten to Europe and enter the lists with the American. (A) If similar unfounded news could not be supported for any length of time, they, however, could not fail to effect their purpose, by inducing Germans to take the initiative, which it was foreseen would lead to an encounter in Paris. The initiated are well aware what influence external circumstances and surroundings have upon the final result of a Chess match between players of equal strength. Thus the manœuvres founded upon ambition and other motives, those *niaiseries de la presse*, which DESCHAPPELLES already reprobated in 1844, were again repeated, and another proof was given of the self-conceit of foreigners, especially of the French, who are always most anxious to induce foreign celebrities to congregate in their own city of Paris. (B) HEYDEBRANDT VON DER LASA protested most decidedly and energetically against these unfounded reports, and we only wish that other German masters had done the same. (C)

Misled by these reports, joined to the rumour that MORPHY would, after all, not visit Germany, which were circulated even in German papers, hasty and isolated invitations were addressed to the young American, and the true light in which a meeting with him ought to be considered was thus lost sight of. To this must be added that certain

parties abroad, not satisfied with the influence exercised by the press, tried to bring the intrigue to an issue by direct communications. Letters were all at once addressed by the companion of the American champion to several of the German clubs, with the announcement that the transatlantic master was making preparations for his return to his native country, a fact which in itself would be of the utmost indifference to Germany; to this was joined the very presumptuous request to ask him for a continuance of his stay in Paris. (D)

Thus nothing less was required but that Germany should address a petition to a foreign young Chess player, as yet not personally known, and whose own ardent desire ought naturally to have been to meet the German masters, just to enable the French players to enjoy for some time longer the pleasure of his play in Paris. This was certainly the most preposterous request that foreigners could dare to make to Germany. Still there were to be found some German Chess amateurs who entertained the above demand. The Berlin Chess club, however, unanimously repudiated the suggestion, and in a simple but dignified answer expressed their regret not to be able to take part in the desired petition. When the question was discussed in the club, the editor of their Chess organ laid great stress upon the fact that it by no means behoved Germany to take the initiative, considering the widely acknowledged excellence of German players, and the consciousness which they possess of their own abilities; and that it ought to be revolting to every member of the club, for it to be imputed that the society which has produced the acknowledged greatest masters, should address a petition, in the interest of a foreign country, to a young and rising player, who possibly had not yet arrived to the height of his strength, whatever the promises he may give for the future might be. (E)

The real intention of the letter was at the same time alluded to, which clearly could have no other object than to provoke the initiative on the part of Germany; and it was agreed that no steps whatever should be taken in this business, but coming events should be quietly waited for, and all preliminary steps left to the foreign master, so eager for

glory. In the meantime the initiative had been taken by a party from whom it had been least expected. ANDERSSSEN, the often tried and ingenious veteran champion, whom MORPHY, before all others, must have desired to meet, influenced by false reports and other circumstances, had himself challenged the American, under certain conditions. Among these conditions was one capable of offending the pride of his opponent, and thus give him an occasion to turn the affair still more in his favour. (F) MORPHY, therefore, in his reply, declined ANDERSSSEN's proposition, and in return invited the Professor to Paris, to play the desired match in that capital. (G) Thereupon ANDERSSSEN, as he confessed himself afterwards, ought to have insisted upon, and remained satisfied with, his own challenge. (H)

It is evident that the distinguished American player would have done everything to effect the match, for if he had not played after having been challenged, he would thereby at once have acknowledged the superiority of the German champion.

Burning, however, with impatience to break a lance with the youthful hero, who was so much admired abroad, and personally invited by him in a letter, which contained several reasons why they should not meet in Germany (which motives, however, were quite indifferent to a German, and valueless in themselves), the veteran German champion went at once to Paris, to meet the young foreign master, and presented himself, confident in his tried powers, to the fatal combat.

Some persons, it is true, have given a false interpretation to the disapprobation of taking the initiative, and wanted to see in it a desire to elude altogether the combat. It is unjust, however, to censure Anderssen's friends for their disapproval of his resolution of going to Paris, as they had a well-founded conviction that the foreigner would, under every eventuality, have presented himself in the arena. The opinion, therefore, of those who found fault with ANDERSSSEN for having made the first advance, was influenced only by formal considerations; the more so as, by the challenge on the part of Germany, everything was done that could be required to save the national honour. (I) However, when it was

once decided to meet the young hero in Paris, there was nothing left but what was said in the *Schachzeitung* (December, 1858, page 493), that even if it seemed prejudicial to national pride and the consciousness of strength, that long-proved and matured masters should make the first step, yet, whatever may be the result of the match, the advantage of chivalrous feeling must be on the side of the Germans, and the patriotic heart may be proud that the otherwise so highly prized chivalry of the transatlantic hero was obliged to bow before German courage.

## II.

ADOLPHUS ANDERSSSEN, born July 6th, 1818, in Breslau, devoted himself from 1838 to the study of philosophy and mathematics, at that University. More given to the simpler doctrines of KANT than to the modern ones, especially those of HEGEL, he soon embraced with ardour the study of mathematics, and was afterwards for some time employed as assistant master at Frederic's College, in Breslau. Afterwards he accepted an advantageous engagement at Stolpe, in Pomerania, where he remained two years. In the spring of 1851, he came to Berlin. There he found strong opponents in Chess, as MAYET, DUFRESNE, FALKBEER, and sometimes also VON DER LASA. His success in Berlin brought him to the tournament in London, after which he returned to his native town, and in 1852 he obtained an engagement as chief master at the above-named College. His merits as teacher of mathematics were soon acknowledged by the title of Professor, which was conferred upon him.

Lately, Anderssen has devoted his leisure hours to private studies, whilst his only recreation, which is not of a literary nature, consists in a game of Chess, although amongst the members of the Breslau Club there is not one player of his strength. This want of practice with first-rate players exercised a greater influence, than ANDERSSSEN could or would have believed before, on his unlucky match in Paris. He began his journey to the French capital on the 11th December, passing through Berlin, and only stopped a short time at Cologne, at the house of Mr. A. C. (See our following Note F, page 299.) On the evening of the 14th he arrived in

Paris, and, to his surprise, was informed that PAUL MORPHY was ill in bed. This accident may be viewed in any light, but in no case could it be considered favourable to ANDERSEN, who has even expressed his regret that he remained under such circumstances. However, the vivacity and spirited manner with which the patient joined in the conversation, promised a speedy beginning of the fight. The meantime the German master employed in an encounter with his countryman, HARRWITZ, with whom he won three games, lost one, and drew three. He also played a few games with ARNOUS DE RIVIÈRE, and some other French players. The match with the American began on Monday, December the 20th, and was continued without intermission. Besides these chief games, there were played a few off-hand contests, to which, however, ANDERSEN attached no importance whatever. They met for another distinct purpose, but the preparations were, through mistake, not finished; and just in order to pass the time, a few games were played in a skittling style. Afterwards, great emphasis was laid upon these games by French and English writers; often, also, the most innocent expressions, which sometimes had quite a different meaning, or were spoken occasionally by the German player, were laid hold of, and undue importance attached to them. Amongst these may be mentioned the words attributed to him, "that it was a rare fortune for a player to win one or two games against MORPHY." The fact is, that at dinner, before the last game was played, ANDERSEN said, jokingly and in good temper, "He was glad to have already two sheep in safety." Again, ANDERSEN is reported to have said, "*Il joue non seulement le coup juste, mais le coup le plus juste.*" (MORPHY makes not only the best, but the very best move.) "No living player has a chance in play against MORPHY; it is uncertainty struggling against certainty."

The truth is, that ANDERSEN only spoke of the great correctness of MORPHY's play, and simply remarked, that the American never made a mistake, and very rarely an error. We do not intend, by correcting these misstatements, to diminish the glory of the American; for, after all we have said before, it is evident this can not be our intention; but an impartial presentation of facts, devoid of national vanity,

can only be in favour of the youthful champion who came off victorious; and, therefore, we will add here a few expressions of ANDERSEN's, which we can warrant to be authentic. He was asked if the American was superior in coolness and self-possession, and if his play in general had seemed to him superior to his own. The first part of the question was not strictly answered, for ANDERSEN merely replied to it as follows:—"I cannot say I believe so; for, in my own opinion, I was quite cool, but still I have overlooked the most simple moves." The second question was answered without reserve:—"He did not even in his dreams," he said, "believe in the superiority of his opponent; it is, however, impossible to keep one's excellence in a little glass casket, like a jewel, to take it out whenever wanted; on the contrary, it can only be conserved by continuous and good practice." It was asked of him, if there were any external disturbing influences at work, and how the witnesses and spectators behaved. As to the first question, it was not denied that unwonted noisy surroundings in the hotel chosen (Hotel Violet), produced sleepless nights, which by no means contributed to fortify him for the exhausting play of a match. The near spectators, as Messrs. A. de RIVIÈRE, PRETI, JOURNOUD, and EDGE, as well as the proper witnesses or honorary seconds, Messrs. St. AMAND, LEQUESNE, MORTIMER, and GRANDBOULOGNE, behaved, all of them, most honourably; amongst the other spectators, however, there were unmistakable, and sometimes very disturbing, sympathies shown for his opponent. Signs of impatience were chiefly exhibited when the German player took time for reflection; especially conspicuous therein was a certain baldheaded Italian, who generally managed to place himself close to the American player. To such influences may be attributed the turn in the sixth game of the match, move twenty-eight. The German master was, amongst other things, also asked wherein the strength of his opponent lay, and what was his opinion of the lost games in comparison with those he won. As to the first part, he had already mentioned that the American never committed a mistake, and very seldom an error. As to the second point, the games won by the German player must be good, because MORPHY never loses through mistakes

or errors. The contrary may be said of the other games, which were generally thrown away by evident blunders. Besides, the question has been addressed to ANDERSEN, and especially from Leipzig, if he would again fight with MORPHY, and how the latter had behaved to him. The answer was, that MORPHY was invariably polite to him, but more so after his victory, and that he manifested his satisfaction by several little attentions. He had distinctly promised, besides, to pay a return visit to Germany in the month of March; whereupon, if he had no objection to idle away a fortnight in Breslau, most likely a return match could be arranged. Finally, the same parties inquired how the American master spoke of ANDERSEN's play. Upon this the German player replied with well-founded confidence:—"To express an opinion upon this subject was impossible for MORPHY, as I had not gone to Paris to get a certificate of ability. Those who surrounded the American, however, seemed to think that they flattered me most when they said, how high an opinion the American had of my play, and that he considered me the strongest of all opponents he had met till now. But to be reckoned stronger than a LÖWENTHAL I consider next door to nothing!"\*

### III.

An impartial and profound examination of the games in this match, proves, on the part of the vanquished, an uncommon depth in judging positions, and even shows him to be the superior genius in a certain class of games, in which that advantage predominates. That class of games which obliges each party to arrange first their pieces on their own territory, and thus exacts a long foresight of future positions, and a comprehensive understanding of Pawns and pieces *in concreto*, not having been as yet analyzed in books, gives free and full scope to the exercise of genius, and affords at the same time a proper scale for the appreciation of the natural depth of

\* [We do not presume to doubt the author's accuracy in reporting the *ipsissima verba* of the great Prussian player. It is our opinion, however, that, by the last remark, full justice is not done to Herr Löwenthal, whom, in spite of his weaknesses and deficiencies, we still consider one of our strongest living Chess players.—*Trans.*]

combinations. To the superiority of the German master in this class of games which is especially shown in the sixth, eighth, and tenth, and which he regrets not to have made use of sooner, the American can oppose his perfect knowledge and accurate play in all the open games wherein he has a nearly equal superiority, as Anderssen, entirely absorbed by his professional duties, could lately not devote so much time to the study of the openings, and therefore succumbed nearly always in those games, which are analysed by the books and which form the great majority of the match. It must be added to this, as he observed himself, that Chess mastership cannot be conserved in a glass casket, like a jewel, to be taken out when wanted, but that it needs continuous practice with strong players. In that open game which ANDERSSSEN knows perfectly well, viz., the Evans's gambit, he played well throughout and kept his advantage, acknowledged by the books, perseveringly to the end. Although it is not to be denied, that skill in open games can be acquired by careful study and consequent practical exercise, whilst the more deeply lying knowledge of positions, being a specific quality of genius, can only be acquired to a certain degree by talent; and though on that account the German master will perhaps remain the deeper player of the two, the American on the other side has an advantage which is decisive in practical play, and which being also a specific quality can only be acquired to a certain point by practice. We mean that invariable coolness, and that indestructible power of reflexion in the most critical situations, which never allows a mistake and only very seldom an error. It is evident therefore that the want of strong practice in the German master, which is so great an obstacle to success in similar matches, must have been strongly felt by him when opposed to the American, who, so to say, only lived for the practice of the game. In most of the games, we thus see the German player either through evident blunders, as in Games III., VI., and IX., or through mistaken easy combinations, showing the want of tension in his intellectual powers at the moment, as in Games IV., VI., and XI., or lastly through undervaluing his opponent's strength, as in Games IV. and V., throw an already obtained advantage away and lose the game. If therefore we take into account



the specific quality of coolness, which is the peculiarity of the tough Englishman and the practical American, and oppose it to the depth of combination which characterise the German genius, we find that the balance is greatly in favour of the American, by his thorough knowledge of the openings and their application to practical play, and that balance, too, is in full accord with the result of the match. To sum up our remarks, we can state in a few words, that at all events the American was, at the time, the superior, that is, the more practiced match player.

## IV.

Of the games, mentioned in No. II., which were played between ANDERSSSEN and MORPHY out of the match, we give the following :—

OFF-HAND GAMES, PLAYED WITH ANDERSSSEN, AFTER THE  
TERMINATION OF THE MATCH.

## GAME CXXIII.

(*Bishop's Gambit.*)

*White.* (Herr ANDERSSSEN.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth
3. B. to Q. B. fourth
4. P. to K. fifth
5. B. to Q. Kt. third
6. Kt. to K. B. third
7. Castles<sup>3</sup>
8. B. to Q. R. fourth<sup>4</sup>
9. B. takes Kt. (check)
10. P. to Q. fourth
11. P. to Q. B. third
12. P. to Q. Kt. fourth<sup>5</sup>
13. P. takes P.
14. Q. to Q. Kt. third<sup>6</sup>
15. P. to Q. R. third
16. Kt. to Q. B. third
17. Q. takes Kt.
18. P. takes P.

*Black.* (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. takes P.
3. Kt. to K. B. third<sup>1</sup>
4. P. to Q. fourth
5. Kt. to K. fifth
6. B. to K. Kt. fifth<sup>2</sup>
7. Kt. to Q. B. third
8. P. to K. Kt. fourth
9. P. takes B.
10. P. to Q. B. fourth
11. B. to K. second
12. P. takes Kt. P.
13. Castles
14. R. to Q. Kt. square
15. P. to Q. B. fourth<sup>7</sup>
16. Kt. takes Kt.
17. P. takes Kt. P.
18. K. B. takes P.

- |                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 19. Q. to Q. third           | 19. P. to Q. R. fourth        |
| 20. P. to K. R. fourth       | 20. P. to K. R. third         |
| 21. P. takes P. <sup>8</sup> | 21. P. takes P.               |
| 22. P. to K. Kt. third       | 22. R. to Q. Kt. third        |
| 23. R. to Q. R. second       | 23. R. to K. Kt. third        |
| 24. R. to K. Kt. second      | 24. B. to K. R. sixth         |
| 25. P. to K. sixth           | 25. B. takes R.               |
| 26. P. takes P. (check)      | 26. K. to Kt. second          |
| 27. K. takes B.              | 27. Q. to Q. B. square        |
| 28. Kt. to K. fifth          | 28. R. to K. R. third         |
| 29. P. takes P.              | 29. K. R. to K. R. square     |
| 30. P. takes P.              | 30. R. to R. seventh (check)  |
| 31. K. to Kt. square         | 31. R. to R. eighth (check)   |
| 32. K. to B. second          | 32. K. R. to R. seventh (ch.) |
| 33. K. to K. third           | 33. R. to R. sixth (check)    |
| 34. Kt. to K. B. third       | 34. R. takes Kt. (check)      |
| 35. R. takes R.              | 35. Q. takes B. (check)       |

And White resigns.

<sup>1</sup> This defence was known already in 1849, and was often adopted by the members of the Magdeburg Chess Club.—(See *Kritik der Eröffnungen*, p. 223). It has been first analysed by Herr von Hanneken in the *Berlin Schachzeitung* of 1850.

<sup>2</sup> Black could have also played "Kt. to K. Kt. fourth," followed by "Kt. to K. third," in order to maintain the Pawn, as Herr von Hanneken suggested in the above-mentioned analysis. Still we prefer the move in the text.

<sup>3</sup> "P. to Q. third" is showy, but the move in the text is a better one. Thus:—

*White.*

7. P. to Q. third
8. Q. takes B.
9. P. to Kt. third
10. K. to K. second
11. B. takes Q. P. (best)
12. Q. takes B. P. (check)
13. B. takes Q. Kt. P.

*Black.*

7. B. takes Kt.
8. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)
9. P. takes P.
10. Kt. to K. B. seventh
11. Kt. takes R.
12. K. to Q. square
13. Q. takes R. P. (check), and wins.

<sup>4</sup> If "P. to Q. third," Black checks with B. on Q. B. fourth; if "P. to Q. fourth," Black takes Q. P. with Q. Kt.

<sup>5</sup> "Kt. to Q. second" would perhaps have been stronger.

<sup>6</sup> This move proves incorrect.

<sup>7</sup> The decisive move.

<sup>8</sup> Evidently a hasty move, made without due consideration.

## GAME CXXIV.

*(King's Knight's Gambit.)***White.** (Herr ANDERSEN.)**Black.** (MORPHY.)

- |                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth           | 1. P. to K. fourth          |
| 2. P. to K. B. fourth        | 2. P. takes P.              |
| 3. Kt. to K. B. third        | 3. P. to K. Kt. fourth      |
| 4. P. to K. R. fourth        | 4. P. to K. Kt. fifth       |
| 5. Kt. to K. fifth           | 5. Kt. to K. B. third       |
| 6. Kt. takes K. Kt. P.       | 6. P. to Q. fourth          |
| 7. Kt. takes Kt. (check)     | 7. Q. takes Kt.             |
| 8. Q. to K. second           | 8. B. to Q. third           |
| 9. Kt. to Q. B. third        | 9. P. to Q. B. third        |
| 10. P. to Q. fourth          | 10. Q. takes Q. P.          |
| 11. B. to Q. second          | 11. R. to K. Kt. square     |
| 12. P. takes P. (dis. check) | 12. K. to Q. square         |
| 13. Castles                  | 13. B. to K. Kt. fifth      |
| 14. Q. to K. fourth          | 14. Q. takes Q.             |
| 15. Kt. takes Q.             | 15. B. takes R.             |
| 16. Kt. takes K. B.          | 16. B. to K. R. fourth      |
| 17. Q. B. takes P.           | 17. P. takes P.             |
| 18. Kt. takes Kt. P. (check) | 18. K. to K. second         |
| 19. B. to Q. Kt. fifth       | 19. R. takes K. Kt. P.      |
| 20. R. to K. square (check)  | 20. K. to B. third          |
| 21. R. to K. eighth          | 21. B. to K. Kt. third      |
| 22. Kt. to Q. sixth          | 22. Kt. to Q. B. third      |
| 23. R. takes R.              | 23. R. takes P. (check)     |
| 24. K. to Q. square          | 24. Kt. to Q. fifth         |
| 25. R. to K. eighth          | 25. B. to R. fourth (check) |
| 26. K. to K. square          | 26. Kt. to B. sixth (check) |
| 27. K. to B. square          | 27. R. takes Kt. P.         |
| 28. B. to K. second          | 28. R. takes P.             |
| 29. B. to Kt. fifth (check)  | 29. Kt. takes B.            |
| 30. P. takes Kt. (check)     | 30. K. takes P.             |
| 31. R. to K. fifth (check)   | 31. K. to B. third          |
| 32. R. takes B.              |                             |

And Black resigns.

This game was played by ANDERSEN in his former brilliant style.

---

## NOTES.

## A.

Thus, the *Era* says, in its Number of October 10th, of last year, when Anderssen's voyage to Paris was not as yet mooted:—

"We learn that Herr Anderssen, the well-known victor in the Chess tournament of 1851, is also on his way to Paris, to contend against the young champion of America."

In a later Number of the same paper it is said:—

"We have received information from Paris, that the great German master, Professor Anderssen is still, by his professional duties, prevented from leaving Germany, and cannot come until the middle of December. Herr Heydebrand von der Lasa, however, is daily expected."

At the same time the *Illustrated London News* gave the following piece of News:—

"The report that Herr von Heydebrand has returned from Rio de Janeiro and is likely to visit Paris, for the purpose of enjoying a few games with the redoubtable American champion, is, we are informed, undoubtedly true. If it turns out so, we may expect some splendid chess."

The *Times*, going still further, said:—

"In a letter from a highly valued Paris correspondent, bearing date September 18th, occurs the following passage:—'Heydebrand von der Lasa is on his way to Paris, in order to play a number of games with Morphy. We expect him here daily. He comes here on purpose.'"

In conjunction with such mendacious publications, reports were circulated that Morphy, on account of certain considerations, would not visit Germany, to induce the Germans to make the first advances. It was confidently asserted, at the same time—and, we are sorry to say, not without reason—that the Germans were burning with impatience to make the acquaintance of the foreign phenomenon, and to try their skill with him. To conclude, we give here another passage from the *Times*:—

"We hear, to our very great regret, that there is no remote chance of the departure of Mr. Morphy from Europe. We, in common with all others, have so anxiously expected an encounter with the great Prussian masters, that we hope most sincerely to hear of better news. Let him defer his departure till after a battle with Anderssen and von der Lasa."

## B.

In a letter of February 12th, 1844, to the late Astronomer Schumacher, Deschappelles says:—

"I am informed that after the recent encounter between Messrs. St. Amant and Staunton, mention was made in the daily press of a challenge directed to me by Mr. Staunton. Suffice it to say, that I do not believe in it; that nothing has come to my knowledge in regard

to it; that very likely Mr. Staunton himself knows nothing about it; and the whole affair is a foolish invention of the daily papers (*et que ce sont les niaiseries de la presse*)."

In a letter of September 12th, 1843, to von der Lasa, Bledow mentions the idea of a general Chess tournament in Trier, as a central point between France, Germany, and England. That idea was again mooted when, soon afterwards, Staunton had won the match in Paris, and a return match was proposed, in which the place of meeting was as yet undecided. Heydebrand von der Lasa proposed Aix-la-Chapelle or Antwerp, and intended to go there. *St. Amant, however, positively declined the proposition in the Palamède, stating that the gentlemen would be welcome in Paris.* Already at that time, under entirely different circumstances, it was supposed, by more competent parties, that the German master would make the advances; for Staunton writes (September, 1844), "*Je suis enchanté d'apprendre qu'il est très probable que M. Heydebrand visitera Paris pendant notre lutte.*" At that time the German player (*Romain*) was the younger, and of inferior renown, to the two Foreign champions, and was expected rather as visitor than opponent.

## C.

An American Chess player, who is in direct correspondence with M. Heydebrand, sets this illusive idea at rest in the *Boston Gazette*:—

"As to the report of his (Herr von Heydebrand's) leaving Rio to meet our little hero, it can have no foundation whatever. He has never given a hint of the kind, nor could such a thing be managed with his own Government (considering how long it would take to send in his resignation and get it accepted) in time to meet Paul Morphy in Europe. Farther he has no feelings that would induce him to play a match with him or anybody else. He expressed himself very strongly on this point in a letter several months ago. He considers that he was at the height of his own strength when he was about Paul Morphy's age. Moreover, he says, that for many years he has had no good practice, excepting for a day or two at Berlin, in his journeys to and from his home in Silesia."

## D.

We give here the letter written by Mr. Fr. Edge, the constant companion of Mr. Morphy, dated October 30th, 1858, written to the Breslau Chess Club, and given to us for publication, by the secretary of the club, Dr. Schütze. Similar letters were addressed to other clubs:—

"Vous apprendrez, sans doute, avec regret que le beau joueur d'Échecs Américain M. Paul Morphy se dispose en ce moment de quitter l'Europe dans une quinzaine de jours et aussi qu'il est bien probable que nous ne le reverrons plus que dans plusieurs années. Rien n'est plus malheureux pour tous les vrais amateurs d'Échecs; car déjà plusieurs forts joueurs se disposaient à se rendre à Paris pour

se mesurer avec lui et le trop prompt départ de M. Morphy va nous priver de magnifiques parties qui auraient été jouées entre lui et ces illustres champions. M. Morphy tout le premier regrette vivement l'obligation où il se trouve de retourner aux Etats Unis et il préférerait, j'en suis convaincu, de passer l'hiver en Europe. Mais il craint de mécontenter sa famille en prolongeant trop son séjour parmi nous. — Dans cet état des choses tous les amateurs d'Echecs de Paris se sont décidés à lui écrire collectivement une lettre pour l'engager à rester, au nom de l'intérêt des Echecs. Déjà plusieurs clubs de Londres et de Paris se mettent en train de suivre cet exemple et s'empressent de lui écrire dans le même sens. Et si votre cercle veut bien lui adresser pendant cette semaine (!) le même vœu, il n'y a aucun doute que Mr. Morphy se rende à ce désir unanime, en se réservant de présenter à sa famille ces puissantes raisons qui lui ont fait différer son départ. J'ai eu le plaisir de voyager avec Mr. Morphy depuis son arrivée en Europe et je suis convaincu qu'il cédera à un vœu aussi imposant et unanime. De cette façon, etc."

With regard to the above, we can only adduce the homely proverb, "God defend me from my friends ; from my enemies I will defend myself."

#### E.

At that time there appeared in the *Nationalzeitung*, an article, which began with the following observations :—"A challenge on the part of the German masters has, as we can confidently assert, not been sent, although many parties may have expected it ; but not on account of the reasons erroneously given in several papers, that the necessary stakes were as yet wanting, but simply on account of the objection made by the editor of the *Schachzeitung*, that it did not become the acknowledged mastership of Germany, its national pride, and its consciousness of its powers to take the initiative, but that the Foreign champion, if he intended to achieve his renown, ought himself to send forth the challenge.

The *American Monthly*, on the contrary, says :—

"Berlin and Leipzig both possess flourishing clubs. The latter will celebrate, in December, its tenth anniversary, at which Lange and Anderssen will be present, and to which Mr. Morphy has been invited."

It is characteristic with what presumptuous confidence it was calculated that German Chess circles should manifest the utmost interest in a foreigner, and, that, too, before he had any opportunity of directly communicating with them. The service which the writer of the above letter rendered to his principal, at once brings to our mind the following acute observation, which occurs at the end of an article of Mr. Staunton's, referring to Paul Morphy :—

" . . . and I can only account for it by supposing that Mr. Morphy is under the influence of very ill advisers, or that his idea of what is

honourable and honest is very different from what I had hoped and believed it to be.”—*Illustrated London News*, Nov. 20th, 1858.

## F.

An enthusiastic amateur and great admirer of Anderssen, Mr. Adolphus Carstanjen (a member of the well-known firm “Vom Rath Joest and Carstanjen,” in Cologne), expecting rather too favourable results for Germany from a meeting of the two champions, and fully confiding in the genius of the German master, pressed the business forward with most ardent zeal. He was the chief cause that the challenge was made, and thus is answerable, in a certain respect, for a considerable part of the whole transaction. Among the conditions which the already mentioned Secretary of the Breslau Club (who acted as deputy) had offered to Morphy, was an indemnification for the expenses of his journey, the non-acceptance of which might have been easily foreseen. With great severity—to which, however, he was fully entitled—Morphy says, in his answer to Dr. S. :—

“Je regrette que vous ne compreniez pas ma position : je n’ai jamais été, ne suis pas et ne serai jamais un joueur de profession et me trouve dans une position qui me permet de voyager où bon me semble à mes propres frais. L’offre que vous me faites de me payer mes dépenses de voyage est la seule de ce genre qui m’ait été adressée. Il me sera impossible d’aller provoquer Mr. Anderssen à Breslau. J’avais espéré qu’il se rendrait à l’invitation des joueurs français, mais une dépêche reçue samedi m’ôte tout espoir de me mesurer avec ce champion de l’échiquier allemand.”

## G.

On November 17, Mr. Fr. Edge writes to Dr. S., in B. :—

“Monsieur, j’ai l’honneur de vous apprendre que M. P. Morphy cédant enfin aux pressantes sollicitations des cercles Européens a résolu de passer l’hiver en Europe. Il a exprimé l’espoir que le match entre M. Anderssen et lui aura lieu à Paris vers le milieu du mois prochain et il se promet le plaisir d’écrire à votre célèbre champion par la poste de demain. Recevez, &c.”

## H.

The Berlin Chess players considered the step which Anderssen had taken in that light; and the above-mentioned *Nationalzeitung* says, in respect to this :—

“The chivalrous American champion having, as we have mentioned before, and as he repeatedly assured himself, chiefly the honour of victory and the consolidation of his reputation in view, and besides, in case he should visit Germany, the German Chess Club being by no means adverse to find stakes, we may expect to witness a very interesting contest between American talent and German ability. For this reason, and in order to obviate all doubts, the famous German player, Professor Anderssen, has proposed to the American a

match for £50, and £25 to pay his travelling expenses, and we believe that now all necessary measures have been taken to hold up the German reputation."

Still more clearly this idea is expressed in the *Schachzeitung*, of November, page 448:—

"The views of the transatlantic master are in harmony with the often repeated intention expressed in his own periodical, viz., that of measuring his powers against those of the German masters. As however, through erroneous reports, many misunderstandings have arisen, our friend Professor Anderssen, of Breslau, has, in order to set at rest any doubt that may exist about German self-confidence, taken the initiative, and offered to the American a match for £50 sterling, and £25 to cover his travelling expenses. In bringing these facts before the public, we thereby express the hope to see interesting match games played in the midst of the German Chess Society."

## I.

That the high qualities of the Foreign master were in Germany by no means underrated, is best proved by the publication of the first part of this book. The above considerations were therefore all of a formal nature, and in the same formal sense is the letter to be taken, which the editor of this book, and co-editor of Anderssen, in the *Schachzeitung*, addressed to him on December 6th, 1858. The writer was led by the sad conviction, that the man who seemed to be destined, first and foremost, to represent German Chess genius, had so little of public spirit, and was so indifferent to the interests of his country; and though the author was happy to see his native country represented by such a man, yet he was decidedly opposed, that the German master should make advances to the Foreigner. The letter runs as follows:—

"My dear Sir and Friend,—Your much esteemed lines of yesterday bring me the confirmation of news, which till now I neither believed well founded, nor possible. You, the mature master of high renown, really intend to undertake a journey to Paris, and thus make the first advances towards a meeting with the youthful champion, who came to Europe to establish his reputation.

"If for a moment the flattering hope of adding fresh laurels to, or to consolidate your well-earned renown has seized entirely upon your mind, and banished for a time, perhaps, every other regard, your natural good sense and tact has, no doubt, soon shown you several points worthy of grave reflexion; and I trust your determination is the result of serious and mature thought. After this most probable supposition, I should perhaps abstain from saying anything else, but simply express my best hopes for your success, wishing you sincerely a continuation of the well-being of your body and intellect, and a never failing presence of the powers of your mind.

"The peculiar circumstances of the case, however, demand a de-



cided and unvarnished opinion, the more so as your determination is of great consequence to the Chess circles in general, and as it is our duty firmly to pronounce the sentiments of our country in the face of the presumptuous foreigner.

"If you were to be welcomed in Paris as the representative of German championship, I should be obliged to protest against such a misconception in the name of German mastership. Neither our grand-master Heydebrand von der Lasa—who but lately repudiated the suppositions of the daily press concerning him, with proud energy—nor the German Clubs—especially that of Berlin, known to advantage equally well at home and abroad—would, under present circumstances, consider your journey to the foreign country necessary or advisable.

"The long established reputation of German mastership, stands in the opinion of all good Chess players in the world, so high and immovable, that it does not require confirmation in a contest of our own seeking; and, considering the supercilious pretensions with which foreigners are in the habit of regarding our country, it behoves the proud consciousness of national power, not to imperil our dignity by making the first step towards the stranger. This first step should be the further from our mind, the more there is a necessity for the ambitious young master himself to issue the challenge; and when you were the first to throw down the gauntlet, you had then passed already the limits prescribed by national pride. But now, as you are prepared to go still farther, there remains nothing even for your personal position, than the single chance of a complete and decisive victory, as the only excuse for that deeply founded consciousness of superiority, which alone could have reasonably induced you to make the first step to meet the foreigner.

"That this chance may be realized, allow me now, and chiefly for your own sake, confidently to hope, and to give to that confidence the strongest expression, by my stating to you, that in this combat of *your own seeking*, you *must*, under any circumstances, carry a decisive victory.

"If the iron power of will, which counts for so much in Chess, could, steeled in the fire of that necessity, yet gain in hardness and resistance, then it will be my greatest triumph to have spoken that word, as it is my heartfelt wish, that your high genius may safely guide you.

"In sincere devotedness, your's truly,

"Professor Anderssen,

MAX LANGE."

## CHAPTER XV.

## SUCCESES AND EXPECTATIONS.

THE great triumph of the transatlantic hero over the celebrated German master, so important in its consequences, seemed not only to have surprised the conqueror himself, but also the entire Chess world. Already, before this match, the glorification of the American had taken an enthusiastic turn, but now it knew no bounds, and it was scarcely considered a compliment to compare him to a PHILIDOR or a LABOURDONNAIS. (A)

The powerful impulse which was given to Chess in general, but especially in the New World, through the glorious success of their countryman, had now risen to an unknown degree of enthusiasm for the sake of the noble game, for which each Chess lover ought to be grateful to its author. (B)

Another remarkable consequence of this important match, was also a considerable progress in the self-confidence of the young master, who, now feeling his full powers, threw challenges out to the Chess world. He not only defied the whole of France, HARRWITZ included, at the odds of pawn and move, but it was also rumoured that he intended to challenge the whole of the Old World at the same odds. This last project has, however, as yet not been realised, but still belongs to the expectations of the future. (C) At present so much only is certain, that with the victory over ANDERSEN the first campaign of the transatlantic master has been concluded. It is true the German Chess players could yet with unconquered pride point out their Grandmaster, but he sojourns far from his native country, and would, perhaps, not even be willing to enter upon so arduous a contest. This latter opinion STAUNTON has definitively pronounced, after having, in an unchivalrous manner, put off his antagonist from day to day. (D) Public opinion has strongly animadverted upon his conduct, and done justice to the high merits of the young transatlantic champion. In France,

England, and America, his admirers propose to give full expression to their admiration, and festivities are preparing to welcome his return.

In Germany, also, the name of the foreign hero has been re-echoed everywhere, and many of our Chess clubs expected to have the pleasure to greet the conqueror of the German champion, if it were only for a short time, in their fatherland. Whether or not this expectation will be realised, a short time will unfold. (E) In the mean time he seems as yet chained fast to Paris, whilst his grateful countrymen are already preparing for him a dignified reception, and offerings worthy of their sense of gratitude. (F)

As to the external impression which the play of our young hero produces, there will be found many remarks upon it in former observations. We recall especially those in Note H. in the second chapter, and Note A. in the eighth chapter, in which it is said that the sight of his play makes a charming impression; that, with a coolness never known before, he executes the most correct combinations, and in surprising contrast with that coolness, he often astonishes with the most brilliant manœuvres and stratagems which seemingly are inextricable, yet are carried on to a harmonious, pleasing, and well-calculated termination.\*

As for so superior a style of play, a complete mastery of the *partie* must be presupposed, the thoroughly aggressive nature of the style is also in harmony with it, so far that even if temporarily obliged to resort to the defensive, the young champion always keeps in view the quick resumption of the attack.†

\* We here only extract one example of the sacrifice of the Queen on the 17th move in Game VII. of this Volume (p. 31) which so astonished all lookers-on, and amongst others the well-known player Stanley, that he, as Marache reports in *Leslie's Illustrated Paper*, exclaimed, "Morphy should be confined in a lunatic asylum." "Not one present could fathom the meaning of this bold play, until move after move showed to the wonder-struck spectators how accurate had been Morphy's calculations." At the twenty-fifth move of the game, it is said there—"Now we have the benefit of Mr. Morphy's unerring calculations—the white Queen is actually forced to place itself *en prise* to prevent mate."

† Thus it is said, in a note to Game XX., move 21 (see p. 62),

If we may accept, in the popular sense, with the English periodical, the *Press*, that four predominant qualities make the strong Chess player, viz.,—inventive power, power of analysis, temperament, and memory,—we are obliged fully to agree with the following observations:—

“Not to put too fine a point upon it, as Dickens would say, the qualifications requisite for excellence in Chess are principally four—1. Inventive power, for original combinations; 2. Power of analysis, seen chiefly in working out the possible results of a given position; 3. Temperament—a word which we purposely use somewhat vaguely; 4. Memory. Of course it is easy to except to this division as imperfect and inaccurate, but it is our object to write for multitudes who are neither finished Chess players nor metaphysicians. Under the first head, then, we would say that Mr. MORPHY’s invention seems marvellous. He is eminently an attacking player, and his schemes for harassing his adversary are as various as they are brilliant. You might play with him for a year without being able to affirm, as Cicero did of Hortensius, ‘*Novi omnes hominis petitionis.*’ Chess players will understand us when we say that his assaults remind us of the fiery onslaught of Mr. COCHRANE, but will bear scrutiny better. And here we may remark (though conscious that we are trespassing on other divisions of our subject), that Mr. MORPHY’s style of play is singularly fearless—more so, we must confess, than any which we have yet seen opposed to it. He is ready, for instance, to give or accept any of the most critical ‘gambits,’ instead of confining himself to the safer openings at present in fashion. This adds greatly to the spectator’s pleasure. We remember how much disappointment was caused at the time of Mr. STAUNTON’s conflict with M. ST. AMANT, by the pertinacious refusal of the latter to answer P. to K. fourth, with P. to K. fourth. The American champion dislikes the anomaly of a ‘close opening.’ And well he may; for, secondly, his great power of analysis tells most in involved and complicated positions. Aided by a wonderful knowledge of Chess books and of the recorded games of the best players, he aims (and gene-

“Paul Morphy never swerves from an attack which he has calmly and deliberately planned. He is bold as well as scientific. *De l’audace et toujours de l’audace* is his forte.”

rally with success) at looking farther forward than his antagonist's *coup d'œil* can reach, confident that none of the thousand intermediate variations have been overlooked. Play a dozen back games with him, and you will fail to show him a contingency which he had not contemplated. Mr. MORPHY's temperament, thirdly, is much in his favour. Look at him as he plays. You are at first struck principally by the roomy forehead, clear eye, and fine well-placed ear; but when you have observed him long or frequently, you discover that he is never flurried, never nervous—that a defeat does not discourage, nor a victory elate him. Young as he is, he is always calm and self-possessed, whether in the quiet circle of the St. George's Club or in the noisier gallery of the Chess Divan, and is, consequently, as sure as any player we ever saw, to do his own powers justice, under the mental tension of a long match and the trials of temper which frequently attend it. We must here record the pleasure with which we have witnessed both the kind, friendly reception given by the English players to their formidable competitor, and also the unassuming courtesy which invariably marks Mr. MORPHY's demeanour. Fourthly, a few words under the head of memory, and we have done. Mr. MORPHY seems to forget nothing, from the game which he himself played yesterday to that which he read in the *Chess Chronicle* a year ago. He has more than once puzzled English players with 'dodges' of their own invention, which they had actually forgotten. But perhaps his most wonderful performances have been those in which memory and imagination seem to work together—we mean games played blindfold, or without sight of a board."

Thereupon follows the passage about blindfold play, which we have given in Note E. to Chapter X.

So far the Press. As to the inward nature of his style of play, we can only repeat what we have said long before in the *Schachzeitung* of March (p. 92), that already the few games which we have seen of him excited our admiration as to their great elegance and deep knowledge of position, the basis of which is a rapid tendency towards a decision, and a speedy play with the pieces in the Italian style. To this may be added a quick sight for the discovery of the enemy's weak point, and an irresistible persecution even to the crushing of

his opponent. He often employs as means seemingly unimportant, sacrifices of Pawns which, however, prevent the development of the inimical forces, and are founded upon a well combined and intimate co-operation of the different pieces. An exact knowledge of the recent discoveries in the King's Knight's Opening, induces him often to resort to the Scotch or Evans's Gambit, which after having soon brought the King in safety by castling, opens the Bishop's lines for a convenient attack upon the enemy's King. It is, therefore, an intimate mixture both of the Italian fashion, and of the modern way of treating the Knight's game, which characterizes the American's style of play, and if he may be yet wanting in the soundness and ingenuity of a BLEDOU or ANDERSSSEN, or the thorough and comprehensive correctness of a LABOUR-DONNAIS and a VON DER LASA, his youth encouraging in that respect the highest expectations. Amongst the most remarkable manœuvres which he makes use of, are chiefly to be noticed the well-timed attack with the King's Bishop's Pawn, the audacious and opportune advance of his corner Pawns, the pinning of the adverse Knights in order to gain time, the way of placing his own Knights on the Rook's files to take up the counter attack, and, lastly, the sacrifice of Pawns in order to displace the hostile pieces.

It must be observed that there is indeed a scale upon which the highest classical play may be measured, as far as it can be judged by the spirit of the game itself, and from the standard games of the greatest masters. It is the relation of Pawn-play to Piece-play, and the degree in which each player becomes conscious of it during his practice. Upon the superiority of that degree is founded the classic correctness and precision which we admire in the contests of a LABOUR-DONNAIS, and which will for ever remain standard games.

A player may very well understand how to play his Pawns and how to play his Pieces; he may find out by a sort of intuition, or through a just understanding of positions, the right way of conducting one piece or another in all the intricacies of a game, but it will be still a question if he has already attained that high point, when he is able to give himself a clear and correct account, in which way each piece must be used in the different circumstances. This consciousness of

a harmonious management of the Pawns and Pieces, and a superior combination of the two different ways of play, is one of the most remarkable criterions of the above-mentioned immortal LABOURDONNAIS-MACDONNEL games, and is the true reason of the extraordinary admiration they excite. How far the young master, who perhaps rightly has a preference for piece-play,\* possesses that consciousness, can be determined by a comparison of his performances with those of other great players, such as LABOURDONNAIS, MACDONNEL, and VON DER LASA. At present we will not sift this question, but simply express our well-founded hope, that the new champion will also reach the highest degree in this point, especially as in his performances it may be seen that he tries to attain the most correct and theoretically established modes of play. We have often found occasion to point this out in the games we have given. And this makes us also hope that he will greatly contribute to advance the theoretical part of the game. To this may be added, that he has conscientiously mastered all that was till now written upon Chess.† So deep an interest for theoretical researches, joined to so high a perfection in practical play, cannot act otherwise than beneficially upon the progress of the science of Chess, and we conclude by acknowledging his great merits, and by wishing that for the sake of the friends of Chess, the chivalrous young master may be allowed yet a long time to exercise his praiseworthy activity.

The following brief chronological summary of the prominent events in Mr. MORPHY's life we extract from the *Chess Monthly*.

1837. JUNE 22. Born at New Orleans.

1847. Taught the moves by his father.

1849. First played with ROUSSEAU and ERNEST MORPHY.

1850. Continued to play with ROUSSEAU and ERNEST MORPHY, winning nine-tenths of the games played.

\* Dryden says: "Thus like a skillful Chess player, by little and little he draws out his men and makes his pawns of use to his greater persons."

† This even Staunton acknowledges in the *Illustrated London News*, October 9th, 1858, when he says, "Not one of the least of Mr. Morphy's accomplishments is his profound knowledge of all the openings. There does not appear a single *début*, in which he is not thoroughly versed."

1850. MAY. Plays at New Orleans with LÖWENTHAL, winning two and drawing one.
- „ DECEMBER. Enters College at Spring Hill, Alabama.
1854. Graduates, but remains at College until the following year.
1855. MARCH. Plays with Judge MEEK and Dr. AYERS at Mobile, uniformly winning.
1857. OCTOBER. Visits New York and encounters LICHTENHEIN, HAMMOND, PAULSEN, MONTGOMERY, MEAD, THOMPSON, and STANLEY, scoring nearly every game.
- „ NOVEMBER. Wins the first prize in the American Chess Congress.
- „ DECEMBER. Wins a match of STANLEY, giving the odds of Pawn and Move. Returns to New Orleans.
1858. JANUARY. Offers to play a match with the best player in America and give the odds of Pawn and Move.
- „ FEBRUARY. Plays two simultaneous blindfold games at the New Orleans Club, and afterwards three in a similar manner.
- „ MARCH. Plays successively four, five, and six simultaneous blindfold games at the New Orleans Club, winning nearly all.
- „ MAY. Plays with WORRALL of Mexico, giving the Knight, and winning eight out of fifteen.
- „ JUNE. Leaves New York for Europe. Reaches London, where he encounters the leading British amateurs with a success scarcely inferior to that with which he had met the foremost American players. Challenges STAUNTON.
- „ AUGUST. Plays a match with LÖWENTHAL, winning nine games, drawing two and losing three. Plays eight simultaneous games, without seeing the boards, at Birmingham, before the British Chess Association, winning six, drawing one, and losing one.
- „ SEPTEMBER. Goes to Paris and is almost universally successful against the French players.
- „ OCTOBER. Meets HARRWITZ in a match and wins five games, loses two and draws one. Plays eight



- blindfold games at once at the Café de la Régence, scoring six and drawing two.
- 1858 NOVEMBER. Challenges any French player to a match at the odds of Pawn and Move.
- „ DECEMBER. Match against ANDERSEN, winning seven games and losing two.

---

NOTES.

A.

Several American papers have expressed their conviction that if Philidor and Labourdonnais were consulting together, they would stand no chance against Morphy alone.\*

B.

The *Chess Monthly*, dwelling upon the same subject, remarks, that Morphy's voyage to Europe has made his name familiar to thousands, who were not even aware of his existence. For nothing so much excites the sympathies of Americans as a contest with the Old World, in whatever branch of science or art it may be. Thus nearly all the daily papers and periodicals of the United States published the reports of Morphy's deeds in Europe. The most brilliant result, however, of Morphy's triumphs in the Old World, consists in the impulse it has given to the cause of Chess in America. Everywhere new Chess Clubs are springing into existence, Chess books are eagerly sought after, and the circulation of Chess periodicals increases from day to day. Thousands, who did not even know the moves, have now become adepts in the noble game, and there is no doubt these extraordinary results are in no small degree due to Morphy.

Extensive preparations are being made by his overjoyed countrymen to welcome his return. When Andersen returned triumphant to Prussia, from the London tournament, his grateful countrymen actually crowned him as the King of Chess. In our country, we have no crowns to bestow : still we have an equally significant, though republican method of manifesting our national pride, and our national acknowledgement for the deeds of our hero.

Another passage of the same publication says :—

“It is impossible for Americans to reflect, without feelings of pride, upon the great revolution which has lately taken place in the world

\* [This bold assertion must be taken *cum grano salis*. It is creditable enough to the patriotic feelings of our transatlantic friends, but at the same time, we should think, justice is due to our dead heroes as well as to our living ones.—*Trans.*]

of Chess. Two years ago our game was comparatively neglected. The men who had been prominent ornaments of the active period extending from 1834 to 1851, from the contests between Labourdonnais and MacDonnell to the Tournament of London, had in general either fought their last battle and passed away, or had left the chequered scene of their exploits, and were engaged in other and different avocations. The walks of Chess theory, Chess practice, and Chess literature, were nearly deserted. Löwenthal in England, Lange in Germany, Harrwitz in France, Jaenisch in Russia, and Dubois in Italy, were almost the only names heard in Chess conversation, the sole first-rates who were in continual play. But to-day a change is everywhere visible. The evidences of a new life surround us. The long, dull and dreary Winter has ended, and is followed by the vernal brightness of Spring, by a season of unequalled Chess splendour. Unheard-of players make their appearance; Chess books are publishing; the journals of both worlds teem with Chess intelligence; clubs are forming in every town. And this transformation has been effected by the unparalleled genius, the masterly skill and the honorable ambition of a single youthful American. But the internal alteration has been even greater than the outward. Following the brilliant age of the great Gallic and Anglican champions, came an age of close games, of dry and minute analysis, of an over-devotion to theory, and a too great neglect of practice. Chess was smothered under a superabundant weight of study. But now the old traditional days of open contests are returning. A gallant boldness is taking the place of excessive caution, and players are learning to exercise and improve their powers of combination. A healthy tone is beginning once more to pervade the community of Chess, and the tiresome, uninteresting, and cowardly (?) Sicilian and French games yield the precedence to the time honored, exciting and manly (?) Pawn to Kings fourth. Such is the effect of the advent of Paul Morphy; such are the services for which the lovers of the royal game are indebted to the young American hero."

### C.

As regards England, G. Walker is said to have been the first to make that proposition, according to the *Chess Monthly* :—

"Mr. Walker publicly states that in his opinion Mr. Morphy can give any player in England the same odds (Pawn and move) and urges Mr. Morphy to issue a challenge to that effect upon his return to the shores of Albion."

As regards Germany, and consequently the whole of Europe, the *American Monthly* has the following :—

"Mr. Morphy hopes, before returning to this country, to have the pleasure of contending against Mr. Max Lange, the well-known player and critic, who now presides with so much ability over the pages of the venerable *Schachzeitung* of Berlin. Should he meet with the same success against Mr. Lange, that has heretofore attended

him in the Old World, he will, doubtless, publish a challenge to all Europe, proffering to any player the odds of Pawn and move."

We must observe of this daring statement, that doubtless the powers of Anderssen have been here underrated, and that only the result of a return match, on which Germany counts more than on a match with the well-known player and critic above referred to, could afford the means of forming a fair and impartial opinion.

#### D.

It is indeed to be regretted, that the first German Chess player, Heydebrand von der Lasa, is at present not able to enter the lists for the honour of his country. His even and collected play, combined with his high theoretical knowledge, points him out the very man to be selected as the strongest and most formidable adversary for the transatlantic champion. The objection, that this view is a sort of excuse under present circumstances, suggested by a patriotic feeling, cannot stand good, as the same opinion has been energetically expressed before, in face of the London triumphs of the Breslau champion (see *Lehrbuch des Schachspiels*, § 419 and 431, A), and the result of the games played between von der Lasa and Anderssen fully corroborates that opinion.

The challenge of the veteran English champion, Staunton, by the young American, has given occasion to a well known and greatly extended controversy, in the course of which both parties often went too far. The refusal of the challenge cannot at all be blamed. The blameable point of the Englishman's conduct is want of precision in his declarations, and in keeping up his well-known pretensions. In that respect the whole affair has been sharply but justly judged in the *Schachzeitung*, of November, last year. Staunton, as a man of honour, cannot be wholly excused, as he has not behaved generously; but a bad intention can by no means be proved against him, nor anything which may be considered like a *suppression*. It may, however, be taken as a real fact, that public opinion has judged his strength to be decidedly inferior to that of the American. See chapter IX. of this work.

#### E.

As to Chess in Germany, the *American Monthly* gives the following information to its readers:—

"Germany, unlike France, exhibits no decline in Chess. The generation which succeeded Koch and Allgaier was indeed a generation of giants, and for the last twenty years the practice and theory, the literature and history of Chess, have been nowhere better illustrated than by Teutonic writers and players. The rise of the famous Berlin school, marked one of the most important epochs in the annals of the game, and led to larger views and grander developments in every department of Chess. Though some of the earlier members of that school, Mendheim, Bledow, Bilguer, and Hanstein have been

called to a higher sphere, some of its brightest ornaments, Heydebrand von der Lasa, Mayet, and Anderssen still remain. The Austrian dominions lost, either by death or absence, many of the players who formerly adorned the clubs of Southern Germany and Hungary. Szén is dead; Löwenthal and Falkbeer are in London, and Hampe now plays but little. Of German players, not to say European, we should be inclined to place von der Lasa foremost; but he is now Prussian Minister at Rio Janeiro, and for many years has had little or no practice. Anderssen, with the exception of his rather unfortunate visit to Manchester last August, has played but rarely of late. But a new man has arisen within a few years, who, to judge from his published games, and his power of analysis, as displayed in several theoretical essays, is worthy to be ranked among the very first of living players. We refer to Mr. Max Lange, the present chief editor of the *Berlin Schachzeitung*. We believe our young champion will find in Europe no more worthy and able antagonist than Mr. Lange. Berlin and Leipzig both possess flourishing clubs. The latter will celebrate, in December, its tenth anniversary, at which Lange and Anderssen will be present, and to which Mr. Morphy has been invited. Among the strong players of Germany, to whom we have not already alluded, may be mentioned Franz, Dufresne, Willberg, of Berlin; Friedländer, of Breslau; Pollmaecher, Vitzthum, and Wigand, of Leipzig; Bezzel, of Ansbach, and Recsi, of Pesth. Besides the *Berlin Schachzeitung*, the periodical literature of Chess is represented by excellent columns in the *Illustrierte Familien-Journal* (edited by Pollmaecher) and the *Illustrierte Zeitung* (edited by Portius), both published in Leipzig. In the branch of problem-making, the labours of such living composers as Bayer, Willmers, Pongracz, della Torre, Kuiper, Nowotny, and others have given to their country a position not equalled by any other nation. German analytical works, such as the *Handbuch*, von der Lasa's *Leitfaden* and Lange's *Kritik* have acquired a lasting reputation, and exercised an universal influence. We should like to speak of Russia and Italy next to Germany and France, the two greatest Chess playing nations on the continent; but our space forbids, and our object to enable our readers to follow with a better understanding the continental career of Mr. Morphy, is now fulfilled; for, however much both the world and himself may desire such a *denouement* to Mr. Morphy's European tour, it is hardly possible that he will at present be able to encounter the Petroffs, Jaenisches, Schumoffs, and Urussows of the Czar's dominions, or the Dubois and Centurinis of the Italian peninsula."

As to the co-editor of the German Chess publication here mentioned, we must recall our previous observations. Mr. Lange, at the age of twenty-five (who formerly assiduously studied mathematics, and then transferred his devotion to the study of law) would probably not excel in Chess as a strong and practical match player. His leisure hours being very much reduced by the duties imposed upon

him in the direction of the *Schachzeitung*, he has been rather accustomed to light and brilliant than to correct and hard play, and he is therefore much less than may be supposed, a fit opponent for the collected and always equally well playing American.

Amongst the Berlin Chess players of the present time, excel chiefly Mayet, Franz, and Dufresne. The first, a town-councillor (*Stadtgerath*) in the Prussian metropolis, is the President of the Berlin Chess Club. He is on the shady side of forty. Formerly he was remarkable for his brilliant style of play, but now it is more uneven, although always original; so that he often produces real standard games, but as often, also, games which abound in faults. More evenly, and in general also more correctly, plays Dufresne, who, though behind his time in theoretical knowledge and the march of the game in general, is, however, by his cool and collected play, and by his natural strength, no despicable antagonist even for the strongest player. Franz, the vice-president of the Berlin Chess Club, has also a more even play than Mayet, and still more ardour for the interests of Chess than Dufresne; but he is, perhaps, still deficient in that steadiness and perseverance which characterizes the strong and successful match player of first-rate order.

Amongst other German masters, we may here enumerate Count Vitzthum, the president of the Leipzig Chess Club, and Herr Hirschbach, both of whom are advanced in years. Of the younger members of the above-named club, Herren Pollmächer and Leppe are remarkable for their correct and steady play. In Vienna the well-known Chess players, Herren Pitschel and Hampe are now the strongest members of the club. Lastly, there is an amateur who ought to be mentioned before many others, viz., Herr Max Bezzel, at Ansbach, who, on account of his cool and correct as well as steady and spirited play, may be considered one of the very first masters of the Chess-world. If strengthened by practice with first-rate players, this gentleman may be considered, after von der Lasa, the strongest German opponent for the American.

#### F.

Meanwhile, Mr. Morphy's friends in his native country have not been idle in preparing for his return. A large meeting of his admirers has been held in New York, and the following circular has been drawn up and addressed to the different clubs:—

"The brilliant career of our distinguished countryman, Mr. Paul Morphy, whose services to the cause of Chess can hardly be over estimated, seeming to demand some national recognition, his numerous friends and admirers, here and elsewhere, propose to express to him, in an enduring and substantial form, their high appreciation of his wonderful powers as a Chess player, and sterling qualities as a man. For this purpose, they design, on his arrival home, to ask his acceptance of a set of gold and silver Chess men, exquisitely and elaborately wrought, mounted on cornelian pedestals,

and accompanied with a richly inlaid Chess board. In addition to this, should the fund warrant it, a commemorative medal will be struck, of which our youthful champion will receive a copy in gold, and each subscriber to the fund to the amount of five dollars, a copy in bronze. To this end they ask the cordial co-operation of every Chess player, and of all those who take pride in the fact, that in still another art American genius has wrested from the nations of Europe their ancient superiority.

Chess clubs are asked to appoint committees to further the object, and lovers of Chess throughout the country are requested to procure the insertion of this circular in their local papers. Subscriptions may be forwarded to James Thompson, Esq., 359, Broadway, Treasurer of the Testimonial Committee.

As Mr. Morphy is expected to return during the coming month, his friends will see the necessity of prompt and efficient action."

*New York, Nov. 11th, 1858.*

---

# APPENDIX.





## APPENDIX.

---

### THE MATCH WITH MR. MONGREDIEN.

In presenting to the public the games in this one-sided contest, in which, after having drawn the first, the American champion scored every consecutive game, we extract from the Third Series of the *Chess Player's Chronicle* the following introductory remarks, which entirely express our own views upon the subject:—

“Of all the victories,” says the above-named well-managed periodical, “which the American champion has obtained since his arrival in Europe, this was the most complete, but by no means the most glorious; his opponent in that struggle being of inferior strength to his former adversaries, and entering into the contest with less ardour and energy than might have been expected in an encounter with so strong and illustrious a foe. The proof of this will be found in the games, of which only two or three have the criterions of a hard-contested fight. Mr. MONGREDIEN is the only Englishman who has played a match with Mr. MORPHY, and his defeat was complete; but it must not be therefrom concluded that others would share a similar fate, for, with all deference to Mr. MONGREDIEN's fine play, there are players in this country with whom he would have scarcely stood a better chance, if he had encountered them in a serious match. We have read carefully through all the games which Mr. MORPHY has played since his arrival in Europe, and we have invariably found a want of nerve and a deficiency of pluck in the play of his adversaries, which makes us wish that he might yet encounter a player of more stamina, to make the games of more intrinsic value; and it is only when Greek meets Greek that really fine games can be produced.”

## GAME CXXV.—FIRST GAME IN THE MATCH.

*The Games in this Match, and the Notes, from the pen of the Translator, are taken from the "Sunday Times."*

*(Double Gambit.)*

| <i>White.</i> (MR. MONGREDIEN.)  | <i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)           |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth               | 1. P. to K. fourth                |
| 2. B. to Q. B. fourth            | 2. B. to Q. B. fourth             |
| 3. P. to Q. Kt. fourth           | 3. B. takes P.                    |
| 4. P. to K. B. fourth            | 4. P. to Q. fourth <sup>1</sup>   |
| 5. P. takes Q. P.                | 5. P. to K. fifth <sup>2</sup>    |
| 6. Kt. to K. second              | 6. Kt. to K. B. third             |
| 7. P. to Q. B. third             | 7. B. to Q. B. fourth             |
| 8. P. to Q. fourth               | 8. P. takes P. ( <i>en pas.</i> ) |
| 9. Q. takes P.                   | 9. Castles                        |
| 10. B. to Q. R. third            | 10. B. takes B.                   |
| 11. Kt. takes B.                 | 11. B. to Kt. fifth               |
| 12. Castles                      | 12. B. takes Kt.                  |
| 13. Q. takes B.                  | 13. Kt. takes P.                  |
| 14. Q. to K. B. third            | 14. P. to Q. B. third             |
| 15. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square       | 15. Q. to K. second <sup>3</sup>  |
| 16. B. takes Kt.                 | 16. P. takes B.                   |
| 17. P. to Q. B. fourth           | 17. P. takes P.                   |
| 18. R. takes Kt. P.              | 18. Kt. to Q. second              |
| 19. K. to R. square <sup>4</sup> | 19. K. R. to K. square            |
| 20. Kt. takes P.                 | 20. Q. to K. third                |
| 21. Kt. to K. fifth              | 21. Kt. takes Kt.                 |
| 22. P. takes Kt.                 | 22. R. to K. B. square            |
| 23. Q. to Q. Kt. third           | 23. Q. takes Q.                   |
| 24. P. takes Q.                  | 24. Q. R. to Kt. square           |
| 25. R. takes R. P.               | 25. R. takes P.                   |

And the game was by mutual consent given up as drawn.

<sup>1</sup> This move was invented by La Bourdonnais in his match with MacDonnell.

<sup>2</sup> The game is now reduced to a variation of the so-called Falkbeer Counter Gambit.

<sup>3</sup> "Q. to Q. R. fourth" would, it seems to us, have saved the Pawn, which now must fall.

<sup>4</sup> Why not "Kt. takes P.," which would give the advantage to White? for even if the Q. checks on Q. Kt. fourth, White still remains with the better game by interposing the Q. on K. B. second.

# GAME CXXVI.—SECOND GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Evans's Gambit.*)

| <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)    | <i>Black.</i> (MR. MONGREDIEN.)     |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth         | 1. P. to K. fourth                  |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third      | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third               |
| 3. B. to Q. B. fourth      | 3. B. to Q. B. fourth               |
| 4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth     | 4. B. takes Kt. P.                  |
| 5. P. to Q. B. third       | 5. B. to Q. B. fourth               |
| 6. Castles                 | 6. P. to Q. third                   |
| 7. P. to Q. fourth         | 7. P. takes P.                      |
| 8. P. takes P.             | 8. B. to Q. Kt. third               |
| 9. B. to Q. Kt. second     | 9. K. Kt. to B. third               |
| 10. Q. Kt. to Q. second    | 10. Castles                         |
| 11. P. to Q. fifth         | 11. Kt. to K. fourth <sup>1</sup>   |
| 12. Kt. takes Kt.          | 12. P. takes Kt.                    |
| 13. B. takes P.            | 13. R. to K. square                 |
| 14. B. takes Kt.           | 14. Q. takes B.                     |
| 15. K. to R. square        | 15. B. to Q. R. fourth <sup>2</sup> |
| 16. Q. to Q. R. fourth     | 16. P. to Q. Kt. fourth             |
| 17. Q. takes P.            | 17. B. to Q. R. third               |
| 18. Q. takes K. B.         | 18. B. takes B.                     |
| 19. Kt. takes B.           | 19. R. takes P.                     |
| 20. Q. takes B. P.         | 20. Q. R. to K. square              |
| 21. Kt. to Q. sixth        | 21. Q. takes R.                     |
| 22. Q. takes B. P. (check) | 22. K. to R. square                 |
| 23. Q. takes R. (check)    | 23. R. takes Q.                     |
| 24. R. takes Q.            |                                     |

And wins.

<sup>1</sup> We do not approve of this defence, which loses a pawn at once. "Kt. to Q. R. fourth" might have been played here with great propriety. In the games between La Bourdonnais and MacDonnell, the move "Kt. to K. second" very often occurred at this stage of the game.

<sup>2</sup> A fatal error. "Q. to K. R. fifth" was the proper move.

## GAME CXXVII.—THIRD GAME IN THE MATCH.

*(Queen's Pawn's Opening.)*

| <i>White.</i> (MR. MONGREDIEN.)        | <i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)             |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to Q. fourth                     | 1. P. to K. third                   |
| 2. P. to Q. B. fourth                  | 2. P. to K. B. fourth               |
| 3. P. to K. B. fourth                  | 3. Kt. to K. B. third               |
| 4. Kt. to K. B. third                  | 4. P. to Q. Kt. third               |
| 5. P. to Q. R. third                   | 5. P. to Q. R. fourth               |
| 6. Kt. to Q. B. third                  | 6. Q. B. to Kt. second              |
| 7. P. to K. third                      | 7. B. to K. second                  |
| 8. B. to K. second                     | 8. Castles                          |
| 9. Castles                             | 9. P. to K. R. third                |
| 10. P. to Q. Kt. third                 | 10. P. to Q. third                  |
| 11. Q. B. to Kt. second                | 11. Q. Kt. to Q. second             |
| 12. Q. R. to Q. B. square              | 12. K. to R. second                 |
| 13. B. to Q. third                     | 13. P. to K. Kt. third              |
| 14. P. to K. R. third                  | 14. Q. to K. square                 |
| 15. Q. to K. square                    | 15. Kt. to K. fifth                 |
| 16. B. takes Kt.                       | 16. P. takes B.                     |
| 17. Kt. to Q. second <sup>1</sup>      | 17. Kt. to K. B. third              |
| 18. K. to R. second                    | 18. Q. to Q. second                 |
| 19. R. to K. Kt. square                | 19. P. to Q. fourth                 |
| 20. Q. R. to Q. B. second <sup>2</sup> | 20. P. to K. Kt. fourth             |
| 21. Kt. to K. B. square                | 21. P. takes P.                     |
| 22. P. takes B. P.                     | 22. B. to Q. third                  |
| 23. P. to K. Kt. third                 | 23. P. to Q. B. third               |
| 24. Kt. to K. third                    | 24. R. to K. Kt. square             |
| 25. Q. R. to K. Kt. second             | 25. Q. R. to K. B. square           |
| 26. Kt. to K. second                   | 26. Q. B. to B. square <sup>3</sup> |
| 27. P. to K. Kt. fourth                | 27. Q. to Q. B. second              |
| 28. R. to K. B. second                 | 28. Kt. to K. square                |
| 29. Q. to K. B. square                 | 29. R. to K. B. second              |
| 30. K. to R. square                    | 30. K. R. to B. square              |
| 31. Kt. to Kt. second                  | 31. B. to Q. R. third <sup>4</sup>  |
| 32. Q. to Q. B. square                 | 32. Q. to K. second                 |
| 33. Kt. to Kt. third                   | 33. Kt. to Kt. second               |
| 34. R. to K. square                    | 34. P. to Q. B. fourth              |
| 35. Kt. to K. second                   | 35. Q. B. to Kt. second             |
| 36. P. takes Q. P.                     | 36. K. P. takes P.                  |

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 37. P. to K. B. fifth               | 37. Kt. to K. third             |
| 38. K. Kt. to B. fourth             | 38. Kt. takes Kt.               |
| 39. Kt. takes Kt.                   | 39. R. to Q. B. square          |
| 40. Q. to K. third                  | 40. P. takes P.                 |
| 41. B. takes P.                     | 41. B. takes Q. R. P.           |
| 42. B. takes Q. Kt. P. <sup>5</sup> | 42. B. to Q. Kt. fifth          |
| 43. R. to Q. square                 | 43. R. to Q. B. sixth           |
| 44. Q. to. Q. 4th                   | 44. Q. to K. R fifth            |
| 45. R. to K. Kt. square             | 45. R. to K. Kt. second         |
| 46. Q. to K. fifth                  | 46. R. to K. second             |
| 47. Q. to Q. fourth                 | 47. B. to Q. third <sup>6</sup> |
| 48. Q. takes R.                     | 48. P. to Q. fifth.             |
| 49. Q. takes Q. P.                  | 49. B. takes Kt.                |
| 50. K. to Kt. second                | 50. P. to K. sixth (dis. ch.)   |

And White surrendered.

<sup>1</sup> We should have preferred here "Kt. to K. R. second." If, in answer to this move, Black played "P. to K. R. fourth," White could have advanced his Q. P., followed eventually by "Kt. to Q. K. fifth;" if, however, any other move, White, we believe, could have safely played "P. to K. Kt. fourth."

<sup>2</sup> We do not see the object of this move. White, it seems, gains nothing, and only loses time by it. The result of this remarkable game shows how often both victory and defeat depend, not only on the intrinsic correctness of a move, but still more on that move being made at the right moment. If it was White's intention to establish his Queen's rook on K. Kt. second, after having removed the Knight, and advanced the King's Knight's Pawn, why not commence the operation with "P. to K. Kt. fourth?"

<sup>3</sup> A well-timed move. Threatening to advance the King's Pawn.

<sup>4</sup> Observe the versatility of Mr. Morphy's play. Having obtained a passed Pawn in the middle of the board, and very cleverly compelled his adversary to concentrate his forces on the King's side, he now opens his fire on the other flank.

<sup>5</sup> "Kt. to K. sixth" was doubtless the proper move at this stage of the game. It would have turned the attack in White's favour.

<sup>6</sup> Quite in Morphy's style. Having once got an advantage, he drives it home with the utmost skill and perseverance.

## GAME CXXVIII.—FOURTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

*(Two Knights' Opening.)*

- | <i>White.</i> (MR. MORPHY.)    | <i>Black.</i> (MR. MONGREDIEN.)      |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth             | 1. P. to K. fourth                   |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third          | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third                |
| 3. B. to Q. B. fourth          | 3. Kt. to K. B. third                |
| 4. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth         | 4. P. to Q. fourth                   |
| 5. P. takes P.                 | 5. Kt. to Q. R. fourth               |
| 6. P. to Q. third <sup>1</sup> | 6. P. to K. R. third                 |
| 7. Kt. to K. B. third          | 7. Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth             |
| 8. P. to K. R. third           | 8. B. takes Kt.                      |
| 9. Q. takes B.                 | 9. B. to Q. third <sup>2</sup>       |
| 10. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (check) | 10. P. to Q. B. third                |
| 11. P. takes P.                | 11. P. takes P.                      |
| 12. B. takes P. (check)        | 12. Kt. takes B.                     |
| 13. Q. takes Kt. (check)       | 13. K. to K. second                  |
| 14. Kt. to Q. B. third         | 14. R. to Q. B. square               |
| 15. Q. to K. B. third          | 15. R. to K. square                  |
| 16. Castles                    | 16. K. to K. B. square               |
| 17. B. to Q. second            | 17. P. to K. Kt. fourth <sup>3</sup> |
| 18. P. to K. R. fourth         | 18. Kt. to R. second                 |
| 19. Q. to B. fifth             | 19. K. to Kt. second                 |
| 20. P. takes P.                | 20. P. takes P.                      |
| 21. P. to K. Kt. third         | 21. P. to K. B. third                |
| 22. K. to Kt. second           | 22. K. R. to R. square               |
| 23. K. R. to R. square         | 23. Q. R. to B. second               |
| 24. K. R. to R. second         | 24. Q. to Q. B. square               |
| 25. Q. takes Q.                | 25. K. R. takes Q.                   |
| 26. Q. R. to K. R. square      | 26. Kt. to K. B. square              |
| 27. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth        | 27. R. to Q. second                  |
| 28. Kt. takes B.               | 28. R. takes Kt.                     |
| 29. B. to Q. Kt. fourth        |                                      |

And Black resigned.

<sup>1</sup> This move is one of Mr. Morphy's own invention, and has been lately analysed in the *Chess Monthly*. It is our opinion also, that it is better than the customary move of checking with the Bishop.

<sup>2</sup> "P. to K. fifth" instead, would not be very strong at this point of the game; if Black had played it on the seventh move it might have been more effectual.

<sup>3</sup> Having lost two pawns, this move is very inconsiderate, as it gives White an overwhelming attack, on King's side.

### GAME CXXIX.—FIFTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Bishop's Gambit.*)

| <i>White.</i> (Mr. MONGREDIEN.)   | <i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)         |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth                | 1. P. to K. fourth              |
| 2. P. to K. B. fourth             | 2. P. takes P.                  |
| 3. B. to Q. B. fourth             | 3. P. to Q. fourth <sup>1</sup> |
| 4. B. takes P. <sup>2</sup>       | 4. Kt. to K. B. third           |
| 5. P. to Q. third <sup>3</sup>    | 5. Kt. takes B.                 |
| 6. P. takes Kt.                   | 6. Q. takes P.                  |
| 7. Q. to K. second (check)        | 7. B. to K. third               |
| 8. B. takes P.                    | 8. Kt. to Q. B. third           |
| 9. Kt. to K. B. third             | 9. Castles                      |
| 10. Kt. to Q. B. third            | 10. B. to Q. Kt. fifth          |
| 11. Castles (K. R.)               | 11. Q. to K. R. fourth          |
| 12. P. to Q. R. third             | 12. B. to Q. B. fourth (check)  |
| 13. K. to R. square               | 13. B. to K. Kt. fifth          |
| 14. Q. to Q. second               | 14. K. R. to K. square          |
| 15. Q. R. to K. square            | 15. B. takes Kt.                |
| 16. R. takes B.                   | 16. R. takes R. (check)         |
| 17. Q. takes R.                   | 17. Kt. to Q. fifth             |
| 18. R. to K. B. square            | 18. Kt. takes P.                |
| 19. Q. to Q. B. square            | 19. Kt. to Q. fifth             |
| 20. P. to Q. Kt. fourth           | 20. B. to Q. third              |
| 21. B. takes B.                   | 21. R. takes B.                 |
| 22. Q. to K. third                | 22. Kt. to K. B. fourth         |
| 23. Q. to K. B. third             | 23. Q. takes Q.                 |
| 24. R. takes Q.                   | 24. R. to Q. B. third           |
| 25. Kt. to Q. second <sup>4</sup> | 25. Kt. to Q. fifth             |

And wins.

<sup>1</sup> This defence has lately been adopted by good players, even in matches, and is quite safe, as it spares the second player the trouble of a long and tedious defence. It loses the gambit-pawn, no doubt, but at the same time it gives Black a free and easy game.

<sup>2</sup> If "P. takes P.," Black checks with Queen on K. B. fifth, and afterwards advances the K. B. P.

<sup>2</sup> Not very strong. Either "Kt. to K. B. third" (which is the usual move at this juncture) or "Kt. to Q. B. third" would have been the proper reply.

<sup>4</sup> We need hardly remark that the last move of White was a mistake, or a miscalculation, to use a more appropriate word. However, the game could scarcely have been saved by any other move, as, for instance, "Kt. to Q. square." Better to give it up at once than to prolong a hopeless struggle.

### GAME CXXX.—SIXTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

*(Irregular Defence in the K. Kt.'s Opening)*

| <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)             | <i>Black.</i> (MR. MONGREDIEN.) |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth                  | 1. P. to K. fourth              |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third               | 2. P. to Q. fourth <sup>1</sup> |
| 3. P. takes P.                      | 3. P. to K. fifth               |
| 4. Q. to K. second                  | 4. Q. to K. second              |
| 5. Kt. to Q. fourth                 | 5. Q. to K. fourth              |
| 6. Kt. to Q. Kt. fifth              | 6. B. to Q. third               |
| 7. P. to Q. fourth                  | 7. Q. to K. second              |
| 8. P. to Q. B. fourth               | 8. B. to Q. Kt. fifth (check)   |
| 9. B. to Q. second                  | 9. B. takes B. (check)          |
| 10. Kt. takes B.                    | 10. P. to Q. R. third           |
| 11. Kt. to Q. B. third <sup>2</sup> | 11. P. to K. B. fourth          |
| 12. Castles                         | 12. Kt. to K. B. third          |
| 13. R. to K. square                 | 13. Castles                     |
| 14. P. to K. B. third               | 14. P. to Q. Kt. fourth         |
| 15. P. takes K. P.                  | 15. P. takes K. P.              |
| 16. Q. Kt. takes K. P.              | 16. P. takes P.                 |
| 17. Q. takes P.                     | 17. K. to R. square             |
| 18. B. to Q. third                  | 18. B. to Q. Kt. second         |
| 19. Kt. takes Kt.                   | 19. Q. takes Kt.                |
| 20. K. R. to K. B. square           | 20. Q. to Q. square             |
| 21. R. takes R. (check)             | 21. Q. takes R.                 |
| 22. Q. to Q. Kt. fourth             |                                 |

And wins.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This move gives White at once the better game, and is therefore not to be recommended.

<sup>2</sup> At this early stage of the game White has already a decided advantage, on account of his strong Pawns on Queen's side.

<sup>3</sup> If "Q. to Q. B. square," Q. takes B.; if "Q. takes Q.," R. mates.



## GAME CXXXI.—SEVENTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

*(Evans's Gambit.)*

| <i>White.</i> (Mr. MONGREDIEN.)    | <i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.) |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth                 | 1. P. to K. fourth      |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third              | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third   |
| 3. B. to B. fourth                 | 3. B. to B. fourth      |
| 4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth             | 4. B. takes P.          |
| 5. P. to Q. B. third               | 5. B. to R. fourth      |
| 6. Castles                         | 6. Kt. to K. B. third   |
| 7. P. to Q. fourth                 | 7. Castles              |
| 8. P. to Q. fifth                  | 8. Kt. to K. second     |
| 9. Q. to Q. third                  | 9. P. to Q. third       |
| 10. P. to K. R. third <sup>1</sup> | 10. Kt. to Kt. third    |
| 11. Kt. to R. second               | 11. Kt. to R. fourth    |
| 12. B. to Kt. third <sup>2</sup>   | 12. Kt. to K. B. fifth  |
| 13. B. takes Kt.                   | 13. Kt. takes B.        |
| 14. Q. to B. third                 | 14. P. to K. B. fourth  |
| 15. P. takes P.                    | 15. Q. B. takes P.      |
| 16. P. to K. Kt. fourth            | 16. B. to Q. sixth      |
| 17. Q. to K. third                 | 17. B. to Q. Kt. third  |
| 18. Q. to Q. second                | 18. Q. to K. R. fifth   |

And wins.

<sup>1</sup> We believe, that "Q. B. to K. Kt. fifth," instead, would have been stronger.

<sup>2</sup> This appears to be loss of time.

## GAME CXXXII.—EIGHTH AND LAST GAME IN THE MATCH.

*(Philidorian defence.)*

| <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.) | <i>Black.</i> (Mr. MONGREDIEN.)       |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth      | 1. P. to K. fourth                    |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third   | 2. P. to Q. third                     |
| 3. P. to Q. fourth      | 3. P. takes P.                        |
| 4. Q. takes P.          | 4. P. to Q. R. third <sup>1</sup>     |
| 5. B. to K. Kt. fifth   | 5. P. to K. B. third                  |
| 6. B. to K. third       | 6. B. to K. third                     |
| 7. Kt. to Q. B. third   | 7. K. Kt. to K. second                |
| 8. B. to K. second      | 8. K. Kt. to Q. B. third <sup>2</sup> |

- |                              |                                     |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 9. Q. to Q. second           | 9. B. to K. second                  |
| 10. Castles (K. R.)          | 10. Castles                         |
| 11. Q. R. to Q. square       | 11. Q. Kt. to Q. second             |
| 12. K. Kt. to Q. fourth      | 12. Kt. takes Kt.                   |
| 13. B. takes Kt.             | 13. P. to K. B. fourth              |
| 14. P. takes P.              | 14. B. takes B. P.                  |
| 15. B. to Q. B. fourth (ch.) | 15. K. to R. square                 |
| 16. Kt. to Q. fifth          | 16. Kt. to K. B. third              |
| 17. Kt. takes B.             | 17. Q. takes Kt.                    |
| 18. K. R. to K. square       | 18. Q. to Q. second                 |
| 19. Q. to K. Kt. fifth       | 19. P. to K. R. third <sup>3</sup>  |
| 20. Q. to R. fourth          | 20. Q. R. to K. square <sup>4</sup> |
| 21. P. to Q. B. third        | 21. R. to K. fifth <sup>5</sup>     |
| 22. R. takes R.              | 22. Kt. takes R. <sup>6</sup>       |
| 23. Q. takes P. (check)      | 23. B. to R. second                 |
| 24. R. to K. square          | 24. P. to Q. B. fourth              |
| 25. R. takes Kt.             | 25. P. takes B.                     |
| 26. Q. to R. fifth           | 26. P. to K. Kt. third              |
| 27. Q. to R. sixth           | 27. R. to K. square                 |
| 28. Q. to K. B. fourth       | 28. K. to Kt. second                |
| 29. R. takes R.              | 29. Q. takes R.                     |
| 30. Q. takes P. (check)      |                                     |

And wins the game and match.

<sup>1</sup> "Q. Kt. to B. third" is the customary reply at this juncture.

<sup>2</sup> An objectionable move. It strikes us that "Q. Kt. to B. third" would have better answered the purpose.

<sup>3</sup> "B. takes B. P." would have been very properly replied to with "B. to K. sixth."

<sup>4</sup> Had he now taken the B. P., the following variation might have arisen :—

*White.*

21. R. to K. sixth  
 22. R. takes Kt.  
 23. Q. takes R. P. (check)  
 24. B. takes P. (check)  
 25. Q. takes R. (check)  
 26. Q. to R. fourth (check)  
 27. Q. to Q. fourth (check), with the better game.

*Black.*

20. B. takes Q. B. P.  
 21. B. takes R.  
 22. P. takes R.  
 23. Q. to R. second  
 24. R. takes B.  
 25. Q. to Kt. second  
 26. Q. to R. second

<sup>5</sup> A fatal blunder.

<sup>6</sup> "B. takes R." would have lost a piece.



THE TWO LAST GAMES IN THE MATCH WITH HERR  
LÖWENTHAL.

GAME CXXXIII.—THIRTEENTH GAME IN THE MATCH.

(*Petroff's Defence.*)

*White.* (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. Kt. takes P.
4. Kt. to K. B. third
5. P. to Q. fourth
6. K. B. to Q. third
7. Castles
8. P. to Q. B. fourth
9. P. takes P.
10. Kt. to Q. B. third
11. P. takes Kt.
12. Q. B. to K. B. fourth
13. B. takes B.
14. Kt. to Kt. fifth
15. P. to Q. B. fourth<sup>1</sup>
16. K. takes B.
17. P. to K. B. fourth
18. P. to Q. fifth
19. P. to K. R. fourth
20. R. P. takes P.
21. Q. to K. B. third
22. Q. to Kt. third
23. P. to Q. B. fifth
24. B. to Q. B. fourth
25. B. to Kt. third
26. Q. R. to K. square
27. Q. R. to K. sixth
28. P. takes R.
29. P. takes Kt.
30. R. to Q. square
31. B. takes R.

*Black.* (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. P. to Q. third
4. Kt. takes P.
5. P. to Q. fourth
6. K. B. to K. second
7. Kt. to Q. B. third
8. Q. B. to K. third
9. Q. B. takes P.
10. Kt. takes Kt.
11. Castles
12. K. B. to Q. third
13. Q. takes B.
14. P. to K. B. fourth
15. B. takes K. Kt. P.
16. Q. to K. Kt. third
17. P. to K. R. third
18. Kt. to Q. square
19. P. takes Kt.
20. Kt. to K. B. second
21. Kt. to R. third<sup>2</sup>
22. Kt. to B. second
23. Q. R. to Q. square
24. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
25. P. to Q. R. fourth
26. K. R. to K. square
27. R. takes R.<sup>3</sup>
28. K. to B. square
29. P. to Q. R. fifth
30. R. takes R.
31. Q. to Q. B. third (check)

- |                                     |                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 32. B. to B. third                  | 32. Q. takes P.              |
| 33. P. to K. Kt. sixth              | 33. Q. to Q. third           |
| 34. Q. to K. Kt. fifth              | 34. Q. to Q. seventh (check) |
| 35. K. to R. third                  | 35. Q. to Q. sixth           |
| 36. Q. to R. fifth                  | 36. K. to K. second          |
| 37. Q. to R. fourth (check)         | 37. K. to Q. second          |
| 38. K. to Kt. third                 | 38. Q. to Q. third           |
| 39. Q. to K. R. eighth <sup>4</sup> | 39. Q. takes K. Kt. P. (ch.) |
| 40. K. to B. second                 | 40. Q. takes B. P.           |

Drawn game.

*Notes by Mr. Boden from the "Field."*

<sup>1</sup> From this point Herr Löwenthal plays extremely well up to move 38.

<sup>2</sup> This loses Mr. Morphy two moves, and in consequence he gets a lost game.

<sup>3</sup> There is nothing better for him to do.

<sup>4</sup> Once more does Herr Löwenthal make one of those unaccountable mistakes which characterise his match play. "Q. to Kt. fifth" must have won the game in a few moves.

### GAME CXXXIV.

#### FOURTEENTH AND LAST GAME IN THE MATCH.

*(Ruy Lopez.)*

- | <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.) | <i>Black.</i> (Herr LÖWENTHAL.)  |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth      | 1. P. to K. fourth               |
| 2. K. Kt. to B. third   | 2. Q. Kt. to B. third            |
| 3. B. to Q. Kt. fifth   | 3. P. to Q. R. third             |
| 4. B. to Q. R. fourth   | 4. Kt. to K. B. third            |
| 5. P. to Q. fourth      | 5. P. takes P.                   |
| 6. P. to K. fifth       | 6. Kt. to K. fifth               |
| 7. Castles              | 7. K. Kt. to Q. B. fourth        |
| 8. B. takes Q. Kt.      | 8. Q. P. takes B.                |
| 9. Kt. takes P.         | 9. Kt. to K. third               |
| 10. Kt. takes Kt.       | 10. B. takes Kt.                 |
| 11. Q. to K. second     | 11. B. to Q. B. fourth           |
| 12. Q. Kt. to B. third  | 12. Q. to K. second <sup>1</sup> |
| 13. Kt. to K. fourth    | 13. P. to K. R. third            |
| 14. B. to K. third      | 14. B. takes B.                  |

- |                                 |                                     |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 15. Q. takes B.                 | 15. B. to K. B. fourth              |
| 16. Kt. to K. Kt. third         | 16. B. takes P. <sup>2</sup>        |
| 17. P. to K. B. fourth          | 17. P. to K. Kt. third <sup>3</sup> |
| 18. P. to K. sixth <sup>4</sup> | 18. B. to K. B. fourth              |
| 19. Kt. takes B.                | 19. P. takes Kt.                    |
| 20. P. takes P. (check)         | 20. K. takes P.                     |
| 21. Q. to K. R. third           | 21. Q. to K. B. third               |
| 22. Q. R. to K. square          | 22. K. R. to K. square <sup>5</sup> |
| 23. R. to K. fifth              | 23. K. to K. Kt. third              |
| 24. K. R. to K. square          | 24. R. takes R.                     |
| 25. R. takes R.                 | 25. R. to Q. square                 |
| 26. Q. to K. Kt. third (check)  | 26. K. to R. second                 |
| 27. P. to K. R. third           | 27. R. to Q. second                 |
| 28. Q. to K. third              | 28. P. to Q. Kt. third              |
| 29. K. to K. R. second          | 29. P. to Q. B. fourth              |
| 30. Q. to K. second             | 30. Q. to K. Kt. third              |
| 31. R. to K. sixth              | 31. Q. to K. Kt. second             |
| 32. Q. to K. R. fifth           | 32. R. to Q. fourth                 |
| 33. P. to Q. Kt. third          | 33. P. to Q. Kt. fourth             |
| 34. R. takes Q. R. P.           | 34. R. to Q. third                  |
| 35. Q. takes P. (check)         | 35. Q. to K. Kt. third              |
| 36. Q. takes Q. (check)         | 36. K. takes Q.                     |
| 37. R. to Q. R. fifth           | 37. R. to Q. Kt. third              |
| 38. P. to K. Kt. fourth         | 38. P. to Q. B. third               |
| 39. K. to Kt. third             | 39. P. to K. R. fourth              |
| 40. R. to Q. R. seventh         | 40. P. takes P.                     |
| 41. P. takes P.                 | 41. K. to B. third                  |
| 42. P. to K. B. fifth           | 42. K. to K. fourth                 |
| 43. R. to K. seventh (check)    | 43. K. to Q. third                  |
| 44. P. to B. sixth              | 44. R. to Kt. square                |
| 45. P. to K. Kt. fifth          | 45. R. to K. B. square              |
| 46. K. to B. fourth             | 46. P. to Q. B. fifth               |
| 47. P. takes P.                 | 47. P. takes P.                     |
| 48. K. to B. fifth              | 48. P. to B. sixth                  |
| 49. R. to K. third              |                                     |

And Black resigned.<sup>6</sup>

*Notes by the Translator.*

<sup>1</sup> Black's forces are now completely developed, a fact which, in our opinion, is highly creditable to the second player, considering the

strong attack he has to contend against in the *Ruy Lopez*. Surely the game deserved a better fate, if it were only for the great skill with which, up to this point, it was conducted by Herr Löwenthal, whose perfect knowledge of the openings surpasses that of nearly every other player of his own strength and experience.

<sup>2</sup> This is a very weak move, the Bishop, after White's following move, which could have easily been foreseen, being placed in imminent jeopardy. The safer course would have been to play "B. to Q. second," and if then follows "P. to K. B. fourth," to play "P. to K. B. fourth" in answer.

<sup>3</sup> This purely defensive move, of which White does not fail to take the utmost advantage by his energetic reply, is now unavoidable on account of White's obvious threat to advance the K. B. P., followed by "K. R. to Q. B. square." In order, therefore, to rescue the Bishop, the above move, precarious though it may be, appears the only plausible one under the circumstances; for castling on Queen's side could have been replied to with "Q. to Q. R. seventh," whilst in answer to "P. to K. R. fourth," or "Q. to Q. third," White could have equally played "P. to K. B. fifth," with great advantage.

<sup>4</sup> Threatening to move "Q. to Q. B. third," if Black captures the Pawn.

<sup>5</sup> Apparently the best move.

<sup>6</sup> This game was played at the London Chess Club on August 21, shortly before the commencement of the Meeting of the British Chess Association in Birmingham, to which place Morphy repaired a few days afterwards. His Birmingham exploits and the great feat which he there performed for the first time during his stay in Europe, of playing eight games simultaneously without sight of board and men, have been recorded in Chapter X. With regard to the above game, which concluded the match, we quote the following graphic remark from a London contemporary:—"Mr. Morphy's play is so superior to anything latterly seen of Chess in England, that his adversary throughout, appeared under a cloud; bewildered and stumbling beneath the blows of his opponent."

---

MORPHY'S RETURN TO ENGLAND, AND HIS PERFORMANCES  
AT THE LONDON, ST. GEORGE'S, AND ST. JAMES'S CHESS  
CLUBS, BEFORE HIS DEPARTURE TO AMERICA.

Shortly after the conclusion of the match with Mr. MONGREDIEN, the transatlantic champion returned once more to England, and there remained a few weeks before his final departure to his native land. His arrival in England, and the subsequent performance at the London Chess Club, were thus announced in the *Sunday Times* :—

" We hail the arrival of this extraordinary genius once more to these shores, where a keen and just appreciation of his abilities, as well as a relish for the exhibition of his miraculous powers will doubtless make an epoch—brilliant as it is—still more glorious and remarkable. Mr. MORPHY arrived in town on Saturday last, and on the ensuing Tuesday visited the St. James's Hall, where a host of noted Chess players were assembled to welcome him amongst their circle. On the following day (Wednesday), he went to the London Chess Club, and there, for the third time since his stay in Europe, exhibited the wonderful feat of playing eight blindfold games simultaneously, against the strongest players of the Club, out of which he won two; the remaining six were given up as drawn on account of the lateness of the hour. This astonishing performance commenced at five o'clock P.M., and lasted till after midnight. We append the list of his opponents :—

|                   |                |                      |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------------|
| First board . .   | Mr. Mongredien | } Drawn Games.       |
| Second board . .  | Mr. Slous      |                      |
| Third board . .   | Mr. Walker     |                      |
| Fourth board . .  | Mr. Janson     |                      |
| Fifth board . .   | Mr. Greenaway  |                      |
| Sixth board . .   | Mr. Medley     | } Won by Mr. Morphy. |
| Seventh board . . | Mr. Jones      |                      |
| Eighth board . .  | Mr. Maude      |                      |

On the following day, a dinner was given in honour of our hero by the London Chess Club, at the Ship Hotel, Green-

wich. We believe that most of the leading metropolitan players were present.

It is rumoured that Mr. Morphy will shortly take his departure for his native land. If there be any foundation for this, we can only regret that one so gifted by Nature as to assume the appearance of a phenomenon should so soon leave us; but there will be a gratification, only to be surpassed by his presence, in hearing of his exploits, and gloating over masterpieces of strategy in the far west. We feel confident that the feelings of every true Chess player and gentleman will be in unison with those expressed above, and we are assured that they will all join, without one dissentient voice, in wishing him a short but sad farewell."

#### GAMES PLAYED BLINDFOLD AT THE LONDON CHESS CLUB.

##### GAME CXXXV.

FIRST BOARD.—MR. MONGREDIEN.

(*Sicilian Opening.*)

| <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.) | <i>Black.</i> (MR. MONGREDIEN.) |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth      | 1. P. to Q. B. fourth           |
| 2. P. to Q. fourth      | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third           |
| 3. P. to Q. fifth       | 3. Kt. to Kt. square            |
| 4. P. to K. B. fourth   | 4. P. to Q. third               |
| 5. Kt. to K. B. third   | 5. P. to K. third               |
| 6. P. to Q. B. fourth   | 6. B. to K. second              |
| 7. Kt. to Q. B. third   | 7. B. to Q. second              |
| 8. B. to Q. third       | 8. P. to K. B. fourth           |
| 9. P. takes K. P.       | 9. B. takes P.                  |
| 10. P. takes P.         | 10. B. to Q. second             |
| 11. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth | 11. Kt. to K. B. third          |
| 12. Castles             | 12. Kt. to Q. B. third          |
| 13. Kt. to K. sixth     | 13. B. takes Kt.                |
| 14. P. takes B.         | 14. Q. Kt. to Q. fifth          |
| 15. P. to K. B. fifth   | 15. P. to K. R. fourth          |
| 16. B. to K. third      | 16. Kt. to Q. B. third          |
| 17. Kt. to Q. fifth     | 17. Q. Kt. to K. fourth         |



- |                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 18. B. to K. B. fourth    | 18. Kt. to Q. B. third     |
| 19. B. to K. second       | 19. P. to R. fifth         |
| 20. Kt. takes Kt. (check) | 20. B. takes Kt.           |
| 21. Q. takes P.           | 21. Q. takes Q.            |
| 22. B. takes Q.           | 22. B. takes Q. Kt. P.     |
| 23. Q. R. to Kt. square   | 23. B. to Q. fifth (check) |
| 24. K. to R. square       | 24. P. to Q. Kt. third     |
| 25. B. to K. B. third     | 25. R. to Q. B. square     |
| 26. K. R. to Q. square    | 26. K. R. to R. third      |
| 27. B. to K. B. fourth    | 27. R. to K. R. square     |
| 28. R. to Q. third        | 28. Kt. to Q. R. fourth    |
| 29. R. to Q. B. square    |                            |

And at this point Mr. MORPHY consented to draw.

# GAME CXXXVI.

SECOND BOARD.—Mr. SLOUS.

(*Philidor's Defence.*)

- | <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.) | <i>Black.</i> (Mr. SLOUS.) |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth      | 1. P. to K. fourth         |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third   | 2. P. to Q. third          |
| 3. P. to Q. fourth      | 3. P. takes P.             |
| 4. Kt. takes P.         | 4. B. to K. second         |
| 5. Kt. to Q. B. third   | 5. Kt. to K. B. third      |
| 6. B. to Q. third       | 6. P. to Q. R. third       |
| 7. P. to Q. R. fourth   | 7. P. to Q. B. fourth      |
| 8. K. Kt. to K. second  | 8. Kt. to Q. B. third      |
| 9. P. to K. B. fourth   | 9. P. to K. R. fourth      |
| 10. Castles             | 10. B. to K. third         |
| 11. P. to Q. Kt. third  | 11. P. to K. Kt. third     |
| 12. P. to K. B. fifth   | 12. P. takes P.            |
| 13. P. takes P.         | 13. B. to Q. second        |
| 14. Kt. to K. B. fourth | 14. Q. Kt. to K. fourth    |
| 15. Q. Kt. to Q. fifth  | 15. Kt. takes Kt.          |
| 16. Kt. takes Kt.       | 16. B. to Q. B. third      |
| 17. K. B. to K. fourth  | 17. B. to K. B. third      |
| 18. B. to Q. Kt. second | 18. B. takes Kt.           |

- |                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 19. B. takes B.         | 19. Q. to Q. B. second      |
| 20. Q. B. takes Kt.     | 20. B. takes B.             |
| 21. R. to Q. Kt. square | 21. Castles (Q. R.)         |
| 22. P. to Q. Kt. fourth | 22. P. takes P.             |
| 23. R. to Q. Kt. third  | 23. Q. to B. fourth (check) |
| 24. K. to R. square     | 24. B. to Q. B. sixth       |
| 25. R. to K. B. third   | 25. R. to Q. second         |
| 26. R. to K. B. square  | 26. R. to K. square         |
| 27. R. to Q. Kt. square | 27. Q. R. to K. second      |
| 28. Q. to Q. third      | 28. R. to K. fourth         |
| 29. B. to B. third      | 29. R. to K. sixth          |
| 30. Q. to Q. fifth      | 30. K. R. to K. second      |

And after a few more moves the game was drawn.

### GAME CXXXVII.

THIRD BOARD.—MR. WALKER.

(*French Opening.*)

- | <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.) | <i>Black.</i> (MR. WALKER.) |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth      | 1. P. to K. third           |
| 2. P. to Q. fourth      | 2. P. to Q. fourth          |
| 3. P. takes P.          | 3. P. takes P.              |
| 4. Kt. to K. B. third   | 4. B. to Q. third           |
| 5. B. to Q. third       | 5. Kt. to K. B. third       |
| 6. Castles              | 6. Castles                  |
| 7. Kt. to Q. B. third   | 7. B. to K. Kt. fifth       |
| 8. P. to K. R. third    | 8. B. to K. third           |
| 9. B. to K. third       | 9. Kt. to Q. B. third       |
| 10. Q. to Q. second     | 10. Q. to Q. second         |
| 11. B. to K. B. fourth  | 11. K. R. to K. square      |
| 12. Q. R. to K. square  | 12. Q. R. to Q. square      |
| 13. Kt. to K. fifth     | 13. Q. to B. square         |
| 14. B. to Q. Kt. fifth  | 14. B. takes Kt.            |
| 15. B. takes B.         | 15. Kt. takes B.            |
| 16. P. takes Kt.        | 16. Kt. to K. fifth         |
| 17. Kt. takes Kt.       | 17. P. takes Kt.            |
| 18. Q. to K. B. fourth  | 18. P. to Q. B. third       |

- |                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 19. B. to K. second     | 19. B. to K. B. fourth |
| 20. B. to Q. B. fourth  | 20. R. to K. second    |
| 21. P. to K. Kt. fourth | 21. B. to Kt. third    |
| 22. P. to K. R. fourth  | 22. P. to K. R. third  |
| 23. P. to R. fifth      | 23. B. to R. second    |
| 24. P. to Kt. fifth     | 24. P. takes P.        |
| 25. Q. takes Kt. P.     | 25. Q. to K. B. fourth |
| 26. Q. takes R.         |                        |

And Black gives perpetual check.

### GAME CXXXVIII.

FOURTH BOARD.—MR. JANSON.

(*Gambit declined.*)

- | <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)  | <i>Black.</i> (MR. JANSON.) |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth       | 1. P. to K. fourth          |
| 2. P. to K. B. fourth    | 2. P. to Q. B. third        |
| 3. Q. Kt. to B. third    | 3. P. to Q. third           |
| 4. K. Kt. to B. third    | 4. K. B. to K. second       |
| 5. K. B. to Q. B. fourth | 5. P. takes P.              |
| 6. P. to Q. fourth       | 6. K. Kt. to B. third       |
| 7. Q. B. takes P.        | 7. Castles                  |
| 8. Castles               | 8. B. to Kt. fifth          |
| 9. K. B. to Q. third     | 9. Q. Kt. to Q. second      |
| 10. Q. to Q. second      | 10. B. to K. R. fourth      |
| 11. Q. R. to K. square   | 11. B. to K. Kt. third      |
| 12. P. to K. fifth       | 12. P. takes P.             |
| 13. P. takes P.          | 13. Kt. to K. square        |
| 14. Q. Kt. to K. fourth  | 14. Kt. to Q. B. fourth     |
| 15. Kt. takes Kt.        | 15. B. takes Kt. (check)    |
| 16. K. to R. square      | 16. Kt. to Q. B. second     |
| 17. Kt. to Kt. fifth     | 17. Q. to K. square         |
| 18. P. to K. sixth       | 18. Kt. takes P.            |
| 19. B. takes B.          | 19. R. P. takes B.          |
| 20. Q. to Q. B. third    | 20. B. to K. second         |
| 21. Kt. takes Kt.        | 21. P. takes Kt.            |
| 22. Q. to Q. Kt. third   | 22. R. to K. B. third       |

- |                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 23. R. takes P.         | 23. R. takes R.         |
| 24. Q. takes R. (check) | 24. Q. to K. B. second  |
| 25. Q. takes Q. (check) | 25. K. takes Q.         |
| 26. P. to K. Kt. fourth | 26. K. to K. Kt. square |
| 27. R. to K. square     | 27. K. to K. B. second  |

Given up as a drawn game.

### GAME CXXXIX.

FIFTH BOARD.—MR. GREENAWAY.

(*Evans's Gambit.*)

- | <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.) | <i>Black.</i> (MR. GREENAWAY.) |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth      | 1. P. to K. fourth             |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third   | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third          |
| 3. B. to B. fourth      | 3. B. to B. fourth             |
| 4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth  | 4. B. takes P.                 |
| 5. P. to Q. B. third    | 5. B. to R. fourth             |
| 6. P. to Q. fourth      | 6. P. takes P.                 |
| 7. Castles              | 7. Kt. to K. B. third          |
| 8. B. to Q. R. third    | 8. P. to Q. third              |
| 9. P. to K. fifth       | 9. P. to Q. fourth             |
| 10. B. to Q. Kt. fifth  | 10. Kt. to K. fifth            |
| 11. P. takes P.         | 11. B. to Q. second            |
| 12. Q. to Q. Kt. third  | 12. P. to Q. R. third          |
| 13. B. to Q. third      | 13. Q. B. to B. square         |
| 14. R. to Q. B. square  | 14. K. B. to Q. Kt. third      |
| 15. R. takes Kt.        | 15. P. takes R.                |
| 16. Q. to Q. B. second  | 16. B. to Q. Kt. second        |
| 17. Q. Kt. to Q. second | 17. Kt. takes Kt.              |
| 18. Q. takes Kt.        | 18. P. to K. R. third          |
| 19. R. to K. square     | 19. B. to B. square            |
| 20. Q. to Q. B. third   | 20. R. to Q. Kt. square        |
| 21. Q. takes P. (check) | 21. Q. to Q. second            |
| 22. Q. to B. second     | 22. Q. to K. third             |
| 23. K. Kt. to R. fourth | 23. P. to K. Kt. third         |
| 24. Q. to Q. B. third   | 24. K. to Q. square            |
| 25. R. to Q. B. square  | 25. R. to K. square            |

26. K. Kt. to B. third  
 27. P. to K. R. third  
 28. Q. to Q. second

26. B. to Kt. second  
 27. R. to Q. B. square  
 28. R. to K. R. square

And the game at this point was given up, being drawn by agreement.

## GAME CXL.

SIXTH BOARD.—MR. MEDLEY.

(*Scotch Gambit.*)

*White.* (MORPHY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to K. B. third
3. P. to Q. fourth
4. B. to Q. B. fourth
5. Castles
6. P. to Q. B. third
7. P. to Q. Kt. fourth
8. P. to Q. R. fourth
9. P. to Q. Kt. fifth
10. Kt. takes Kt.
11. Q. Kt. to Q. second
12. Q. to Q. Kt. third
13. B. takes B.
14. B. to Q. R. third
15. Kt. to K. B. third
16. Kt. takes K. P.
17. Q. to Q. B. fourth
18. Q. R. to Q. square
19. Kt. to K. B. third
20. Kt. takes P.
21. P. to K. fifth
22. P. to K. Kt. third
23. Q. takes Kt.
24. P. takes Q.
25. K. to Kt. second

*Black.* (MR. MEDLEY.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. Kt. to Q. B. third
3. P. takes P.
4. B. to Q. B. fourth
5. P. to Q. third
6. P. to Q. sixth
7. B. to Q. Kt. third
8. P. to Q. R. fourth
9. Q. Kt. to K. fourth
10. P. takes Kt.
11. K. Kt. to B. third
12. Q. B. to K. third
13. P. takes B.
14. Q. to Q. second
15. Castles (Q. R.)
16. Q. to K. square
17. P. to Q. seventh
18. Q. to K. R. fourth
19. Q. to K. Kt. fifth
20. Kt. to K. R. fourth
21. Kt. to K. B. fifth
22. R. takes Kt.
23. Q. takes Q.
24. B. takes P. (check)
25. R. takes R.

26. R. takes R.

26. B. to K. R. fifth

27. K. to K. R. third

27. B. to Q. square

At this point the game was abandoned as drawn on account of time, the performance having lasted over seven hours.

## GAME CXLI.

SEVENTH BOARD.—Mr. JONES.

*(Muzio Gambit.)**White.* (MORPHY.)*Black.* (Mr. JONES.)

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. to K. B. fourth
3. Kt. to K. B. third
4. B. to Q. B. fourth
5. P. to Q. fourth
6. Castles
7. Q. Kt. to B. third
8. Q. takes P.
9. Q. B. takes P.
10. K. to R. square
11. P. to K. fifth
12. Kt. to K. fourth
13. P. takes P. (*en passant.*)
14. Q. R. to K. square
15. B. takes Q. B.
16. Q. to K. R. fifth (check)
17. Kt. to Q. B. fifth (check)
18. B. takes B.
19. Q. to K. fifth
20. Kt. takes Kt.
21. R. takes Kt.
22. Kt. to Q. B. fifth

1. P. to K. fourth
2. P. takes P.
3. P. to K. Kt. fourth
4. P. to K. Kt. fifth
5. Q. to K. second
6. P. takes Kt.
7. P. to Q. B. third
8. B. to K. Kt. second
9. B. takes P. (check)
10. B. to K. Kt. second
11. B. to K. R. third
12. P. to Q. fourth
13. Q. to K. B. square
14. Q. B. to K. third
15. P. takes B.
16. K. to Q. second
17. K. to Q. B. square
18. Kt. to K. B. third
19. Q. Kt. to Q. second
20. Q. takes B.
21. Q. to K. R. fifth

And wins.

To accept the *Muzio Gambit*, says Mr. WALKER in *Bell's Life*, was a piece of chivalry all uncalled for from Mr. JONES in these unromantic times.

## GAME CXLII.

EIGHTH BOARD.—MR. MAUDE.

*(Two Knights' Game.)**White.* (MORPHY.)*Black.* (MR. MAUDE.)

- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth         | 1. P. to K. fourth         |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third      | 2. B. to Q. B. third       |
| 3. B. to Q. B. fourth      | 3. Kt. to K. B. third      |
| 4. Kt. to Kt. fifth        | 4. P. to Q. fourth         |
| 5. P. takes P.             | 5. Kt. to Q. R. fourth     |
| 6. P. to Q. third          | 6. P. to K. fifth          |
| 7. Q. to K. second         | 7. Q. to K. second         |
| 8. Kt. takes K. P.         | 8. Kt. takes Kt.           |
| 9. P. takes Kt.            | 9. Q. to Kt. fifth (check) |
| 10. Kt. to Q. second       | 10. Kt. takes B.           |
| 11. Q. takes Kt.           | 11. Q. to Q. Kt. third     |
| 12. Castles                | 12. B. to Q. second        |
| 13. P. to Q. R. fourth     | 13. P. to Q. B. third      |
| 14. Kt. to K. B. third     | 14. B. to Q. third         |
| 15. B. to K. third         | 15. Q. to B. second        |
| 16. Q. to Q. fourth        | 16. P. to K. B. third      |
| 17. P. to Q. B. fourth     | 17. P. to Q. B. fourth     |
| 18. Q. to Q. third         | 18. B. to K. Kt. fifth     |
| 19. Kt. to Q. second       | 19. B. takes P. (check)    |
| 20. K. to R. square        | 20. B. to K. B. fifth      |
| 21. P. to K. Kt. third     | 21. B. takes B.            |
| 22. Q. takes B.            | 22. K. to Q. second        |
| 23. P. to K. B. fourth     | 23. P. to Q. Kt. third     |
| 24. P. to K. fifth         | 24. P. to K. B. fourth     |
| 25. Kt. to K. B. third     | 25. B. takes Kt.           |
| 26. Q. takes B.            | 26. P. to K. R. fourth     |
| 27. Q. R. to Q. square     | 27. Q. to Q. square        |
| 28. P. to Q. sixth         | 28. R. to Q. Kt. square    |
| 29. K. R. to K. square     | 29. R. to R. third         |
| 30. P. to K. sixth (check) | 30. R. takes P.            |
| 31. R. takes R.            | 31. K. takes R.            |
| 32. Q. to Q. fifth (check) | 32. K. to B. third         |
| 33. R. to K. square        | 33. P. to Kt. third        |
| 34. R. to K. seventh       |                            |

And wins.

## BLINDFOLD PLAY AT THE ST. GEORGE'S CHESS CLUB.

The *Sunday Times* of April 24, 1859, contained the following :—

“We rejoice in stating that the American champion has consented to prolong his stay in England for another week. On Tuesday last a strong number of metropolitan Chess players were assembled in the St. James's Hall, Piccadilly, having come with the expectation of seeing Mr. MORPHY once more before his departure from the theatre of his unrivalled exploits, but to the great disappointment of all present, the young hero did not make his appearance. On the following day (Wednesday), Mr. MORPHY repeated his extraordinary performance of playing eight games blindfold against some of the strongest members of the St. George's Chess Club, and, on the same evening, a dinner was given in his honour by the members of the above-named club, to pay another tribute to his genius and sterling qualities as a man and Chess player.”

His opponents were ranged as follows :—

|                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| First board . . . . .   | Lord Cremorne.      |
| Second board . . . . .  | Captain Kennedy.    |
| Third board . . . . .   | H. G. Cattley, Esq. |
| Fourth board . . . . .  | Lord Arthur Hay.    |
| Fifth board . . . . .   | T. Worrall, Esq.    |
| Sixth board . . . . .   | J. Cunningham, Esq. |
| Seventh board . . . . . | J. Thrupp, Esq.     |
| Eighth board . . . . .  | W. Barnes, Esq.     |

Of these eight games three had to be left unfinished, on account of the lateness of the sitting ; the remaining five were scored by the young conqueror. We select the following two games for publication :—



## GAME CXLIII.

FIRST BOARD.—LORD CREMORNE.

*(King's Gambit declined.)*

- | <i>White.</i> (Mr. MORPHY.)  | <i>Black.</i> (Lord CREMORNE.) |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth           | 1. P. to K. fourth             |
| 2. P. to K. B. fourth        | 2. B. to B. fourth             |
| 3. Kt. to K. B. third        | 3. Kt. to Q. B. third          |
| 4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth       | 4. B. takes P.                 |
| 5. P. to Q. B. third         | 5. B. to R. fourth             |
| 6. B. to Q. B. fourth        | 6. B. to Kt. third             |
| 7. P. to Q. fourth           | 7. P. takes Q. P.              |
| 8. P. takes P.               | 8. P. to Q. third              |
| 9. B. to Q. Kt. second       | 9. P. to K. B. third           |
| 10. P. to K. B. fifth        | 10. Q. to K. second            |
| 11. Castles                  | 11. B. to Q. second            |
| 12. Kt. to Q. B. third       | 12. Castles                    |
| 13. R. to K. square          | 13. Q. to K. square            |
| 14. Kt. to Q. fifth          | 14. P. to K. Kt. third         |
| 15. Kt. takes B. (check)     | 15. R. P. takes Kt.            |
| 16. Q. to Q. R. fourth       | 16. Kt. to Q. R. fourth        |
| 17. Q. to R. third           | 17. P. to Q. B. third          |
| 18. B. to Q. third           | 18. Q. to B. square            |
| 19. Q. B. to B. third        | 19. K. to B. second            |
| 20. B. takes Kt.             | 20. R. to R. square            |
| 21. B. takes P. (check)      | 21. K. takes B.                |
| 22. Q. R. to Kt. sq. (check) | 22. K. to B. second            |
| 23. Q. to Q. Kt. third       | 23. R. to Kt. square           |
| 24. Q. to Kt. sixth (check)  | 24. K. to B. square            |
| 25. B. to R. sixth           | 25. Kt. to K. second           |
| 26. P. to K. fifth           | 26. Q. P. takes P.             |
| 27. B. takes P. (check)      | 27. R. takes B.                |
| 28. Q. takes B. (check)      | 28. K. to Q. square            |
| 29. P. takes P.              |                                |

And wins.

## GAME CXLIV.

## SECOND BOARD.—CAPTAIN KENNEDY.

*(Evans's Gambit.)*

| <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.) | <i>Black.</i> (Captain KENNEDY.) |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth      | 1. P. to K. fourth               |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third   | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third            |
| 3. B. to B. fourth      | 3. B. to B. fourth               |
| 4. P. to Q. Kt. fourth  | 4. B. takes P.                   |
| 5. P. to Q. B. third    | 5. B. to B. fourth               |
| 6. Castles              | 6. P. to Q. third                |
| 7. P. to Q. fourth      | 7. P. takes P.                   |
| 8. P. takes P.          | 8. B. to Kt. third               |
| 9. P. to Q. fifth       | 9. Q. Kt. to K. second           |
| 10. P. to K. fifth      | 10. Kt. to K. Kt. third          |
| 11. P. to K. sixth      | 11. P. takes P.                  |
| 12. P. takes P.         | 12. K. Kt. to K. second          |
| 13. Kt. to Q. B. third  | 13. P. to Q. B. third            |
| 14. Kt. to K. Kt. fifth | 14. Kt. to K. fourth             |
| 15. B. to K. B. fourth  | 15. P. to K. Kt. third           |
| 16. Kt. to B. seventh   | 16. Castles                      |
| 17. B. takes K.         | 17. R. takes Kt.                 |
| 18. P. takes Rt(check)  | 18. K. to B. square              |
| 19. B. takes P.         | 19. B. to K. Kt. fifth           |
| 20. Q. to Q. second     | 20. P. to K. Kt. fourth          |
| 21. Q. R. to K. square  |                                  |

And wins.

## MORPHY'S PERFORMANCE AT THE ST. JAMES'S.

We gave the following report in the *Sunday Times* with regard to this last performance of MORPHY's during his stay in Europe :—

"On Tuesday last, Mr. MORPHY paid a visit to the St. James's Club, Regent Street. There was a very large attendance of noted Metropolitan Chess players to witness a new performance of Mr. MORPHY—viz., to play simultaneously

five games against some of the most expert players, including the well-known French player, M. de RIVIÈRE. The tables were arranged in a row, each table being occupied on the one side by a player, and on the other a passage was left free, along which the single antagonist might pass backwards and forwards. With regard to this exciting feat, a contemporary remarks :—‘ Mr. MORPHY seems to play perfectly at his ease, generally making his moves with great rapidity, although sometimes stopping and seeming to give the move in hand a good deal of careful consideration. We endeavoured to ascertain whether, like other great players, he had any favourite move or leading idea in his play, and there did seem to be a little uniformity in the cases in which he obtained the first move. But as this happened only in two cases out of the five, he was in the other three necessarily influenced by the opening of his opponent. Speaking generally, his style of play seems to be rapid and impetuous, and his *coup d’œil* so perfect that he can master at one glance all the exigencies of the board. More than once in the course of the play his opponents had to call for time, which he conceded with the most good-humoured courtesy, chatting in the interim carelessly with whoever chanced to stand near him. The great secret of his success, over and above great practical skill as a Chess player, would appear to lie in the wonderful power and tenacity of his memory. He plays the most abstruse and reflective of known games, and the only advantage he has is the prestige of his wonderful name, which certainly had considerable effect in producing caution on the part of all his opponents. The games took place in the elegant and capacious smoking-room of the St. James’s Restaurant, and all the players to whom Mr. MORPHY was opposed, worshipped the fuliginous genius of the place. We observed, however, that he did not smoke, an important fact for the modern advocates of the counterblast. If any one required a particularly clear head, it would be a man who, single-handed, undertook to play Chess against five of the best players in London, and Mr. MORPHY, although an American, would appear to deny himself his cigar, in order to secure the necessary amount of cerebral lucidity.’ The players against Mr. MORPHY were—first board, M. de RIVIÈRE; second, Mr. S.

BODEN; third, Mr. W. BARNES; fourth, Mr. BIRD; fifth Herr LÖWENTHAL. The play commenced at six o'clock, and was kept up with great spirit till a late hour of the night. The following was the result :—The game at the first board was won by Mr. MORPHY; at the second the game was drawn; at the third it was won by Mr. BARNES; at the fourth by Mr. MORPHY; at the fifth it terminated in a drawn battle."

We give below four out of the five games played on this occasion; the game with Mr. BARNES not having come to our knowledge.

---

### GAME CXLV.

FIRST BOARD.—M. DE RIVIÈRE.

(*Two Knights' Game.*)

| <i>White.</i> (M. DE RIVIÈRE.) | <i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.) |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth             | 1. P. to K. fourth      |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third          | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third   |
| 3. B. to B. fourth             | 3. Kt. to K. B. third   |
| 4. Kt. to Kt. fifth            | 4. P. to Q. fourth      |
| 5. P. takes P.                 | 5. Kt. to Q. R. fourth  |
| 6. P. to Q. third              | 6. P. to K. R. third    |
| 7. Kt. to K. B. third          | 7. P. to K. fifth       |
| 8. Q. to K. second             | 8. Kt. takes B.         |
| 9. P. takes Kt.                | 9. B. to Q. B. fourth   |
| 10. P. to K. R. third          | 10. Castles             |
| 11. Kt. to R. second           | 11. Kt. to R. second    |
| 12. Kt. to Q. B. third         | 12. P. to K. B. fourth  |
| 13. B. to K. third             | 13. B. to Q. Kt. fifth  |
| 14. Q. to Q. second            | 14. B. to Q. second     |
| 15. P. to K. Kt. third         | 15. Q. to K. second     |
| 16. P. to Q. R. third          | 16. B. to Q. third      |
| 17. Kt. to K. second           | 17. P. to Q. Kt. fourth |
| 18. P. takes P.                | 18. B. takes P.         |
| 19. Kt. to Q. fourth           | 19. B. to Q. B. fifth   |
| 20. Kt. to K. sixth            | 20. K. R. to K. square  |

- |                         |                               |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 21. Q. to Q. fourth     | 21. B. to Q. R. third         |
| 22. P. to Q. B. fourth  | 22. P. to Q. B. fourth        |
| 23. Q. to B. third      | 23. B. to Q. B. square        |
| 24. Kt. to B. fourth    | 24. R. to Q. Kt. square       |
| 25. R. to Q. Kt. square | 25. P. to K. Kt. fourth       |
| 26. Kt. to K. second    | 26. Kt. to B. square          |
| 27. P. to K. R. fourth  | 27. Kt. to Kt. third          |
| 28. P. takes P.         | 28. P. takes P.               |
| 29. Q. to Q. B. square  | 29. Kt. to K. fourth          |
| 30. B. takes Kt. P.     | 30. Kt. to Q. sixth (check)   |
| 31. K. to B. square     | 31. Q. to K. Kt. second       |
| 32. Q. to Q. second     | 32. Kt. takes Kt. P.          |
| 33. Q. to B. second     | 33. B. to Q. R. third         |
| 34. B. to B. square     | 34. Kt. takes P.              |
| 35. Q. to R. fourth     | 35. Kt. to Q. seventh (check) |
| 36. K. to Kt. second    | 36. Kt. takes B.              |
| 37. Q. takes B.         | 37. R. to Kt. third           |
| 38. Q. to R. fourth     | 38. K. R. to Q. Kt. square    |
| 39. Kt. to K. B. square | 39. B. to K. fourth           |
| 40. Kt. to K. third     | 40. P. to K. B. fifth         |
| 41. Kt. takes P.        | 41. B. takes Kt.              |
| 42. Kt. to B. fifth     | 42. Q. to K. B. second        |
| 43. B. takes B.         | 43. Q. takes Kt.              |
| 44. B. takes R.         | 44. R. takes B.               |
| 45. Q. takes R. P.      | 45. R. to K. B. square        |
| 46. Q. takes P.         | 46. Q. to B. sixth (check)    |
| 47. K. to Kt. square    | 47. Kt. to B. sixth           |
| 48. R. to R. fourth     | 48. Kt. to K. seventh (check) |
| 49. K. to R. second     | 49. Q. takes B. P. (check)    |
| 50. Q. takes Q.         | 50. R. takes Q. (check)       |
| 51. K. to R. third      | 51. Kt. to Kt. eighth (check) |
| 52. K. to Kt. fourth    | 52. P. to K. sixth            |
| 53. K. to R. fifth      | 53. P. to K. seventh          |
| 54. R. to K. fourth     | 54. R. to B. eighth           |

And wins.

---

## GAME CXLVI.

SECOND BOARD.—MR. BODEN.

*(Scotch Gambit.)*

| <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)    | <i>Black.</i> (MR. BODEN.)   |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth         | 1. P. to K. fourth           |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third      | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third        |
| 3. P. to Q. fourth         | 3. P. takes P.               |
| 4. B. to Q. B. fourth      | 4. B. to Q. B. fourth        |
| 5. Castles                 | 5. P. to Q. third            |
| 6. P. to Q. B. third       | 6. Kt. to K. B. third        |
| 7. P. takes P.             | 7. B. to Q. Kt. third        |
| 8. Kt. to Q. B. third      | 8. B. to K. Kt. fifth        |
| 9. B. to K. third          | 9. Castles                   |
| 10. Q. to Q. third         | 10. Q. to Q. second          |
| 11. K. Kt. to Q. second    | 11. Q. Kt. to K. second      |
| 12. B. to Q. Kt. third     | 12. P. to Q. fourth          |
| 13. P. to K. fifth         | 13. K. Kt. to K. square      |
| 14. P. to K. R. third      | 14. Q. B. to R. fourth       |
| 15. P. to B. fourth        | 15. P. to K. B. fourth       |
| 16. K. to R. second        | 16. P. to Q. B. third        |
| 17. K. R. to K. Kt. square | 17. K. to R. square          |
| 18. K. B. to B. second     | 18. B. to K. Kt. third       |
| 19. K. Kt. to B. third     | 19. K. Kt. to Q. B. second   |
| 20. P. to Q. Kt. fourth    | 20. K. Kt. to K. third       |
| 21. K. Kt. to Q. second    | 21. Q. Kt. to K. Kt. square  |
| 22. K. Kt. to Q. Kt. third | 22. Q. Kt. to K. R. third    |
| 23. Q. Kt. to Q. R. fourth | 23. Q. to K. second          |
| 24. Q. Kt. to Q. B. fifth  | 24. Kt. takes Kt.            |
| 25. Kt. P. takes Kt.       | 25. Kt. to Kt. fifth (check) |
| 26. K. to R. square        | 26. Q. to K. R. fifth        |
| 27. K. R. to K. B. square  | 27. Kt. takes Q. B.          |
| 28. Q. takes Kt.           | 28. B. to Q. B. second       |
| 29. Kt. to Q. second       | 29. Q. to K. second          |
| 30. Kt. to K. B. third     | 30. Q. R. to K. square       |
| 31. Q. R. to Q. Kt. square | 31. P. to Q. Kt. third       |
| 32. B. to R. fourth        | 32. P. to Q. Kt. fourth      |
| 33. B. to B. second        | 33. P. to Q. R. fourth       |
| 34. K. R. to K. Kt. square | 34. Q. to K. third           |

- |                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 35. P. to K. Kt. fourth             | 35. K. B. to Q. square    |
| 36. P. to K. Kt. fifth              | 36. K. to Kt. square      |
| 37. P. to K. R. fourth              | 37. P. to K. R. fourth    |
| 38. P. takes P. ( <i>en pass.</i> ) | 38. K. R. to B. second    |
| 39. K. R. to Kt. second             | 39. Q. B. to K. R. fourth |
| 40. Q. R. to K. Kt. square          | 40. Q. takes K. R. P.     |
| 41. Kt. to Kt. fifth                | 41. K. B. takes Kt.       |
| 42. R. P. takes B.                  | 42. Q. to K. R. square    |
| 43. K. R. to K. R. second           | 43. P. to K. Kt. third    |
| 44. Q. R. to K. Kt. third           | 44. K. R. to K. R. second |
| 45. Q. R. to K. R. third            | 45. Q. R. to K. second    |
| 46. K. to Kt. square                | 46. B. to Kt. fifth       |
| 47. Q. R. to R. sixth               | 47. R. takes R.           |
| 48. R. takes R.                     | 48. R. to K. R. second    |
| 49. R. takes P. (check)             | 49. K. to B. square       |
| 50. R. to R. sixth                  | 50. R. takes R.           |
| 51. P. takes R.                     | 51. Q. takes P.           |

And the game was given up as drawn.

### GAME CXLVII.

FOURTH BOARD.—Mr. BIRD.

(*Cunningham Gambit.*)

- | <i>White.</i> (MORPHY.)    | <i>Black.</i> (Mr. BIRD.) |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth         | 1. P. to K. fourth        |
| 2. P. to K. B. fourth      | 2. P. takes P.            |
| 3. Kt. to K. B. third      | 3. B. to K. second        |
| 4. B. to B. fourth         | 4. B. to R. fifth (check) |
| 5. P. to K. Kt. third      | 5. P. takes P.            |
| 6. Castles                 | 6. P. takes P. (check)    |
| 7. K. to R. square         | 7. P. to Q. fourth        |
| 8. B. takes P.             | 8. Kt. to K. B. third     |
| 9. B. takes P. (check)     | 9. K. takes B.            |
| 10. Kt. takes B.           | 10. R. to K. square       |
| 11. P. to Q. third         | 11. B. to R. sixth        |
| 12. Q. to R. fifth (check) | 12. K. to Kt. square      |
| 13. R. takes Kt.           | 13. P. takes R.           |

- |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 14. Kt. to Q. B. third      | 14. R. to K. fourth        |
| 15. Q. to B. third          | 15. Q. to Q. second        |
| 16. B. to B. fourth         | 16. Kt. to B. third        |
| 17. K. takes P.             | 17. B. to Kt. fifth        |
| 18. R. to K. Kt. square     | 18. P. to K. R. fourth     |
| 19. B. takes R.             | 19. P. takes B.            |
| 20. Kt. to Q. fifth         | 20. Kt. to Q. fifth        |
| 21. Kt. to B. sixth (check) | 21. K. to R. square        |
| 22. Q. to K. third          | 22. Q. to Kt. second       |
| 23. Kt. takes P.            | 23. Q. to R. second        |
| 24. R. takes B.             | 24. Q. takes Kt.           |
| 25. Q. to R. third          | 25. K. to R. second        |
| 26. P. to Q. B. third       | 26. Kt. to K. third        |
| 27. R. to Kt. sixth         | 27. Q. R. to K. square     |
| 28. R. takes Kt.            | 28. R. takes R.            |
| 29. Q. takes R.             | 29. Q. takes Kt. (check)   |
| 30. Q. to R. third          | 30. Q. takes Q. (check)    |
| 31. K. takes Q.             | 31. P. to Q. B. fourth     |
| 32. K. to Kt. fourth        | 32. K. to Kt. third        |
| 33. K. to B. third          | 33. K. to B. third         |
| 34. K. to K. third          | 34. K. to K. third         |
| 35. P. to Q. fourth         | 35. K. P. takes P. (check) |
| 36. P. takes P.             | 36. P. takes P. (check)    |
| 37. K. takes P.             | 37. K. to Q. third         |
| 38. P. to K. fifth (check)  | 38. K. to K. third         |
| 39. K. to K. fourth         | 39. K. to K. second        |
| 40. K. to Q. fifth          | 40. K. to Q. second        |
| 41. P. to K. sixth (check)  | 41. K. to K. second        |
| 42. K. to K. fifth          | 42. P. to Q. R. third      |
| 43. P. to Q. R. third       | 43. K. to K. square        |
| 44. K. to Q. sixth          |                            |

And wins.

---



## GAME CXLVIII.

FIFTH BOARD.—Mr. LÖWENTHAL.

*(Ruy Lopez.)*

| <i>White.</i> (Herr LÖWENTHAL.) | <i>Black.</i> (MORPHY.)      |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. P. to K. fourth              | 1. P. to K. fourth           |
| 2. Kt. to K. B. third           | 2. Kt. to Q. B. third        |
| 3. B. to Q. Kt. fifth           | 3. P. to Q. R. third         |
| 4. B. to R. fourth              | 4. Kt. to K. B. third        |
| 5. Castles                      | 5. B. to K. second           |
| 6. P. to Q. fourth              | 6. P. takes P.               |
| 7. P. to K. fifth               | 7. Kt. to K. fifth           |
| 8. B. takes Kt.                 | 8. Q. P. takes B.            |
| 9. Q. takes P.                  | 9. Q. B. to K. B. fourth     |
| 10. Kt. to Q. B. third          | 10. B. to Q. B. fourth       |
| 11. Q. takes Q. (check)         | 11. R. takes Q.              |
| 12. Kt. to K. R. fourth         | 12. Kt. takes Q. Kt.         |
| 13. Kt. takes B.                | 13. Kt. to K. seventh (ch.)  |
| 14. K. to R. square             | 14. P. to K. Kt. third       |
| 15. Kt. to K. Kt. third         | 15. Kt. takes Kt. (check)    |
| 16. R. P. takes Kt.             | 16. P. to R. third           |
| 17. R. to Q. Kt. square         | 17. K. to K. second          |
| 18. P. to Q. Kt. fourth         | 18. B. to Q. fifth           |
| 19. P. to K. B. fourth          | 19. K. to K. third           |
| 20. R. to Q. Kt. third          | 20. P. to K. R. fourth       |
| 21. R. to Q. third              | 21. B. to Q. Kt. third       |
| 22. K. R. to Q. square          | 22. R. takes R.              |
| 23. R. takes R.                 | 23. K. to B. fourth          |
| 24. B. to Q. Kt. second         | 24. R. to K. R. second       |
| 25. B. to Q. fourth             | 25. P. to K. R. fifth        |
| 26. B. takes B.                 | 26. P. takes P. (dis. check) |
| 27. K. to Kt. square            | 27. P. takes B.              |
| 28. R. to Q. seventh            | 28. K. to K. third           |
| 29. R. takes Q. Kt. P.          | 29. R. to R. fifth           |
| 30. R. takes Q. Kt. P.          | 30. R. takes P.              |
| 31. R. takes B. P. (check)      | 31. K. takes P.              |
| 32. R. to Q. B. fifth (check)   | 32. K. to Q. third           |
| 33. R. to K. Kt. fifth          | 33. R. takes P.              |
| 34. R. takes P. on Kt. sixth    | 34. B. to Q. R. fifth        |

- |                             |                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 35. P. to Q. R. third       | 35. R. to Q. B. fifth |
| 36. R. to Q. third (check)  | 36. K. to K. third    |
| 37. R. to Q. Kt. third      | 37. R. takes P.       |
| 38. R. to Kt. sixth (check) | 38. K. to B. fourth   |
| 39. R. takes R. P.          | 39. P. to Kt. fourth  |
| 40. R. to Kt. sixth         | 40. R. to R. seventh  |
| 41. R. to Kt. third         | 41. P. to Kt. fifth   |
| 42. R. to Kt. fifth (check) | 42. K. to B. fifth    |
| 43. R. to Kt. third         | 43. P. to B. fourth   |
| 44. P. to Kt. third (check) | 44. K. to K. fifth    |
| 45. K. to B. square         | 45. K. to K. fourth   |
| 46. K. to Kt. square        | 46. P. to B. fifth    |

Drawn game.

---

A few days after this last performance MORPHY left England on board the *Persia*. The *Field*, an ably conducted weekly paper, bade him farewell, in the name of English Chess circles, with the following heartfelt words:—

“Often do the longest visits seem all too short, and envious time appears to delight in hurrying on an unwished-for parting. As we write, PAUL MORPHY is departing from amongst us, to set sail, in a few hours, for his native shores. May favouring waves and winds attend the gifted gallant youth! Most heartily do we wish him a prosperous voyage, an enthusiastic greeting among his countrymen, and a joyous re-union with his family.

“Truly, transatlantic brethren, you have conquered us at Chess, but let us not be surpassed in candour. We have not a PAUL MORPHY amongst us, but we acknowledge and admire every whit of his unrivalled powers in our favourite royal game. Your champion carries with him the best wishes of every English Chess player and friend, and right glad shall we be, next year or as soon as he pleases, to welcome MORPHY in our cities and homes again.”

---

In conclusion, we give the correspondence between Lord LYTELTON and Mr. MORPHY, in addition to the letters published in this volume, pp. 98, 99.

## MORPHY'S APPEAL TO THE BRITISH CHESS ASSOCIATION.

*To the Right Hon. Lord Lyttleton, President of the British Chess Association.*

MY LORD,—On the 4th of last February the Chess Club of New Orleans gave a challenge to your countryman, Mr. Howard Staunton, to visit that city, and engage in a match at Chess with me. On the 3rd of April Mr. Staunton replied to this *defi* in the *Illustrated London News*, characterising the terms of the cartel as “being distinguished by extreme courtesy,” but objecting to so long a journey for such a purpose, and engaging me “to anticipate by a few months an intended voyage to Europe.” Believing that “a journey of many thousand miles” was the only obstacle in the way of our meeting, I made immediate preparation, and, within two months, I had the pleasure of repeating the challenge personally in the rooms of the St. George’s Chess Club. I need scarcely assure you, my lord, that Mr. Staunton enjoys a reputation in the United States unsurpassed by that of any player in Europe since the death of Labourdonnais, and I felt highly honoured when he accepted my challenge, merely requesting a lapse of one month for the purpose of preparing himself for the encounter. Within a short period, subsequently, Mr. Staunton obtained my consent to a postponement, until after the annual meeting of the British Chess Association. A week prior to that event, I addressed him in the following terms:—

“DEAR SIR,—As we are now approaching the Birmingham meeting, at the termination of which you have fixed our match to commence, I think it would be advisable to settle the preliminaries during this week. Would you be good enough to state some early period when your seconds can meet mine, so that a contest which I have so much at heart, and which, from your eminent position, excites so much interest in the Chess world, may be looked upon as a *fait accompli*.—I am, dear sir, yours very respectfully,

PAUL MORPHY.”

Not receiving a satisfactory reply to this communication, I again wrote to Mr. Staunton as follows:—

“DEAR SIR,—I must first apologise for not replying to your previous communication. As you observe, my numerous contests must be the excuse for my remissness.

“It is certainly a high compliment to so young a player as myself, that you, whose reputation in the Chess arena has been unapproached during so many long years, should require any preparation for our match. Immediately on my arrival in England, some two months since, I spoke to you in reference to our contest, and, in accepting the challenge, you stated that you should require some time to prepare, and you proposed a period for commencing, which I accepted.

“I am well aware that your many engagements in the literary world must put you to some inconvenience in meeting me, and I am therefore desirous to consult your wishes in every respect. Would you please state the earliest opportunity when those engagements will permit the match coming off, such time being consistent with your previous preparation?

“The ‘few weeks’ referred to in your favour, seem to be rather vague, and I shall feel highly gratified by your fixing a definite period for the contest. I leave the terms entirely to yourself.

I remain, dear sir, yours very respectfully,  
PAUL MORPHY.”

Mr. Staunton left London for Birmingham without deigning to reply.

I attended the annual meeting of the Association for the express purpose of requesting a definite period for commencing the match. In the presence of your lordship and other gentlemen, Mr. STAUNTON fixed that commencement for the forepart of November, promising that he would inform me of the precise date within a few days. I heard nothing further from him on the subject. Your lordship will have remarked from the above, that Mr. STAUNTON has thus obtained three separate and distinct postponements.

The approach of November induced me to again address

Mr. STAUNTON, which I did on the 6th of the present month. As my letter was published in numerous London journals, and was also sent to the editor-in-chief of the *Illustrated London News*, I had a right to expect a public answer, particularly as I had complained of a false and damaging statement in the Chess department of that paper. On the 16th Mr. STAUNTON stated editorially that:—

“Mr. MORPHY’s games this week exclude both his letter and Mr. STAUNTON’s reply. If we can spare space for them they shall be given in the next number.”

On the 9th inst., within a short time of receiving my letter, Mr. STAUNTON replied to me *privately*. As my communication was a public one, I was somewhat surprised at the course pursued by a gentleman holding such a position as Mr. STAUNTON, and did not, therefore, even acknowledge receipt, fearing that I might thereby be induced, unintentionally, to commit myself. Having promised my letter and his reply, Mr. STAUNTON published what he represents as such in the *Illustrated London News* of the 23rd inst. He has thereby transferred the question from the Chess arena to the bar of public opinion, and as a stranger in a foreign land—a land which has ever been the foremost in hospitality—I claim justice from Englishmen.

The most important portion of my letter Mr. STAUNTON has dared to suppress. I refer to the following paragraph, published by various journals, but omitted by the *Illustrated London News*, although sent to the editor of that paper as well as to Mr. STAUNTON himself:—

“A statement appeared in the Chess department of that journal a few weeks since, that ‘Mr. MORPHY had come to Europe unprovided with backers or seconds,’ the inference being obvious—that my want of funds was the reason of our match not taking place. As you are the editor of that department of the *Illustrated London News*, I felt hurt that a gentleman who had always received me at his club and elsewhere with great kindness and courtesy, should allow so prejudicial a statement to be made in reference to me; one, too, which is not strictly in accordance with fact.”

On my first arrival in England, I informed Mr. STAUNTON that my stakes would be forthcoming the moment he desired,

and I was therefore utterly at a loss to account for so unwarrantable a statement being made in reference to me, unless with the intention of compromising my position before the public. And I would ask your lordship's attention to the terms of the suppressed paragraph, couched in such language as to avoid all insinuation of animus, and affording Mr. STAUNTON the amplest opportunity for explaining away the difficulty. The course pursued by that gentleman cannot do otherwise than justify me in ascribing to him the very worst of motives in publishing what he knew to be incorrect, in denying me common justice, and in giving as the whole of my letter what he knew to be only a part of it.

From Mr. STAUNTON I now appeal to the great body of English Chess players, I appeal to the British Chess Association, I appeal to yourself, my lord, as the *Mæcenas* of English Chess; and, as I visited your country for the purpose of challenging Mr. STAUNTON, which challenge he has repeatedly accepted, I now demand of you that you shall declare to the world it is through no fault of mine that this match has not taken place.—I have the honour to remain, my lord, yours very respectfully,

PAUL MORPHY.

Café de la Régence, Paris, *October, 26, 1858.*

---

LORD LYTTELTON'S ANSWER.

BODMIN, CORNWALL, 3rd November.

DEAR SIR,—I much regret that I have been unable till to-day to reply to your letter of October 26, which only reached me on the 1st inst. With regard to the appeal which you have made to the British Chess Association, I may perhaps be allowed to say, as its President, that I fear nothing can be done about the matter in question by that body. It is one of recent and rather imperfect organization; its influence is not yet fully established. It is practically impossible to procure any effective meeting of its members at present, and it is doubtful whether it would take any steps in the matter if it were to meet. I must therefore be understood as writing

in my private character alone, but, at the same time, you are welcome, should you think it worth while (which I hardly think it can be), to make further use of this letter, in any manner you may wish.

Your letter has but one professed object; that we should declare that it is not your fault that the match between yourself and Mr. Staunton has not taken place. To this the reply might be made in two words. I cannot conceive it possible that any one should impute that failure to you, nor am I aware that any one has done so. But, in the circumstances, I shall not perhaps be blamed, if I go somewhat further into the matter. In the general circumstances of the case, I conceive that Mr. Staunton was quite justified in declining the match. The fact is understood, that he has for years been engaged in labours which must, whatever arrangements might be made, greatly interfere with his entering into a serious contest with a player of the highest force and in constant practice, and so far, the failure of the match is the less to be regretted. Nor can I doubt the correctness of his recent statement, that the time barely necessary for the match itself could not be spared, without serious loss and inconvenience both to others and to himself.

But I cannot but think, that in all fairness and consideration, Mr. STAUNTON might have told you of this long before he did. I know no reason why he might not have ascertained it, and informed you of it in answer to your first letter from America. Instead of this, it seems to me plain, both as to the interview at which I myself was present, and as to all the other communications which have passed, that Mr. Staunton gave you every reason to suppose that he would be ready to play the match within no long time. I am not aware, indeed (nor do I perceive that you have said it), that you left America *solely* with the view of playing Mr. Staunton. It would, no doubt, make the case stronger, but it seems to me as unlikely as that you should have come, as has been already stated (anonymously, and certainly not with Mr. Staunton's concurrence), in order to attend the Birmingham Tournament.

With regard to the suppressions of part of your last letter, I must observe, that I am not aware how far Mr. STAUNTON is responsible for what appears in the *Illustrated London News*.

But whoever is responsible for that suppression, I must say that I cannot see how it is possible to justify or excuse it.

I greatly regret the failure of a contest which would have been of much interest, and the only one, as I believe, which could have taken place with you, with any chance of its redounding to the credit of this country. I still more regret that any annoyance or disappointment should have been undergone by one, who—as a foreigner—from his age, his ability, and his conduct and character, is eminently entitled to the utmost consideration in the European countries which he may visit.

I am, dear sir, yours truly,

LYTTELTON.

PAUL MORPHY, ESQ.

THE END.







Princeton University Library



32101 078297817



